



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO  
LIBRARY  
1100 EAST 58TH STREET  
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637



KENNETH R. BOYLE  
4211 50th Avenue N.E.  
Seattle, Washington 98105







STUDENTS' INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS

---

CAESAR'S  
COMMENTARIES  
ON THE  
GALLIC WAR

Books I—VII

THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT  
WITH AN INTERLINEAR ENGLISH TRANSLATION  
By FREDERICK HOLLAND DEWEY, A.B.



TRANSLATION PUBLISHING CO., INC.

67 Irving Place, New York

COPYRIGHT, 1918

TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

## INTRODUCTION

---

Since Caesar is the first Roman author studied by beginners in Latin, a translation of his work should be practical and helpful for both teacher and student. Such a translation, especially an inter-linear, must not be so smooth and polished in English style and diction as to escape the true Latin meaning of word and phrase, or so slavishly literal and exact that the real meaning is clouded by the abuse of English idiom.

Owing to the style and nature of Caesar's work, it is impossible to produce an elegant, polished English rendering, and at the same time indicate the full force and meaning of the original. The Commentaries of Caesar are camp notes, hastily composed, and sent to Rome annually, merely as military reports. The author never considered them a classical production and for that reason never carefully revised and polished them as did Cicero his famous orations.

As Caesar, in early life, devoutly studied and practiced versification, with the secret hope of becoming a famous poet, his writings are occasionally enlivened with poetic terms and expressions. Although his epigrams and lyrics have disappeared, his military notes, hastily written, have become immortal. The poetic element in the Commentaries appearing in many vivid and original uses of words, calls for especial attention in a translation. These Commentaries, little valued as a literary work by the author, were soon adopted as a text by ancient Roman teachers, and ever since have been found indispensable in classical instruction because of their artistic perfection. We have endeavored to indicate these natural touches by following Caesar as closely as possible.

The elements of Caesar's work which render it so suitable as a means of instruction also make it the most difficult to translate into good English. The Commentaries, being mere camp notes, are written with a conciseness, force and teeming thought in a climactic progress, which the English idiom can with difficulty reproduce from the brevity of the Latin. Caesar's command of climax, his fluency, his poetic use of words, together with his philosophic outlook, cause a strictly literal translation to be very inadequate.

The frequent use of indirect discourse is also an added difficulty for the translator. If the rendering of such passages is too free, the translation as a reproduction of the Latin thought and a clue to the Latin construction, will be most misleading to the student. For practical use a translation must be transparent and behind it the original language must be visible. In certain passages where Caesar desires to represent rapid action, he has used a vivid and condensed form of construction, even for Latin. A smooth and easy rendering would fail to reproduce the life and vitality of Caesar's thought.

He will suddenly use a word in a bright and original manner, even as we might expect from the pen of a poet, and unless the feeling and force of the passage is rendered as well as the bare thought, an important element of Caesar's style is entirely lost. Caesar possessed such a command of both the essential and secondary meanings of Latin terms that his brief and cursory notes shine with these gems of thought. The natural Latin order of thought and expression, a style somewhat inverted to the English thinking mind, of course is found in Caesar in all its Roman complexity. Beside Caesar has inverted forms of expression, peculiarly his own.

Translators therefore have found it impracticable to preserve the Latin order of the original and the student after the use of the interlinear must reconstruct his own translation and by comparison with the usual text book, will be able to appreciate the power and beauty of the Latin language, which must in a large degree escape even the most careful translation, as a result of the artificial English order of the Latin words.



Owing to the prevalence of these difficulties throughout the Commentaries of Caesar and the inadequacy of the usual methods of translation, a new system has been adopted in the production of this interlinear. In the reproduction of the Latin words into English it has been the endeavor to render the Latin terms as literally and exactly as possible, consistent with good English idiom. To remedy the crudeness of passages which have been impossible to render exactly into our idiom in an interlinear translation and which would become too wordy beneath the Latin, explanatory notes have been added in many instances providing a freer translation. Notes of this nature are an innovation in an interlinear and taken together with the parallel translation will afford both a free and an exactly literal rendering. In this manner the full meaning, the original and poetic feeling, the strength and rapidity, the artistic completeness of Caesar's style, by comparison of the renderings, can be obtained.

In order to modify exact renderings so that a more pleasing English idiom may be produced, not too far removed from the Latin sense, brackets have been used about these synonymous terms and expressions. In translating, if desired, these bracketed portions may be substituted for the more exact renderings which immediately precede. It has been the endeavor in every instance not to use in brackets any forms which would mislead the student concerning the essential meanings of the Latin text.

Words and expressions which may be entirely omitted or those which may be supplied bodily to suit more nearly the English phraseology, and which are not synonymous, have been inserted in parentheses. Such parenthetical portions may be used or omitted as the student's judgment may decide in order to obtain the best English rendering. In the preparation of this work the standard Latin school text as regards punctuation and orthography in so far as possible has been followed.



# THE COMMENTARIES OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

## ON THE GALLIC WAR

---

### FIRST BOOK

Cæsar, in recounting the events of the war which he waged in Gaul, first describes Gaul itself, then tells of two battles against the Helvetians and then of one against the Germans.

1. Omnis<sup>1</sup> Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam  
 All Gaul is divided into three parts: one  
 quarum Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,  
 of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,  
 qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur  
 (those) who in (the) language of themselves are called  
 Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter  
 Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between  
 se linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen  
 themselves in language, in institutions, (and) in laws. The river  
 Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,  
 Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,  
 Matrona et Sequana à Belgis. Belgæ sunt  
 the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are  
 fortissimi omnium horum, propter eam quod absunt  
 the bravest of all these, because (that) they are distant  
 longissimè à cultu atque humanitate  
 farthest from the cultivation and humanity [refinement]  
 Provinciæ; que mercatores minimè sæpe  
 of the Province [Provence]; and merchants least often

commēant ad eos, atque important ea,  
resort to them, and import those (things)

quæ pertinent ad animos effeminandos.  
which tend to minds to be effeminated [is enfeeble

Sunt proximi Germanis, qui  
their minds]. They are nearest to the Germans, who

incōlunt trans Rhenum, cum quibus gerunt  
dwell beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on

bellum continenter : de quâ causâ Helveti  
war continually : from which cause the Helvetii

quodque præcedunt reliquos Gallos virtute;  
also go before [excel] the remaining Gauls in valor;

quod contendunt cum Germanis fere, quotidianis  
because they contend with the Germans almost, in daily

præliis quum aut prohibent eos suis  
battles when either they prohibit [bar] them from their own

finibus, aut ipsi gerunt bellum in  
borders, or they [themselves] carry on war in

finibus eorum.<sup>2</sup> Una pars eorum, quam  
the borders of them [their]. One part of them, which

dictum-est Gallos obtinere, capit initium à  
it has been said the Gauls to hold, [possess] takes beginning from

flumine Rhodano; continetur flumine Garumnâ,  
the river Rhone; it is bounded by the river Garonne,

Oceano, finibus Belgarum; etiam attingit  
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum<sup>3</sup> à Sequanis et  
[reaches to] the river Rhine from the Sequani and

Helvetiis;<sup>4</sup> vergit ad Septentriones  
the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven stars [the North].

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finibus Galliæ;  
The Belgæ rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni;  
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.  
they look unto [towards] the North and the rising sun.

Aquitania pertinet à flumine Garumnâ ad  
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et etiam partem Oceani,  
the Pyrenees mountains, and that part of the Ocean,

quæ est ad Hispaniam, spectat inter occasum  
which is [next] to Spain, it looks between the going down

Solis et Septentriones.  
of the sun [West] and the North.

2. Orgetorix fuit longè nobilissimus et ditissimus  
Orgetorix was by far the most noble and the richest

apud Helvetios. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco  
among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus

Pisone consulibus, inductus cupiditate regni,  
Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom, [of

fecit conjunctionem nobilitatis; et persuasit  
reigning] made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded

civitati, ut exirent de suis finibus  
(to) the state that they should go out from their own borders

cum omnibus copiis: esse perfacile, quum  
with all their forces: to be [that it was] very easy, since

præstarent (imp. subj.) omnibus virtute, potiri  
they were excelling (to) all in valor, to gain

imperio totius Galliæ. Persuait id eis<sup>5</sup>  
the empire of all Gaul. He persuaded (to) this (to) them

hoc facilius, quod Helvetii continentur  
by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained in [hemmed in]

undique natura loci; ex<sup>6</sup> unâ parte,  
on every side by the nature of the place; from [on] one side,

latissimo atque altissimo flumine Rheno,  
by the widest [very wide] and very deep river Rhine,

qui dividit Helvetium agrum à Germanis:  
which divides the Helvetian land from the Germans:

ex alterâ parte, altissimo monte Jurâ,  
on the other side, by the very high mountain Jura, [St. Cloudel]

qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;  
which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (on the)

tertiâ, lacu Lemano, et  
third (side), by lake Lemanus [the lake Geneva], and

flumine Rhodano, qui dividit nostram provinciam  
by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetiis. Fiebat  
[Provençe] from the Helvetii. It was made [it happened]

his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp.sub.) minus  
by these things, that both they were roving less

latè et possent (imp.sub.) minus facîle inferre  
widely and were able less easily to bring on

bellum finitimis. De<sup>7</sup> quâ causâ homines  
[wage] war (on) neighbors. From which cause men

cupîdi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem  
desirous of warring were affected with great distress. But

arbitrabantur<sup>8</sup> se habere angustos fines, pro  
they were deeming themselves to have narrow borders, for

multitudine hominum et pro gloriâ belli atque  
the multitude of men and for the glory of war and

fortitudinis; qui patebant ducenta et  
of bravery; which was lying open [extending] two hundred and

quadraginta millia passuum in longitudinem, centum  
forty thousand (of) paces into [in] length, a hundred

et octoginta in latitudinem.  
and eighty into [in] width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate  
Induced by these things, and excited by the authority

Orgetorigis, constituerunt comparare ea,  
of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)

quæ pertinerent (imp.subj.) ad proficiscendum;  
which were pertaining to setting out; [the expedition]

coëmère quàm maximum numerum  
to buy up as the greatest [the greatest possible] number

jumentorum et carrorum; facerè<sup>9</sup> quàm  
of beasts of burden [cattle] and of wagons; to make as

maximas sementes, ut copia frumenti suppeteret  
the greatest sowings, that a supply of corn might be at hand

in itinère; confirmare pacem et amicitiam cum  
on the way [march]; to confirm peace and friendship with

proximis civitatibus.<sup>†</sup> Duxerunt biennium<sup>10</sup>  
the nearest states. They led [thought] two years

esse satis sibi ad eas res  
time to be enough for themselves for those things

conficiendas ; confirmant lege profectionem  
to be accomplished ; they established by law (their) departure

in tertium annum. Orgetōrix<sup>11</sup> deligitur ad  
upon [for] the third year. Orgetorix is chosen for

ēas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sibi  
those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself

legationem ad civitates. In ēo itinēre persuadet  
an embassy to the states. In this journey he persuades

Castīco, filiō Catamantaledis, Seqāno, pāter<sup>12</sup>  
(to) Casticus, son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, the father

cujus obtinuērat regnum in Sequānis multos  
of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many

annos, et appellatus-ērat amicus Romani populi  
years, and had been called friend of the Roman people

à Senatu, ut occuparet regnum in  
by the Senate, that he should occupy the kingdom in

sua civitate, quod pāter antē habuērat : que  
his own state, which (his) father before had held : and

item persuadet Ædūo Dumnorīgi, fratri  
likewise he persuades (to) the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother

Divitiāci, qui ēo tempore obtinebat principatum  
of Divitiacus, who in this time was holding sovereignty

in sua civitate, ac ērat maxīmē acceptus  
in his state, and was especially acceptable

plebi, ut conaretur idem ;  
to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing) ;

que dat suam filiam in matrimonium ei.  
and gives his daughter into [in] marriage to him.

Prōbat illis esse perfacile factu  
He proves to them to be [that it was] very easy to be done

perficere conata, propterēa quōd ipse  
to effect (the things) attempted, because (that) (he) himself

esset (imp. subj.) obtenturus imperium suae  
was about to hold [obtain] the empire of his

civitatis : esse non dubium quin  
state : to be [that it was] not doubtful but that

Helvetii possent (imp. subj.) plurimum totius  
the Helvetians were able most [most powerful] of all

Galliæ; <sup>con</sup>confirmat,<sup>13</sup> se conciliaturum  
Gaul; he confirms [assures], himself about to secure

regna illis suis copiis que suo exercitu.  
the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hac oratione, dant inter se  
Induced by this speech, they give between themselves

fidem et iusjurandum; et regno  
faith and oath; and the kingdom [government]

occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos  
being occupied by three most powerful and most steadfast

populos, sperant<sup>14</sup> sese posse potiri totius  
peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess (of) all

Galliæ.  
Gaul.

4. Ut ea res enuntiata-est Helvetiis per  
When this thing [action] was declared to the Helvetii through  
indiciū, suis moribus coegerunt Orgetorigem dicere  
a disclosure, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say

causam ex vinculis. Oportebat poenam  
[plead] (his) cause from [in] bonds. It must be punishment

sequi damnatum, ut cremaretur  
to [should] follow (him) condemned, (viz:) that he be burnt

igni. Die constitutâ dictionis causæ,  
with fire. On the day appointed of saying [pleading] the cause,

Orgetorix coegit omnem suam familiam, ad  
Orgetorix collected all his family, [clan] to [about]

decem millia hominum ad iudiciū; et<sup>15</sup>  
ten thousand (of) men to the trial; and

conduxit eodem omnes suos clientes que  
he led together to the same place all his clients and

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numerum:  
debt bondsmen. of whom he was having a great number;

per eos, eripuit se ne-diceret  
by these, he rescued himself that he might not plead

causam. Quum civitas, incitata ob  
the cause. When the state, excited on account of

eam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exequi suum jus  
this thing, was endeavoring to execute its right



armis, que magistratus cogērent (imp. subj.)  
by arms, and the magistrates were collecting

multitudīnem homīnum ex agris, Orgetōrix mortuus-est;  
a multitude of men out of the fields, Orgetorix died;

nēque<sup>16</sup> suspiciō ābest, ut Helvetiī arbitrantur, quin  
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but that

ipse consciverit (perf. subj.) mortem sibi.  
himself determined death to himself [committed suicide].

5. Nihilominus post mortem ejus Helvetiī  
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii  
conantur facere id, quod constituērant, ut  
endeavor to do this, which they had determined, that

exānt ē suis finibus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt  
they may go out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad eam rem, incendunt  
themselves to have been prepared to [for] this thing, they set fire to

omnia sua oppida, ad duodēcim numero, vicos  
all their towns, to [about] twelve in number, villages

ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia;  
to [about] four hundred, the remaining private buildings;

comburent omne frumentum, præter quod erant  
they burn up all the corn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis  
about to carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dōmum sublatā, essent<sup>17</sup> paratiores ad  
home being taken away, they might be more ready to

omnia pericula subeunda: jubent quemque  
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dōmo sibi molita cibaria trium  
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of [for] three

mensium. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,  
months. They persuade (to) the Rauraci, and (to) the Tulingi,

et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti usi  
and (to) the Latobrigi, (their) neighbors, that having adopted

eodem consilio, suis oppidis que vicis  
the same plan, their towns and villages

exustis, proficiscantur unā cum eis:  
having been burnt up, they should depart together with them:

que<sup>18</sup> adsciscunt receptos ad se socios  
and they vote in received to themselves as allies

sibi, Boios, qui incoluerant trans Rhenum  
to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt across the Rhine

et transierant in Noricum agrum, que  
and had passed over into the Norican land, and

oppugnabant Noreiam.  
had besieged Noreia.

6. Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus  
There were in all two roads, by which roads

possent exire domo; unum per  
they might be able to go forth from home; one through

Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem  
the Sequani narrow and difficult between Mount

Juram et flumen Rhodanum, qua singuli  
Jura and the river Rhone, by [in] which single

carri vix ducerentur; autem altissimus  
wagons scarcely could be led; but [moreover] the highest [a very

mons impendebat, ut perpauci facile  
high] mountain was overhanging, so that very few easily

possent prohibere; alterum per nostram  
would be able [could] (to) prohibit; the other through our

provinciam, multo facilius atque expeditius;  
province, much more easy and more unimpeded;

propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et  
because (that) between the borders of the Helvetii and

Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant,  
of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace [subdued]

Rhodanus fluit, que is nonnullis locis transitur  
the Rhone flows, and this in some places is passed

vado. / Genava est extremum oppidum Allobrogum  
by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges

que proximum finibus Helvetiorum; ex eo  
and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that

oppido pons pertinet ad Helvetios. Existimabant<sup>19</sup>  
town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They were thinking

sese ve persuasuros Allobrogibus, (dat.) quod  
themselves either about to persuade the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bōno anīmo in  
they were seeming not yet with good mind towards

Romanum popūlum; vel coacturos vi,  
the Roman people; or about to force by violence,

ut paterentur eos ire per suos fines.  
that they should suffer them to go through their borders.

Omnibus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,  
All things being prepared for (their) departure,

dicunt diem, quā die omnes conveniant  
they say [appoint] a day, on which day all may assemble

ad ripam Rhodāni. Is dies erat ante quintum  
at the bank of the Rhone. This day was before the fifth

diem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucio Pisone,  
day of the Kalends of April [27th March]; Lucius Piso,

Aulo Gabinio consulibus.  
Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsari,  
When this had been told to Cæsar (that),

eos conari facere iter per nostram  
them to [they would] endeavor to make a journey through our

provinciam, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et  
province, he hastens to depart from the city, and

contendit in ulteriorem Galliam itineribus<sup>20</sup> quam  
rushes into farther Gaul by journeys as

maximis potest, et pervenit ad Genavam. Imperat  
greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders

toti provinciae quam maximum  
(to) the whole province (to furnish) as greatest [the greatest

numerus militum (una legio erat omnino  
possible] number of soldiers (one legion was in all

in ulteriore Gallia). Jūbet pontem, qui erat  
in farther Gaul). He orders the bridge, which was

ad Genavam, rescindi. / Ubi Helvetii facti-sunt  
at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made

certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissimos  
more certain [told] of the arrival of him, they sent the noblest

civitatis legatos ad eum; cujus legationis  
of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy

Nummeius et Verudoctius obtinebant principem locum:  
 Numeius and Verodoctius were holding the chief place:

qui dicèrent esse sibi in animo,  
 who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they

sine ullo maleficio facere iter per  
 intended), without any damage to make a journey through

provinciam, propterea quod haberent (imp. subj.) nullum  
 the province, because (that) they were having no

aliud iter: rogare,<sup>21</sup> ut liceat sibi  
 other journey [road]: to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves

facere id voluntate ejus. Cæsar,<sup>22</sup> quod tenebat  
 to do this by the will of him. Cæsar, because he held

memoriam, Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, que  
 in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and

exercitum ejus pulsum ab Helvetiis, et missum  
 the army of him driven [routed] by the Helvetii, and sent

sub jugum, putabat non concedendum; neque  
 under the yoke, considered (it) not to be granted; nor

existimabat homines inimico animo, facultate  
 did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

faciendi itineris per provinciam datam,  
 of making a journey through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio: Tamen  
 about to refrain [would refrain] from injury and damage: However

ut spatium posset intercedere, dum milites,  
 that a space [period] might be able to intervene, while the soldiers,

quos imperaverat, convenirent, respondit,  
 whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, (to the

se<sup>23</sup> sumpturum diem ad deliberandum;  
 ambassadors) himself about to take a day [time] to deliberate;

si vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad  
 if they were wishing any thing let them return at

idus Aprilis.  
 the ides of April.

8. Inter ea cum legione, quam habebat  
 Meanwhile with this legion, which he was having

cum se que militibus qui conveniant ex  
 with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provinciā, perducit murum in altitudinem  
the province, he constructs a wall into [in] height

sexdecim pedum, que fossam à lacu Lemanno,  
(of) sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

qui influit in flumen Rhodanum, ad montem Juram,  
which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura,

qui dividit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis,  
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

decem<sup>24</sup> et novem millia (pl.) passum. Eo opere  
ten and nine [nineteen] thousand (of) paces. This work

perfecto, disponit praesidia, communit castella;  
being completed, he posts garrisons, (he) fortifies the redoubts;

quod posset prohibere facilius, si  
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.  
they should endeavor to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ea dies venit, quam constituerat cum  
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad eum;  
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him.

negat<sup>25</sup> se more et exemplo Romani  
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

populi, posse dare iter per provinciam ulli;  
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.  
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facere vim. Helvetii dejecti eam  
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from this

spe, alii, navibus<sup>26</sup> junctis, que compluribus  
hope, others [some], ships being joined, and a great many

ratibus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua<sup>27</sup>  
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdum,  
the least depth of the river was, sometimes in daytime,

saepe noctu, conati si possent (imp.  
more often by night, having endeavored if they were able

subj.) perrumpere, repulsi munitione (sing.)  
to break through repulsed by the fortifications

opëris, et concursu et telis  
of the work, and by the charge and weapons

militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.  
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavor.

9. Una viâ per Sequānos relinquebatur;  
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequānis invitis, potërant non  
by which the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustias. Quum possent (imp.  
to go on account of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere iis (dat.) suâ sponte,  
not to persuade them by their own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorîgem Ædûm,  
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan,

ut, ðo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à  
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequānis. Dumnorîx potërat plurimum  
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most [had very great in-

fluence] apud Sequānos gratiâ et largitione, et  
with the Sequani by service and (by) lavishness, and

erat amicus Helvetiis, quod<sup>23</sup> duxerat in  
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonium filiam Orgetorîgis ex eâ civitate;  
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix from that state;

et<sup>29</sup> adductus cupiditate regni, studebat  
and induced by a desire of the kingdom, he was eager

nôvis rebus; et volebat habere quamplurimas  
for new things; and was wishing to have as many as possible

civitates obstrictas suo beneficio sibi. Itaque  
states bound by his favor to himself. Therefore

suscipit rem, et impëtrat à Sequānis,  
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetios ire per suos  
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

finis, que perficit uti dent obsides inter  
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequāni ne prohibëant  
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit [that they may

	Helvetios	itinēre ;	Helveti,
not prohibit]	the Helvetii	from the journey;	the Helvetii

ut	transēant	sine	maleficio	et	injuriam.
that	they may pass	without	damage	and	injury.

10. Nuntiatur	Cæsari,	esse	in	animo,
It is announced	to Cæsar,	to be [it is]	in	the mind,

Helvetiis	facere	iter	per	agrum
to [of] the Helvetii	to make	the journey	through	the land

Sequanorum	et	Æduorum	in	fines
of the Sequani	and	of the Ædui	into	the borders

Santonum,	qui	absunt	non	longè	à
of the Santones,	who	are distant	not	far	from

finibus Tolosatium,	quæ civitas	est	in	provincia.
the borders of the Tolosates,	which state	is	in	the province.

Si id fieret (imp. subj.)	intelligebat	futurum
If this should be[were]done	he understood (it)	about to be[it would]

cum magno periculo provinciae,	ut	haberet
be[ with great danger of the province,	that	it should have

bellicosos homines,	inimicos	Romani	populi,
warlike men,	enemies	of the Roman	people,

finitimos	locis	patentibus	et	maximè
neighbors	to places	open	and	especially

frumentariis.	Ob	has causas	præfecit
abounding in corn.	On account of	these causes	he appointed

Titum Labienum	legatum	ei	munitioni quam
Titus Labienus	lieutenant	to this	fortification which

fecerat :	ipse	contendit	in
he had made:	(he) himself	hastens	into

Italiam magnis	itineribus	que ibi	conscribit duas
Italy by great	journeys	and there	he levies two

legiones;	et	educit ex	hibernis	tres,
legions;	and	he leads from	winter quarters	the three.

quæ	hiemabant	circum	Aquileiam ;	et <sup>30</sup>	quâ
which	were wintering	around	Aquileia;	and	by which

iter erat proximum	in	ulteriorem	Galliam
(way) the journey was	nearest	into	farther Gaul

per	Alpes,	contendit	ire	cum	his
through	the Alps,	he hastens	to go	with	these

quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli,  
 five                   legions.           There the Centrones and the Graioceli,

et Caturiges, superioribus locis occupatis  
 and the Caturiges,           the higher           places           having been occupied

conantur prohibere exercitum itinere. His  
 endeavor           to check           the army           on the journey.           These

pulsis compluribus præliis, pervenit ab  
 having been repulsed           in several           battles,           he comes           from

Ocëlo, quod est extremum citerioris provinciæ,  
 Ocelum,           which is the extreme(town) of the hither province,

in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciæ  
 into the borders           of the Vocontii of the farther           province

septimo die; inde in fines Allobrogum;  
 on the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercitum ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos.  
 he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiavi.

Hi sunt primi extra provinciam trans Rhodanum.  
 These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxerant suas copias  
 The Helvetii already           had led over           their forces

per angustias et fines Sequanorum et  
 through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenierant in fines Æduorum, que  
 had come into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædii, quum  
 were laying waste the lands of them. The Ædui when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendere se que<sup>31</sup>  
 they were able not to defend themselves and

sua ab his, mittunt legatos ad  
 their own(effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsarem rogatum auxilium; "se omni tempore  
 Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

meritos esse ita de Romano populo, ut,  
 (to) have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercitus,agri  
 almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuerint (perf. subj.) non vastari, liberi<sup>32</sup>  
 ought not to be laid waste the children



eorum abduci in servitutem, oppīda  
of them to be led away into slavery, the towns

expugnari.” Eodem tempore, Ædūi  
to be taken by storm.” At the same time, the Ædui

Ambarri quōque, necessarij et consanguinēi  
Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen

Æduorum, faciunt Cæsarem certiozem,  
of the Ædui, make Cæsar more certain [inform Cæsar],

“sese, agris<sup>33</sup> depopulatis, non facilē prohibere  
“themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit

vim hostium ab oppīdis.” Item  
the violence of the enemy from the towns.” Likewise

Allobroges, qui habebant vicos que  
the Allobroges, who were having villages and

possessiones trans Rhodānum, recipiunt se fugā  
possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight

ad Cæsarem; et<sup>34</sup> demonstrant, nihil reliqui  
to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining

esse sibi præter solum agri. Adductus  
to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced

quibus rebus, Cæsar statuit non expectandum  
by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited

sibi, num, omnibus  
to [by] himself [that he ought not to wait], until, all

fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetij  
the fortunes of the allies having been consumed, the Helvetii

pervenirent (imp.subj.) in Santōnes.  
should come into the Santones.

12. Arar est flumen, quod influit in  
The Arar [the Saone] is a river, which flows into

Rhodānum incredibili lenitate per fines  
the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders

Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit  
of the Ædui and of the Sequani; so that it is possible

non judicari oculis in utram partem  
not to be judged by the eyes in which part [direction]

fluat. (pres. sub.) Helvetij transibant id, ratibus ac  
it flows. The Helvetii were crossing this, rafts and

lintribus junctis. Ubi<sup>35</sup> Cæsar factus-est certior  
 boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain

per exploratores, Helvetios jam transduxisse  
 by scouts (that), the Helvetii already to have [had] led over

id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam  
 this river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth

partem esse reliquam citra flumen Ararim;  
 part to be remaining on this side the river Arar [Saone];

de tertîa vigiliâ profectus è  
 from [at] the third watch [midnight] having set out from

castris cum tribus legionibus pervēnit ad eam  
 the camp with three legions he arrives [comes] to this

partem, quæ nondum transierat flumen.  
 part, which not yet had passed the river.

Aggressus eos impeditos et inopinantes  
 Having attacked them encumbered and unaware

concidit magnam partem eorum; reliqui  
 he cut up [slew] a great part of them; the rest

mandarunt sese fugæ atque abdiderunt in  
 committed themselves to flight and hid away into [among]

proximas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:  
 the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurine:

nam omnis Helvetiâ civitas divisa-est in  
 for all the Helvetian state has been divided into

quatuor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum  
 four cantons. This one canton, when

exisset (pl. pref. subj.) dōmo, memoriâ  
 it had gone out from home, in the memory

nostrorum patrum, interfecerat Lucium Cassium  
 of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius

Consulem, et miserat exercitum ejus sub  
 the Consul, and had sent the army of him [his army] under

jūgum. Ita sive casu, sive consilio  
 the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the plan

immortalium deorum, pars Helvetiæ civitatis,  
 of the immortal gods, the part of the Helvetian state,

quæ intulerat insignem calamitatem Romano  
 which had brought on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

popūlo, ěa princeps persolvit pœnas. In quā  
people, this chief [first] paid penalties. In which

re Cæsar ultus-est non solūm publicas sed etiā  
thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also

privatas injuriās; quòd Tigurini interfecerant  
private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain

Luciūm Pisonem legatum, āvum Luci  
Lucius Piso the lieutenant, (general) grandfather of Lucius

Pisonis socēri ejus, eodem prœliō,  
Piso father in law of him [Cæsar], in the same battle,

quo Cassiūm.  
in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc prœliō facto, ut posset  
'his battle having been made, that he might be able

consēqui reliquas copias Helvetiorum, curat<sup>36</sup>  
to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes care

pontem faciendum in Arāre, atque ita transducit  
a bridge to be made on the Arar, [Saone] and so leads over

exercitūm. Helvetii commoti repentino adventu  
the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival

ejus, quum<sup>37</sup> intelligērent (imp. subj.) illum  
of him, when they were understanding him

fecisse uno dīe id, quod ipsi  
to have [he had] done in one day that, which [they] themselves

confecerant ægerrimè viginti diebus, ut  
had accomplished most grievously in twenty days, that

transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad  
they should pass the river, send ambassadors to

ẽum; /cujus legationis Divico fuit princeps, qui  
him; / of which embassy Divico was chief, who

fuērat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bellū.  
had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war.

Is ita egit cum Cæsāre; "si Romanus  
He thus acts [treats] with Cæsar; "if the Roman

popūlus faceret pacem cum Helvetiis, Helvetios  
people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii

ituros in ěam partem, atque futuros  
about to go[would go] into that part, and about to [would] be

ibi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque voluissit  
 there, where Cæsar might appoint and might wish (them)  
 esse; sin perseveraret persëqui bello,  
 to be; but if he should continue to pursue with war,  
 reminisceretur vetëris incommōdi Romani  
 let him remember (of) the old misfortune of the Roman  
 popūli, et pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum:  
 people, and (of) the ancient valor of the Helvetii:  
 quòd adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisò  
 because he had assailed unexpectedly  
 unum pagum, quum ìi, qui trans-  
 one canton, when these, who had  
 ìssent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen, possent (imp. subj.)  
 crossed the river, were able  
 non ferre auxiliū sūis; tribuëret  
 not to bring aid to their (people); let him attribute  
 ne aut magnopëre sūæ virtuti ob  
 not either very greatly to his own valor on account of  
 ãam rem, aut despicëret ipsos.  
 this thing, nor let him despise themselves.  
 Se ìta didicisse à sūis patrīb<sup>us</sup>  
 They themselves so (to) have learned from their fathers  
 que majorīb<sup>us</sup>, ut contendërent mägis  
 and elders, that they should contend more  
 virtute quàm niterentur dōlo, aut  
 by valor than (that) they should strive by deceit, or  
 insidiis. Quare committëret ne, ut  
 stratagems. Wherefore he should permit not, that  
 is lōcus, ũbi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 this place, where they had stood  
 capëret nomen ac prodëret memoriā  
 should take (its) name and hand down the memory  
 ex calamitate Romani popūli, et  
 from the calamity of the Roman people, and  
 intereccionē exercitūs.  
 the destruction of the army.

14. Cæsar respondit ìta his; “èò  
 Cæsar answered thus to these (words); “therefor?

mīnus dubitationis dāri sibi, quòd  
 less (of) doubt to be [was] given to himself, because  
 teneret (imp. subj.) eas res memoriā, quas  
 he was holding these things in memory, which  
 Helvetii legati commemorāssent (pl. perf.  
 the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned  
 subj.), atque ferre eò gravius,  
 and to bear [he bore it] for this the more heavily,  
 quòd accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) minùs  
 that they had befallen the less  
 merito Romani populi, qui si  
 by the merit of the Roman people, which if  
 fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) conscius sibi alicujus  
 it had been conscious to itself of some  
 injuriæ, fuisse non  
 injury (done to the Helvetii) to have been not [it would not have been]  
 difficile cavere; sed deceptum  
 difficult to beware [to be on guard], but to have [it was] deceived in  
 eò, quòd nèque intelligeret (imp. subj.)  
 this, because neither was it thinking (anything)  
 commissum à se, quare timeret; nèque  
 to have [had] been committed by itself, wherefore it should fear; nor  
 putaret (imp. subj.) timendum sine causâ.  
 was it thinking to be feared [it should fear] without cause.  
 Quòd si vellet (imp. subj.) oblivisci veteris contumeliæ,  
 But if he was wishing to forget (of) the ancient insult,  
 num posset etiam deponere memoriā  
 whether would he be able also to lay aside the memory  
 recentium injuriarum, quòd, eò invito,  
 of the recent injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,  
 tentāssent (pl. perf. subj.) iter per Provinciā  
 they had attempted a march through the Province  
 per vim, quòd vexāssent (pl. perf. subj.) Æduos,  
 by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,  
 quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobroges? Quòd  
 that (also) the Ambarri, that (also) the Allobroges? That  
 gloriarentur (imp. subj.) tam insolenter suā victoriā;  
 they were boasting so insolently in [of] their victory:

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injuriās  
and that they wonder that they (to) have committed outrages

impunè tam dū, pertinere eòdem.  
with impunity so long, to pertain [pertains] to the same thing.

Enim immortales dēos consuēsse,  
For the immortal gods (to) have been accustomed,

quòd homīnes dolēant gravius ex  
that men may grieve more heavily from [by]

commutatione rerum, quos vēlint (pr. subj.) ulcisci  
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelēre eorum, interdum concedere  
for the wickedness of them [their wickedness], sometimes (to) grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem  
more prosperous affairs to these, and more lasting

impunitatem. Cūm ēa sint (pres. subj.)  
impunity. Although these (things) are

ita, tamen si obsides dentur (pres. subj.) sibi ab iis,  
so, yet if hostages may be [are] given to himself by them,

utī intelligat facturos ēa  
that he may understand (that they) about to [will] do these (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfaciant  
which they promise; and if they satisfy

Ædūis de injuriis, quas  
(to) the Ædui concerning the wrongs, which

intulērint (perf. subj.) ipsis que sociis  
they have inflicted on them and on the allies

eorum, item si Allobrogibus, sese esse  
of them [their allies], likewise (if) (to) the Allobroges, he himself to be

facturum pacem cum iis." Divico respondit:  
about to [will] make peace with them." Divico answered;

"Helvetios institutos-esse ita à majoribus,  
"the Helvetii (to) have been instructed thus by (their) ancestors,

utī consueverint (perf. subj.) accipere, non dare  
that they should be accustomed to receive, not to give

obsides; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."  
hostages; the Roman people to be [are] witness of this thing.

Hoc responso dāto, discessit.  
This answer having been given, he departed.

15. Postëro dñe mōvent castra ex ðo  
 On the next day they move the camp from that  
 lōco. Cæsar fācit Idem; que præmittit  
 place. Cæsar does the same; and sends forward  
 omnem equitatum ad numërum quatüor millium,  
 all the cavalry to the number of four thousand,  
 quem habebat coactum ex omni provinciâ,  
 which he was having collected from all the province,  
 et Ædūis atque sociis eorum;<sup>37a</sup>  
 and from the Ædui and from the allies of them;  
 qui vidëant in quas partes hostes faciānt  
 who may see into what parts the enemy may make  
 iter: qui, insecuti cupidius  
 (their) way: who, having followed up more [too] eagerly  
 novissimum agmen, committunt prælium  
 the last troop [the rear], join battle  
 cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno  
 with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange [an unfavorable]  
 lōco, et pauci de nostris cādunt. Quo prælio  
 place, and a few of our(men) fall. By which battle  
 Helvetii sublati, quòd quingentis  
 the Helvetii being lifted up [elated] because with five hundred  
 equitibus propulërant tantam multitudinē  
 horsemen they had repulsed so great a multitude  
 equitum, cœperunt subsistëre audaciùs;  
 of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly;  
 nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine lacessëre  
 sometimes from the last troop [the rear] to challenge  
 prælio nostros. Cæsar continebat suos  
 with battle our(men). Cæsar was restraining his (men)  
 à prælio, ac habebat sātis  
 from battle, and was holding (it) enough  
 in præsentia prohibere hostem  
 in [for] the present to prohibit the enemy  
 rapinis, pabulationibus, que populationibus.  
 from rapines, from foragings, and from devastations.  
 Ita circiter quindëcim dñes fecerunt iter,  
 So about fifteen days they made the march,

ŭti inter novissimum agmen hostium et  
that between the last troop [rear] of the enemy and

nostrum primum, non amplius quinis aut  
our first [front], not more (than) five or

senis millibus passuum interesset.  
six thousand (of) paces intervened.

16. Interim<sup>38</sup> Cæsar quotidie flagitare  
Meanwhile Cæsar daily to demand earnestly from

Æduos frumentum, quod polliciti-essent (pl. perf.  
the Ædui the corn, which they had promised

subj.) publice. Nam propter frigora quod  
publicly. For on account of the cold because

Gallia posita est sub Septentrionibus (pl.),  
Gaul is situated under [toward] the North

(ut dictum-est antè,) non modò frumenta  
(as has been said before,) not only the corn (crops)

erant non matura in agris sed ne  
were not ripe in the fields but not

pabuli<sup>39</sup> quidem satis magna copia,  
of forage even a sufficiently great plenty,

suppetebat. Autem poterat minus ut eo (abl.)  
was supplied. But he was able less to use this

frumento, quod subvexerat navibus flumine  
corn, which he had carried up in ships by the river

Arare, propterea quod Helvetii avertērant  
Arar, because (that) the Helvetii had turned away

iter ab Arare, à quibus nolebat  
the march from the Arar, from whom he was unwilling

discedere. Ædūi<sup>40</sup> ducere diem  
to depart. The Ædui to lead [put off] day

ex die, dicere conferri,  
from [after] day, to say (the corn) to be brought together

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit  
to be conveyed, to be present [ready]. When he understood

se duci diutius, et diem  
(he) himself to be [is] led [put off] longer, and the day

instare, quo die oporteret metiri  
to be [is] at hand, on which day it would be due to measure out



frumentum            militibus ;            principibus            eorum  
corn            to the soldiers;            the chiefs            of them

convocatis,<sup>41</sup>            quorum            habebat            magnum  
having been called together,            of whom            he was having            a great

copiam            in            castris,            in            his            Divitiāco  
number            in            the camp,            in [among] these            Divitiacus

et Lisco, qui praeerat            summo magistratūi  
and Liscus, who was over [invested with] the highest magistracy

(quem Aedui appellant vergobretum, qui creatur  
(which the Aedui name vergobretus, which is created

annuus que habet potestatem vitae que necis  
annually and has the power of life and of death

in suos),            accusat eos            graviter,  
over his own (people) ,            he accuses them            severely,

quod quum posset (imp.subj.) neque emi,  
because when it was possible            neither to be bought,

neque            sumi            ex            agris,            tempore tam  
nor            to be taken from            the fields,            in a time so

necessario,            hostibus            tam            propinquis,  
necessary,            the enemy (being)            so            near,

sublevetur (pres.subj.) non ab iis; praesertim quum,  
he is succored            not by them; especially when,

ex<sup>42</sup> magna parte adductus precibus eorum  
from a great part induced by the prayers of them

susceperit (perf.subj.) bellum,            queritur etiam  
he has undertaken            the war,            he complains also

multo gravius quod destitutus-sit (perf.subj.).  
much the more severely that he had been left destitute (of corn).

17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione  
Then at last Liscus induced by the speech

Cæsaris, proponit quod antea tacuerat:  
of Cæsar, sets forth (that) which before he had kept silent:

“Esse<sup>43</sup>            nonnullos,            auctoritas            quorum  
“To be [that there are] some,            the authority            of whom

valeret (pres.subj.) plurimum apud plebem,  
avails            most[very much]            with the common people,

qui            privati            possint (pres.subj.) plus  
who (though) private (persons)            are powerful            more

quàm magistratus ipsi, hos seditiosâ  
than the magistrates themselves, these by seditious

et imprôbâ oratione detertere multitudîne ne  
and wicked speech (to) deter the multitude lest

confèrent frumentum; quòd dicant  
they may bring together the corn; because they say

(pres.subj.) præstare, si jam possint  
to be [it is] preferable if now they may be able

non obtinere principatum Gallîæ, perferre  
not to obtain the sovereignty of Gaul, to induce

imperîa Gallorum quàm Romanorum; nèque  
the commands of the Gauls than of the Romans; nor

deběant (pres.subj.) dubitare quin, si Romani  
ought they to doubt but that, if the Romans

superavěrint Helvetîos, sint (pres. subj.)  
should overcome the Helvetii, they are

erepturi libertatem Ædûis unâ  
about to snatch away liberty from the Ædui together

cum reliquâ Gallîâ: ab iisdem nostra  
with remaining Gaul: by the same (persons) our

consilîa, quæque gerantur (pres. subj.) in castris, (pl.)  
councils, whatsoever are carried on in the camp,

enuntiari hostîbus; hos posse non  
to be [are] announced to the enemy; these to be [are] able not

coërceri à se: Quin-etiam, quòd  
to be restrained by himself: Moreover, because

enuntiârît (perf. subj.) rem necessariò Cæsâri,  
he has told the thing necessarily to Cæsar,

sese intelligere cum quanto periculô  
himself to understand [that he is aware] with how great danger

fecerît (perf. subj.) id; et ob eam caussam  
he has done it; and for this cause

tacuisse quamdiu potuerit''. (perf. subj.)  
to have [he] kept silent as long as he could''.

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorîgem fratrem  
Cæsar was perceiving Dumnorix the brother

Divitiâci designari hâc oratione Lisci;  
of Divitiacus to be [was] indicated by this speech of Liscus;

sed, quòd            nolebat            eas    res  
but,    since    he was not wishing (that)    these    things to [should]

jactari            pluribus            præsentiibus,            dimittit  
be tossed [debated],            more            (being) present,            he dismisses

concilium, celeriter, retinet Liscum: quærit ex  
the council,    quickly,    he retains Liscus:    he seeks from (him)

solo ea,            quæ    dixerat    in    conventu.  
alone those (things), which    he had said    in    the assembly.

Dicit liberius,            atque    audacius.            Quærit  
He speaks    more freely,            and    more boldly.            He inquires

eâdem ab aliis secreto, reperit esse vera:  
the same (things) from others    apart,    he finds to be true:

"Dumnorigem ipsum esse summâ audaciâ,  
"Dumnorix            himself to be [is] with (of) the highest boldness,

magnâ gratiâ            apud    plebem            propter  
in great            favor            with    the common people            on account of

liberalitatem, cupidum novarum rerum;  
(his) liberality,            desirous            of new            things [revolution];

habere            portoria            que omnia reliqua  
to have [that he had]    the customs duties and    all    the remaining

vectigalia Æduorum complures annos redempta  
taxes            of the Ædui            many            years            purchased

parvo pretio; propterea quòd, ille licente, nemo  
for a small price;            because (that,) he bidding,    no one

audéat (pres. subj.) liceri contra;            his rebus  
dares            to bid            against (him); by these things

et auxisse<sup>44</sup> suam familiarem rem, et  
both to have [he] increased    his    family            estate, and

comparasse magnas facultates ad largiendum.  
to have [he] procured    great            means            for            giving bribes:

semper alere            magnum  
always            to maintain [that he always maintained]            a great

numërum equitatûs suo sumptu, et habere  
number    of horsemen at his own expense, and to have [had] (them).

circum se: neque posse            largiter  
around himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely [nor was he powerful]

solùm dñmi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates;  
only    at home,    but    also    with    the bordering    states:

atque causâ<sup>45</sup> hujus potentiæ, collocâsse  
 and by reason of this power, to have [he had] placed  
 matrem in Biturigibus, homīni illic  
 [married] (his) mother in the Bituriges, to a man there  
 nobilissīmo et potentissīmo; ipsum habere uxorem  
 most noble and most powerful; himself to have [he had] a wife  
 ex Helvetiis: collocâsse sororem ex  
 from the Helvetii: to have placed [he had given] a sister from [by]  
 matre, et sūas propinquas nuptum in aliās  
 the mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other  
 civitates. Favere<sup>45a</sup> et cupere Helvetiis  
 states. To favor and to desire [wish well] to the Helvetii  
 propter eam affinitatem, etiā odisse  
 on account of this alliance, also to hate  
 Cæsārem et Romanos sūo nomīne,  
 Cæsar and the Romans from his own name,  
 quòd potentiā ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)  
 because the power of him had been diminished  
 adventu eorum, et Divitiācus frater restitutus  
 by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored  
 in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris: si  
 into the ancient place of favor and of honor: if  
 quid accīdat Romanis, venire<sup>46</sup> in  
 any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into  
 summan spem regni obtinendi per  
 the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through  
 Helvetios; imperio Romani populi, non<sup>47</sup>  
 the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not  
 mōdò desperare de regno, sed etiā de eā  
 only to despair of the kingdom, [of reigning] but also of that  
 gratiā quam habeat." (pres. subj.) Cæsar etiā  
 favor [influence] which he has." Cæsar also  
 reperiēbat in quærendo, quòd adversum prœlium  
 was finding by inquiring, that [how] the adverse battle  
 equestre (adj.) factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis  
 of cavalry had been made [occured] a few  
 diebus antè, initium ejus fugæ  
 days before, (that) the beginning of this flight

factum-esse à Dumnorīge atque equitibus  
 to have [had] been made by Dumnorix and by the horsemen  
 ejus, (nam Dumnorix præerat equitatūi (dat.),  
 of him, ( for Dumnorix was over [commanded] the cavalry,  
 quem Ædūi misērant auxilīo Cæsāri;) que fugā  
 which the Ædui had sent for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight  
 eorum reliquum equitatum perterritum-esse.  
 of them the remaining cavalry to have [had] been dismayed.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum<sup>48</sup> certissimæ  
 Which things being known, since most certain  
 res accedērent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;  
 facts were approaching [confirming] (to) these suspicions;

quod traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetios per  
 because [that] he [Dumnorix] had led over the Helvetii through  
 fines Sequanorum; quod curasset (pl. perf.  
 the borders of the Sequani; because [that] he had taken care  
 subj.) obsides dandos inter eos: quod  
 hostages to be [should] given between them: because [that]

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnia ea non modò  
 he had done all those (things) not only

sūo injussu et civitatis, sed etiam  
 without his order and (that) of the state, but also

ipsis inscientibus; quod accusaretur (imp.  
 themselves not knowing; because [that] he was accused

subj.) à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur<sup>49</sup>  
 by a magistrate of the Ædui; he [Cæsar] was deeming

satis causæ esse quare, aut ipse animadverteret  
 enough (of) cause to be [was] wherefore, either himself should attend

in eum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertere.  
 upon [to] him, or should order the state to attend (to him).

Unum repugnabat omnibus his, quod cognovērat  
 One (thing) was opposing (to) all these, that he had known

summum studium fratris Divitiaci in  
 the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto [towards]

Romanum populum, summam voluntatem in  
 the Roman people, (his) highest good will unto [toward]

se, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam.  
 himself, (his) preeminent faith. justice, temperance.

Nam verebatur, ne offendēret animum Divitiāci  
 For he was fearing, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicio ejus. Itaque prius quàm  
 by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than [before that]

conaretur quidquam, jūbet Divitiācum  
 he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se; et quotidianis  
 to be called to himself; and the daily [usual]

interpretibus remotis, colloquitur cum eo.  
 interpreters having been removed, he converses with him,

per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem  
 through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provinciæ Galliæ, suum familiarem, cui  
 of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to [in]whom

habebat summam fidem omnium rerum;  
 he was having the highest faith [confidence] of all things

simul commonefacit, quæ dicta-sint  
 at the same time he reminds, (Divitiacus) what (things) were said

de Dumnorige in concilio Gallorum, ipso  
 of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixerit (perf  
 (being)present; and shows what every one has said

subj.) separatim de eo apud se. Petit  
 separately of him to himself [Cæsar]. He asks

atque hortatur ut, sine offensione animi ejus,  
 and exhorts that, without offence of mind of him,

vel ipse statuât de eo,  
 either he himself [Cæsar] may determine of him [pass judgment on him],

caussâ cognitâ; vel jubeat  
 (his) cause being known [the case being tried]; or may order

civitatem statuere.  
 the state to determine.

20. Divitiācus complexus Cæsarem cum multis  
 Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many

lacrymis coepit obsecrare, “nestatuēret  
 tears began to beseech, “that he should not determine

quid gravius in fratrem; se scire<sup>56</sup>  
 any thing more severe against (his) brother: himself to know

illa esse vera nec quenquam capere  
[that he knows] those (things) to be true nor anyone to take

plus doloris ex ō, quàm se; propterēa quòd  
more (of) grief from this, than himself; because (that)

(quum ipse posset (imp.subj.) plurimum gratiā  
(when himself was able (to do) most in influence

dōmi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum  
at home and in the remaining Gaul, he [Dumnorix] the least

paopter adolescentiā) crevisset (pl.perf.subj.)  
on account of (his) youth had increased (in power)

per se; quibus opibus ac nervis<sup>51</sup>  
through himself [Divitiacus]; which means and nerves [strength]

uteretur (imp.subj.) non solūm ad gratiā  
he was using not only to (Divitiacus) influence

minuendam, sed penē ad suā perniciem;  
to be diminished, but almost to his [Divitiacus] destruction;

sese tāmen commoveri et fraterno amore  
(that) himself however to be [was] moved both by fraternal love

et existimatione volgi: quòd si  
and by the esteem of the common people: because if

quid gravius accidisset ei  
any (thing) more heavy [serious] should happen to him

à Cæsare, cū ipse teneret (imp.subj.)  
from Cæsar, when he himself was holding

ēum locum amicitiae apud ēum, neminem  
this place of friendship with him [Cæsar], no one

existimaturum non factum suā voluntate;  
about to think [would think] (the thing) not done with his will;

futurum ex quā re, uti<sup>52</sup> animi  
about to [it would] be from which thing, that the minds

totius Galliæ averterentur à se."  
of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from himself."

Quum flens petēret (imp.subj.) hæc  
When weeping he was seeking these (things)

à Cæsare pluribus verbis, Cæsarprehendit  
from Cæsar with many words, Cæsar takes

dextram ejus; consolatus, rogat (ut)  
the right hand of him; having consoled, he asks (that)

faciat finem orandi: ostendit gratiam  
he make an end of entreating: he shows (that) the favor

ejus esse tanti apud se, uti  
of him to be [is] of so much (account) with himself, that

condonet et injuriam rei publicæ et  
he forgives both the injury of the republic and

suum dolorem, voluntati ac precibus  
his own grief, for the good will and for the prayers

ejus. Vocat Dumnorigem ad se; adhibet  
of him. He calls Dumnorix to himself; he summons

fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres. subj.)  
the brother; he shows what he blames

in eo; proponit quæ ipse intelligat,  
in him; he sets forth what (he) himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civitas queratur (pres. subj.);  
what the state complains of;

mōnet, ut<sup>53</sup> vitet omnes suspiciones in  
he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into [for]

reliquum tempus. Dicit<sup>54</sup> se condonare  
the remaining time. He says himself to forgive

præterita fratri Divitiāco; ponit  
past (things) for (his) brother Divitiacus; he places

custodes Dumnorigi, ut possit scire  
keepers [spies] to [over] Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ agat (pres. subj.) cum quibus  
what (things) he does with whom

loquatur (pres. subj.)  
he speaks.

21. Eodem die factus certior ab  
On the same day being made more sure [being informed] by

exploratoribus, hostes consedissee sub  
scouts (that), the enemy to have [had] encamped under [at the

montem, octo millia passuum ab  
foot of] the mountain, eight thousand (of) paces from

castris (pl.) ipsius; misit qui cognoscèrent,  
the camp of himself; he sent (persons) who might learn,

qualis esset natura montis, et  
what might be [was] the nature of the mountain, and



qualis      ascensus      in      circuītu.      Renuuntiatum-est  
 what      the ascent      in      a circuit.      It was reported

esse<sup>55</sup>      facīlem.      De      tertīā      vigiliā      jūbet  
 to be      easy.      About [at]      the third      watch      he orders

Titum Labienum      legatum      pro      prætore  
 Titus      Labienus      lieutenant      for      prætor [with prætorian

cum duabus legionibus, et iisdem ducibus, qui  
 powers] with      two      legions,      and the same guides, who

cognovērunt      iter,      ascendere      summum      jūgum  
 had learned      the route,      to ascend      the highest      peak

montis;      ostendit      quid      sit      sui      consilii.  
 of the mountain;      he shows      what      may be (of) his      counsel.

Ipse      de      quartā      vigiliā  
 [ design ].      He himself      about      the fourth      watch

eodem      itinere,      quo      hostes      ierant,  
 by the same      route,      by which      the enemy      had gone,

contendit ad eos, que mittit ante omnem equitatum.  
 hastens      to them, and      sends before      all      the cavalry.

Publius Considius, qui habebatur peritissimus  
 Publius      Considius,      who      was deemed      most skilled

militaris rei (sing.), et fuerat in exercitu Lucii  
 of [in]military affairs,      and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postea in Marci Crassi,  
 Sylla,      and      afterwards      in (that)      of Marcus      Crassus,

præmittitur cum exploratoribus.  
 is sent forward      with      the scouts.

22. Primâ<sup>56</sup> luce, quum summus mons

At the first light [early dawn], when the highest mountain  
 teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse  
 was held      by      Titus      Labienus,      he himself

abesset (imp. subj.) non longius mille et  
 was distant      not      farther (than)      a thousand and

quingentis passibus ab castris (pl.) hostium;  
 five hundred      paces      from      the camp      of the enemy

neque, ut compërit postea ex captivis,  
 nor,      as      he found      afterwards      from      the captives,

aut      adventus      ipsius,      aut      Labieni  
 either      the arrival      of himself,      or (that)      of Labienus

cognitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Cosindius, æquo  
had been known; Considius, (his) horse

admisso, accurrit ad eum; dicit.  
at full speed, rushes to him [Cæsar]; he says,

montem quem voluerit (perf. subj.) occupari  
the mountain which he wished to be occupied

à Labieno, teneri ab hostibus: se  
by Labienus, to be [is] held by the enemy: (that) he himself

cognovisse id à Gallicis armis atque insignibus.  
to have known[knew] this from the Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit suas copias in proximum collem,  
Cæsar leads away his forces to the nearest hill,

instruit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-erat  
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ei à Cæsare, ne-committeret prælium,  
to him by Cæsar, that he should not join battle,

nisi copiae ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
unless the forces of himself had been seen

prope castra (pl.) hostium, ut impetus fieret  
near the camp of the enemy, that the attack might be made

in hostes undique uno tempore,  
against the enemy on every side at one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros, que  
the mountain having been occupied, was awaiting our (men), and

abstinebat prælio. Denique, multo die Cæsar  
was holding from battle. Finally, far in the day Cæsar

cognovit per exploratores, et montem teneri  
learned by scouts (that), both the mountain to be [was] held

à suis, et hostes movisse castra  
by his own (men), and (that) the enemy to have [had] moved camp,

(pl.), et Considium perterritum timore renuntiâsse  
and Considius dismayed by fear to have [had]

pro viso, quod non vidisset (pl. perf.  
announced for [as] seen, (that) which he had not seen.

subj.). Eo die, intervallo quo consuêrat,  
On that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequitur hostes, et ponit castra (pl.) tria  
he follows the enemy. and places (his) camp three

millia passuum ab castris (pl.) eorum.  
 thousand (of) paces from the camp of them [their camp].

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod biduum  
 The day after this day, because a period of two days

omnino supererat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)  
 altogether was remaining, when it was obligatory

metiri frumentum exercitu (exercitui); et  
 to measure [deal] out corn to the army; and

quod aberat à Bibracte, longè  
 because he was distant from Bibracte, by far

maximo ac copiosissimo oppido Æduorum,  
 the greatest and most wealthy town of the Ædui,

non amplius octodécim millibus passuum;  
 not more (than) eighteen thousand (of) paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentariæ  
 he believed it must be looked out [he must provide] for the grain

rei; et avertit iter ab Helvetiis  
 supply; and he turns away the route from the Helvetii

ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea<sup>57</sup> res  
 and hastens to go (to) Bibracte. This thing

nuntiatur hostibus per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii,  
 is announced to the enemy by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,

decurionis equitum Gallorum. Helvetii,  
 captain of the horsemen of the Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quod existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani  
 either because they were judging (that) the Romans

discedere à se perterritos timore, eo magis  
 (to) withdraw from them dismayed with fear, by this the more

quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis,  
 because the day before the higher places having been occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non prœlium, sive  
 they had joined not battle, or

quod<sup>58</sup> confiderent (imp. subj.) posse inter-  
 because they were trusting (our men) to be able [could] (to) be inter-

cludi frumentoriâ re: consilio commutato  
 cepted from the corn supply; (their) plan having been altered

atque itinere converso, coeperunt insêqui ac  
 and the route having been changed, they began to pursue and

laccessere nostros à novissimo agmine.  
to harass our (men) from the last marching-line [in the rear].

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit  
After (that) Cæsar perceived this; he leads up

suas copias in proximum collem que misit equitatum,  
his forces onto the nearest hill and sent cavalry,

qui sustineret impetum hostium. Ipse  
which should meet the attack of the enemy. He himself

interim instruxit triplicem aciem quatuor veteranarum  
meanwhile drew up a triple line of four veteran

legionum in medio colle; ita uti collocaret  
legions on the center (of the) hill; so that he might place

supra se, in summo jūgo, duas legiones quas  
above himself, on the highest peak, the two legions which

conscripserat proximè in citeriore Gallia, et omnia  
he had levied very lately in hither Gaul, and all

auxilia, et compleret totum montem  
the aids [auxiliaries], and might fill the whole mount

hominibus. Inter ea jussit sarcinas  
with men. In the mean time he ordered (that) the baggage

conferri in unum locum et eum  
(to) be brought together into one place and (that) this

muniri ab iis, qui constituerant in superiore  
(to) be fortified by those, who took stand in the higher

acie. Helvetii, secuti cum omnibus suis  
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their

carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum  
wagons, brought together the baggage into one

locum; ipsi confertissimâ acie, nostro equitatu  
place; (they) themselves in a very dense line, our cavalry

rejecto, phalange factâ, successerunt  
having been repulsed, a phalanx having been made, advanced

sub nostram primam aciem.  
under [to] our first line.

25. Cæsar, suo primum, deinde equis  
Cæsar, his own (horse) first, then the horses

omnium remotis à conspectu, ut periculo  
of all having been removed from sight, that the danger

æquato, tollēret spem fūgæ,  
having been made equal, he might take away the hope of flight,

cohortatus sūos, commisit prælium.  
having encouraged his (men), joined battle.

Milites, pilis missis è superiore loco,  
The soldiers, javelins having been sent [cast] from the higher place,

facile perfregerunt phalangem hostium: eā  
easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy: this

disjectā, fecerunt impetum in eos districtis  
having been dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn

gladiis. Erat<sup>59</sup> magno impedimento Gallis ad  
swords. It was (for) a great impediment to the Gauls for

pugnam, quod pluribus scutis eorum transfixis  
the fight, that many shields of them having been pierced

et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cum  
and bound together by one stroke of the javelins, when

ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, poterant  
the iron had bent itself, (in) they were able

neque evellere, neque, sinistra impeditā,  
neither to tear (it) out. nor, the left (hand) having been entangled,

pugnare satis commodē, ut multi, brachio  
to fight sufficiently easily, so that many, the arm

dū jactato, præoptarent (imp. subj.)  
a long time having been tossed about, were preferring

emittere scutum manu, et pugnare  
to discard the shield from the hand, and to fight

nudo corpore. Tandem defessi vulneribus coeperunt  
with naked body. At length wearied with wounds they began

et referre pedem, et quod mons  
both to bear back the foot [to retreat], and because a mountain

suberat circiter mille passuum recipere  
was near about a thousand (of) paces to betake

se è. Monte capto,  
themselves [withdraw] thither. The mountain having been taken,

et nostris succedentibus, Boii et Tulingi,  
and our (men) advancing, the Boii and Tulingi,

qui claudabant agmen hostium circiter  
who were closing the marching line of the enemy (with) about

quindēcim millibus hominū, et erant præsidiō  
 fifteen thousand (of) men, and were (for) a guard  
 novissimis, aggressi<sup>60</sup> nostros, ex  
 to the last [rear], having attacked our (men), from [upon]  
 itinēre aperto latēre circumvenire;  
 the march on the open flank, (began) to surround (them);  
 et Helvetiī qui recepērunt se in  
 and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves to  
 montem, conspicati id, cœperunt rursus  
 the mountain, having beheld this, began again  
 instare et redintegrare prœlium. Romani  
 to advance and to renew the battle. The Romans  
 intulerunt signa conversa bipartitō;  
 bore on[charged] the standards (having been) turned in two directions;  
 prima ac secunda acies, ut resistēret  
 the first and second line, that it [they] might resist  
 victis et submotis; tertiā ut excipēret  
 'to) the conquered and routed; the third that it might receive  
 venientes.  
 (those) coming.

26. Ita<sup>61</sup> pugnatum-est ancipiti prœlio dīu  
 Thus it was fought with doubtful battle a long time  
 atque acriter. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non  
 and sharply. When they were able not  
 sustinere impetum nostrorum diutius, alteri receperunt  
 to sustain the attack of our (men) longer, others [some] betook  
 se in montem, ut cœperant; alteri  
 themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun; others  
 contulerunt se ad impedimenta et suos  
 collected themselves to [at] the baggage and their  
 carros. Nam hoc toto prœlio, quum  
 wagons. For in this whole battle, when [although]  
 pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septimā horā  
 it was fought from the seventh hour [one o'clock]  
 ad vespēram, nemo<sup>62</sup> potuit videre hostem aversum.  
 to evening no one was able to see the enemy turned away.  
 Pugnatum-est etiam ad multam noctem ad  
 It was fought also to [until] much [late] night at

impedimenta: propterēa quod objecerant carros pro  
the baggage: because (that) they had opposed wagons for

vallo, et conjiciebant tela è superiore lōco in  
a rampart, and were hurling weapons from a higher place upon

nostros venientes, et nonnulli subiciebant matāras  
our (men) advancing, and some were thrusting spears

ac tragūlas inter carros que redas, que  
and javelins between the wagons and carts, and

vulnerabant nostros. Quum<sup>63</sup> pugnatum-esset  
were wounding our (men). When it had been fought

(pl. perf. subj.) dū, nostri potiti-sunt  
a long time, our (men) won [captured]

impedimentis que castris. Ibi filia Orgetorigis,  
the baggage and camp. There a daughter of Orgetorix,

atque unus è filiis captus-est. Superfuerunt  
and one from [of] (his) sons was [were] taken. There survived

ex ēo praelio circiter centum et triginta millia  
from this battle about a hundred and thirty thousand

hommum, que ierunt continenter ēa totā nocte:  
(of) men, and they went[traveled] incessantly this whole night:

itinēre intermisso nullam partem noctis,  
the march being interrupted no part of the night,

quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingonum:  
on the fourth day they arrived to[at] the borders of the Lingones;

quum nostri morati triduum  
since our (men) having delayed the space of three days

et propter vulnera militum et  
both on account of the wounds of the soldiers and

propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent  
on account of the burial of the slain, had been able

(pl. perf. subj.) non sequi eos. Cæsar misit  
not to follow [could not follow] them. Cæsar sent

litēras que nuntios ad Lingōnes, ne juvent  
letters and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not assist

ēos frumento neve aliā re: qui si  
them with corn nor with (any) other thing: who if

juvissent,<sup>64</sup> se habiturum illos  
they (should have) assisted, he himself about to [would] hold them

eodem loco, quo Helvetios. Ipse,  
in the same place [light], in which [as] the Helvetii. (He) himself,

triduo intermisso, coepit sequi  
the period of three days having intervened, began to follow

eos cum omnibus copiis.  
them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetii, adducti inopiâ omnium rerum,  
The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,

miserunt<sup>65</sup> legatos qui cum convenissent  
sent ambassadors to him who when they had met

(pl. perf. subj.) eum in itinere, que  
him on the march, and

projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pedes, que  
had thrown themselves at (his) feet, and

locuti suppliciter, flentes petissent (pl.  
having spoken suppliantly, weeping sought

perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
peace, and (when) he had ordered

eos expectare suum adventum in eo loco, quo  
them to await his arrival in that place, in which

tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar  
then they were, they obeyed. After (that) Cæsar

pervenit eo, poposcit obsides, arma, servos, qui  
came there, he demanded hostages, arms, the slaves, who

perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eos. Dum hæc  
had fled to them. While these

conquiruntur et conferuntur,  
(things) are sought for and are brought together,

nocte intermissâ, circiter sex millia  
a night having intervened, about six thousand

hominum ejus pagi, qui appellatur  
(of) men of this canton, which is called

Verbigenus, sive perterriti timore, ne, armis  
Verbigenus, either alarmed by fear, lest, (their) arms

traditis, afficerentur supplicio;  
having been delivered, they should be affected [visited] with punishment;

sive inducti spe salutis, quod in tantâ  
or induced by hope of safety, because in so great a



multitudīne deditieiorum,<sup>66</sup> existimarent (imp. subj.)  
 multitude of (those) surrendered, they were thinking

sūam fūgam posse aut occultari aut ignorari  
 their flight to be able either to be concealed or to be disregarded

omnino; primâ vigiliâ noctis, egressi ex  
 altogether; in the first watch of the night, having gone out from

castris (pl.) Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum  
 the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine

que fines Germanorum.  
 and borders of the Germans.

28. Quod<sup>67</sup> ūbi Cæsar reseivit, imperavit his,  
 Which when Cæsar discovered, he ordered (to) these.

per fines quorum ierant, ūtī  
 through the borders of whom they had gone, that

conquirent et reducērent, si<sup>68</sup>  
 they should search out and should lead back, if

vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sibi. Habuit<sup>69</sup>  
 they were wishing to be blameless to himself. He held

reductos in numēro hostiū: accepit omnes  
 (those) led back in the number of enemies: he received all

reliquos in deditiōem, obsidiūbus, armis, perfūgis  
 the remaining into surrender, hostages, arms, deserters

traditis. Jussit Helvetiōs, Tulingos,  
 having been delivered up. He ordered the Helvetii, Tulingi,

Latobriḡos, reverti in suos fines, unde  
 Latobrigi, to return into their territories, whence

profecti-erant; et quōd, omnībus frugībus amissis,  
 they had set out; and because, all the crops having been lost.

nīhil erat dōmi, quo tolerarent fāmē,  
 nothing was at home, by which they might bear hunger,

imperavit Allobrogībus, ut facerent copiam  
 he ordered (to) the Allobroges, that they should make plenty

frumenti eis; jussit ipsos restituere  
 [a supply] of corn for them; he ordered themselves to replace

oppīda que vicos, quos incēderant. Fecit  
 the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did

id maxīme eā ratione, quōd<sup>70</sup> noluit  
 th's chiefly with this reason, because he was unwilling

ĕum lŏcum, unde Helvetĭi discessĕrant, vacare;  
 this place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be vacant:

ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,  
 lest on account of the excellence of the lands, the Germans

qui incŏlunt trans Rhenum, transirent ě  
 who dwell beyond the Rhine, should cross from

suis finibus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent  
 their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be

finitimi provinciæ Galliæ que Allobrogibus.  
 neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges.

Concessit Œdũis petentibus, ut collocarent  
 He granted to the Œdui asking, that they should place [settle]

Boios in suis finibus, quod cognitierant  
 the Boii in their borders, because they were known

egregiā virtute: quibus illi dederunt agros, que  
 of excellent valor: to whom they gave lands, and

quos<sup>71</sup> receperunt postĕa in pārem conditionem  
 whom they received afterwards into equal condition

juris que libertatis atque ipsi ĕrant.  
 of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris(pl.) Helvetiorum tabulæ confectæ  
 In the camp of the Helvetii tablets prepared

Græcis litĕris repertæ-sunt, et perlatae ad Cæsārem;  
 with Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar;

in quibus tabulis ratio confecta-ĕrat  
 in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numĕrus eorum exisset(pl.  
 name by name, [individually] what number of them had gone forth

perf. subj.) dŏmo, qui possent(imp. subj.) ferre arma,  
 from home, who were able to bear arms

et ĭtem separatim puĕri, sĕnes que muliĕres.  
 and likewise separately the boys, old men and women.

Summa omniumq uarum rerum ĕrat, ducenta  
 The sum of all which things [items] was, two hundred

sexaginta et tria millia capĭtum Helvetiorum;  
 sixty and three thousand (of) heads [souls] of the Helvetii:

triginta et sex millia Tulingorum; quatuordĕcim  
 thirty and six thousand of the Tulingi; fourteen

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et tria; Boiorum  
 of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three: of the Boii  
 triginta et duo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)  
 thirty and two. Of those, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et duo millia. Summa  
 to bear arms to [about] ninety and two thousand. The sum

omnium fuerat ad trecenta sexaginta et  
 [total] of all was at [about] three hundred sixty and  
 octo millia. Censu habito, ut Cæsar  
 eight thousand. A census having been held, as Cæsar  
 imperaverat, numerus eorum, qui redierunt domum,  
 had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

reperit centum et decem millia.  
 was found (to be) a hundred and ten thousand.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati<sup>72</sup>

The war of the Helvetii having been finished, ambassadors

fere totius Galliae, principes civitatum, convenerunt  
 almost of the whole of Gaul, chiefs of the states, came together  
 ad Cæsarem gratulatum: "sese, intelligere,  
 to Cæsar (to) congratulate: "(they) themselves, (to) understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis  
 penalties from them in war for the ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non  
 of the Helvetii; yet this thing to have [had] happened not

minus ex usu terrae Galliae,  
 less from [for] the use [advantage] of the land of Gaul,

quam Romani populi; propterea quod eo  
 than of the Roman people; because (that) with this

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent  
 plan, in most flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent  
 their homes, that they might wage

bellum toti Galliae (dat.) que potirentur imperio (abl.);  
 war on all Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magna copia,  
 and (might) choose a place for abode from a great supply

quem judicâssent opportunissimum ac  
 which they (might have) judged most advantageous and  
 fructuosissimum ex omni Galliâ; que haberent  
 most fruitful from [of] all Gaul; and might have  
 reliquas civitates stipendiarias. Petierunt, uti  
 the remaining states as tributaries. They asked, that  
 liceret sibi indicere concilium  
 it might be allowed (to) themselves to proclaim a council  
 totius Galliæ in certam diem, que facere id  
 of all Gaul upon a certain day, and to do this  
 voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdan res,  
 with the will of Cæsar. They themselves (to) have certain things,  
 quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è  
 which they were wishing to ask from him from [with]  
 communi consensu. Eâ re permissâ,  
 the common consent. This thing having been permitted,  
 constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt  
 they appointed a day for the council, and ratified  
 jurejurando inter se, ne quis  
 by oath between themselves. (that) no<sup>t</sup> any one  
 enuntiaret nisi quibus mandatum-esset (pl.  
 should divulge (it) unless to whom it had been enjoined  
 perf. subj.) communi consilio.  
 by common design.

31 Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes  
 This council having dismissed, the same chiefs  
 civitatum, qui fuérant antè, reverterunt ad  
 of the states, who had been before, returned to  
 Cæsarem; que petierunt, uti liceret  
 Cæsar; and asked, that it might be allowed  
 sibi agere secretò cum eo de  
 (to) themselves to act [treat] secretly with him about  
 suâ salute que omnium. Eâ re  
 their safety and (that) of all. This thing  
 impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese  
 having been obtained, all weeping cast themselves  
 ad pedes Cæsari; “se non minùs  
 at the feet to [of] Cæsar; “they themselves not less

contendere et laborare id, ne èa  
 to strive and to labor for this, lest these (things)  
 quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,  
 which they had said should be divulged,  
 quàm ūti impetrarent èa, quæ  
 than that they might obtain these (things), which  
 vellent (imp. subj.); propterèa quòd si enun-  
 they were wishing; because (that) if it  
 tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se  
 was divulged, they were seeing (that) (they) themselves  
 venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiacus  
 about to [would] come to the highest torture." Divitiacus  
 Ædūs<sup>73</sup> locutus-est pro his: esse dūas  
 the Æduan spoke for these; to be [there are] two  
 factiones totius Galliæ; Ædūs tenere  
 factions of all Gaul; the Ædui to hold  
 principatum alterius harum, Arvernos  
 sovereignty of the one of these, the Arverni  
 alterius. Quum hi contendèrent (imp. subj.)  
 of the other. When these were contending  
 tantopère inter se de potentatu multos  
 very greatly between themselves about dominion many  
 annos, factumesse, ūti Germani  
 years, to have been done [it resulted], that the Germans  
 accerserentur (imp. subj.) ab Avernis que Sequanis  
 were sent for by the Arverni and Sequani  
 mercede. Primò circiter quindécim  
 with [for] hire [as mercenaries]. At first about fifteen  
 millia horum transisse Rhenum; posteaquam  
 thousand of these (to have) crossed the Rhine; after (that)  
 fëri ac barbãri homines adamassent  
 the wild and barbarous men had fallen in love with  
 (pl. perf. subj.) agros, et cultum, et copias  
 the lands, and cultivation, and resources  
 Gallorum, plures transductos: nunc esse  
 of the Gauls, more (were) led over: now to be [they are]  
 in Galliã ad numërum centum et viginti  
 in Gaul to the number of a hundred and twenty

millium: *Ædūs*,<sup>74</sup> que clientes eorum,  
 thousand: the *Ædui*, and clients [dependants] of them,  
 sēmel atque iterum contendisse armis cum  
 time and again (to) have contended in arms with  
 his; pulsos accepisse magnam  
 these; repulsed to (they) have received a great  
 calamitatem; amisisse omnem nobilitatem,  
 calamity; to (they) have lost all (their) nobility,  
 omnem senatum, omnem equitatum. Fractos  
 all the senate, all (their) cavalry. Broken  
 quibus praeliis que calamitatibus, qui  
 by which [these] battles and calamities, (they) who  
 antè potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) plurimum  
 before had been able most [were most powerful]  
 in Gallia, et sua virtute et  
 in Gaul, both by their own valor and  
 hospitio atque amicitia Romani populi,  
 by the alliance and friendship of the Roman people,  
 coactos-esse dare obsides Sequanis,  
 (to) have been forced to give hostages to the Sequani,  
 nobilissimos civitatis, et obstringere civitatem  
 the most noble (men) of the state, and to bind the state  
 jurejurando, sese neque repetituros  
 by oath (that they), themselves neither about to [would] ask back  
 obsides, neque imploratorios auxilium  
 the hostages, nor about to [would] implore aid  
 à Romano populo, neque<sup>75</sup> recusatorios, quod  
 from the Roman people, nor about to [would] refuse, that  
 minus-essent perpetuo sub ditione  
 they might not be perpetually under the dominion  
 atque imperio illorum. Se esse unum  
 and empire of them. He himself to be [was] the only one  
 ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui potuerit (perf.  
 from [of] all the state of the *Ædui*, who has been able  
 subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut  
 not to be induced that he should swear, or  
 daret suos liberos obsides: Ob eam rem  
 should give his children (as) hostages: For this thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse  
he himself to have [had] fled from the state, and to have [had] come(to)

Roman ad Senatum postulatum auxilium, quòd  
Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) nèque jurjurando,  
(he) alone was held neither by oath,

nèque obsidibus. Sed accidissee pejus  
nor by hostages. But to have [it had] happened worse

Sequānis victoribus, quàm Ædūis victis:  
to the Sequani, the conquerors, than to the Ædui, the conquered,

propterēa quòd Ariovistus,<sup>76</sup> rex Germanorum,  
because (that) Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,  
had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem  
and had occupied the third part

Sequāni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optimus  
of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Galliae; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)  
of all Gaul; and now was ordering

Sequānos decedere de alterā tertīa parte;  
the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterēa quòd, paucis mensibus (abl.) antè,  
because (that), a few months before,

viginti et quatuor millia hominum Harudum  
twenty and four thousand (of) men of the Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum, quibus locus  
had come to him, for whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum esse  
and habitations should be prepared: to be about to be [it would be]

paucis annis, ūti omnes pellerentur è  
in a few years, that all would be driven from

finibus Galliae, atque omnes Germani  
the regions of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: enim nèque Gallicum  
would cross the Rhine: for neither (is) the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum<sup>77</sup> cum agro Germanorum,  
to be mentioned with the land of the Germans,

nēque hanc consuetudinem victus comparandam  
 nor is this custom of life to be compared  
 cum illâ. Autem Ariovistum, ut semel  
 with that. But Ariovistus, when once  
 vicērit (perf. subj.) copias Gallorum prælio,  
 he conquered the forces of the Gauls in battle,  
 quod prælium factum-sit (perf. subj;) ad  
 which battle was made [fought] at  
 Magetobrigam, imperare superbè et crudeliter,  
 Magetobriga, to command [commands] proudly and cruelly,  
 poscere liberos cujusque nobilissimi  
 to require [demands] the children of each (of the) most noble  
 obsides, et edere omnia exempla cruciatûs in  
 (as) hostages, and to impose [imposes] all examples of torture upon  
 eos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum<sup>78</sup>  
 them, if any thing has been done not at the nod  
 aut ad voluntatem ejus: hominem esse barbarum,  
 or at the will of him: the man to be [is] barbarous,  
 iracundum, temerarium: imperia<sup>79</sup> ejus non posse  
 irascible, headstrong: the commands of him not to be able  
 sustineri diutius. Nisi quid auxilii  
 to be sustained longer. Unless some (thing) (of) aid  
 sit in Cæsare que Romano populo,  
 may be [is] in Cæsar and the Roman people,  
 idem esse faciendum omnibus Gallis, quod  
 the same must (to) be done by all the Gauls, which  
 Helvetii fecerant, ut emigrant domo;  
 the Helvetii had done, that they may emigrate from home;  
 petant aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas  
 (that) they may seek another abode, others seats remote  
 à Germanis, que experiantur fortunam, quæcunque  
 from the Germans, and (that they) may try fortune, whatsoever  
 accadat. Si hæc enunciata-sint  
 may happen [befall them]. If these (things) were told  
 Ariovisto, non dubitare,<sup>80</sup> quin sumat  
 to Ariovistus, not to doubt, but that he may take  
 gravissimum supplicium de omnibus obsidibus, qui  
 the heaviest punishment upon all the hostages, who



sint (pres. subj.) *apud* *ĕum. Cæsārem,* *vel* *sūā*  
 are with him. Cæsar, either by his  
*auctoritate atque exercitūs,* *vel* *recenti*  
 authority and (that) of (his) army, or by (his) recent  
*victoriā,* *vel* *nomīne* *Romani popūli,* *posse*  
 victory, or by the name of the Roman people, to be [is] able  
*deterre,* *ne* *major* *multitudo* *Germanorum*  
 to prevent, lest a greater multitude of Germans  
*transducatur Rhenum,* *que* *posse* *defendēre*  
 (may) be led over the Rhine, and (to) be able to defend  
*omnem Galliā* *ab injuriā* *Ariovisti.*  
 all Gaul from the injury [wrongs] of Ariovistus.

32. *Hāc oratione*<sup>81</sup> *habītā* *à Divitiāco,* *omnes,*  
 This speech having been had[made] by Divitiacus, all,

*qui adērunt,* *cœperunt* *petēre auxiliū* *à Cæsāre*  
 who were present, began to ask aid from Cæsar

*magno fletu.* *Cæsar animadvertit* *Sequānos*  
 with great weeping. Cæsar observed (that) the Sequani

*unos ex omnibus* *facēre* *nīhil earum rerum,*  
 alone from [of] all (to) do nothing of those things,

*quas cætēri facērent (imp. subj.);* *sed tristes,* *capīte*  
 which the rest were doing; but sad, (with) head

*demisso,* *intueri* *terram.* *Miratus,*  
 (being) cast down, (to) look upon the earth. Having wondered,

*quæ esset* *caussa* *ejus rei,* *quæsit* *ex*  
 what was the cause of this thing, he inquired from

*ipsis.* *Sequāni* *respondēre* *nīhil,* *sed*  
 them. The Sequani answered nothing, but

*permansēre tacīti in eādē tristitiā.* *Quum quæreret*  
 remained silent in the same sadness. When he was asking

*(imp. subj.) sæpiūs* *ab iis,* *nēque posset (imp.*  
 more often from them, nor was able

*subj.) exprimēre* *ullam* *vocem* *omnino;*  
 to extort any voice [word] at all;

*idem* *Ædūs* *Divitiācus* *respondit:* “*Fortunam*  
 the same Æduan Divitiacus answered: “The fortune

*Sequanorum,* *esse* *hōc* *miseriorem* *que* *graviorem,*  
 of the Sequani, to be [is] in this more wretched and more heavy,

quàm reliquorum quòd soli auderent (imp.  
than of the rest, because (they) alone were daring

subj.) nec quìdem quèri in occulto,  
neither indeed to complain in private,

nec implorare auxiliùm; que horrerent (imp. subj.)  
nor to implore aid; and were dreading

crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vèlut si adesset  
the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present

(imp. subj.) coràm; propterèa quòd tàmèn  
in person; because (that) notwithstanding

facultas fūgæ daretur  
[indeed] an opportunity [a resource] of flight was given

(imp. subj.) relīquis; verò omnes cruciatus essent  
to the rest; but all tortures were

(imp. subj.) perferendi Sequānis, qu  
to [must] be endured to [by] the Sequani, who

recepissent (pl. perf. subj.) Ariovistum intra sūos fines,  
had received Ariovistus within their borders,

omnīa oppīda quorum essent (imp. subj.) in  
all the towns of whom [whose towns] were in

potestate ejus."  
the power of him [his power]."

33. His rebus cognītis, Cæsar confirmavit  
These things having been known, Cæsar confirmed [cheered]

anīmos Gallorum verbis, que pollicītus-est  
the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"ëam rem futuram curæ sibi:  
"(that) this thing about to [would] be (for) a care to himself:

se habere magnam spem, Ariovistum  
(he) himself to have [has] great hope, (that) Ariovistus

adductum sūo beneficio et auctoritate, facturum  
induced by his kindness and authority, about to [would] make

finem injuriis." Hęc oratione habītā,  
an end to [of his] wrongs." This speech having been delivered,

dimisi conciliū. Et secundūm ëa (pl.) multæ  
he dismissed the council. And besides this many

res hortabantur ëum, quare putaret ëam  
things were urging him, wherefore he should think (that) this

rem cogitandum et suscipiendum  
 thing to [must] be considered and to [must] be undertaken  
 sibi: imprimis, quòd videbat Æduos,  
 to [by] himself: especially, because he was seeing (that) the Ædui,  
 sæpenumëro appellatos fratres que  
 oftentimes having [who had] been named brothers and  
 consanguinëos ab Senatu, teneri in servitute  
 kinsmen by the Senate, to be [were] held in slavery  
 atque in ditione Germanorum, que intelligebat  
 and in dominion of the Germans, and he was understanding  
 obsides eorum esse apud Ariovistum  
 hostages of them [their hostages] to be [were] with Ariovistus  
 ac Sequānos; quod, in tanto imperio Romani  
 and the Sequani; which, in so great empire of the Roman  
 populi, arbitrabatur esse turpissimum sibi  
 people, he was considering to be [was] most disgraceful to himself  
 et reipublicæ. Autem Germanos<sup>82</sup> consuescere  
 and to the republic. But (that) the Germans to be [are] accustomed  
 paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam  
 little by little to cross the Rhine, and a great  
 multitudinem eorum venire in Galliam, videbat  
 multitude of them to come into Gaul, he was seeing (was)  
 periculosum Romano populo: neque existimabat  
 dangerous to the Roman people: nor was he thinking  
 feros ac barbāros homines temperaturos  
 wild and barbarous men about to [would] restrain  
 sibi, quin, quum occupassent  
 (to) themselves, but that, when they had occupied  
 (pl. perf. subj.) omnem Galliam, ut Cimbri que  
 all Gaul, as the Cimbri and  
 Teutōni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent  
 Teutones had done before. they would go out  
 in Provinciam, atque inde contendērent in  
 into the Province, and thence would hasten into  
 Italiam; præsertim quum Rhodānus dividēret (imp.  
 Italy; especially since the Rhone was dividing  
 subj.) Sequānos à nostrā provinciâ. Quibus<sup>88</sup>  
 the Sequani from our province (To) which

rebus putabat occurrendum quàm-maturimè.  
things he was thinking to [must] be met as early as possible.

Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsērat<sup>84</sup> sibi tantos  
Moreover Ariovistus himself had taken to himself so great  
spirītus, tantam arrogantiam, ut videretur (imp.  
spirits, [airs] so great arrogance, that he was seeming  
subj.) non ferendus.  
not to be borne [endured].

34. Quamōbrem placuit ei, ut mitteret  
Wherefore it pleased (to) him, that he should send  
legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab  
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from  
eo, "ut deligeret aliquem locum medium  
him, "that he should choose some place midway

utriusque colloquio; sese velle agere  
of each for a conference; (he) himself to will [wishes] to act [treat]

cum eo de re publicā et summis rebus  
with him about a public matter and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ei legationi: "Si  
of each." Ariovistus answered to this embassy: "If

quid<sup>85</sup> esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à  
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsare, sese fuisse venturum ad eum;  
Cæsar, (he) himself to have been about to [would] come to him;

si ille vellet (pres. subj.) quid à se,  
if he wishes any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se; præterea, se  
to behoove [it behoves] him to come to himself: besides, he

nēque audere venire sine exercitu in eas  
neither to dare [dares] to come without an army into these

partes Galliae, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);  
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar was possessing;

nēque<sup>86</sup> posse contrahere exercitum in unum  
nor to be [is he] able to gather an army into one

locum sine magno commeatu atque molimento:  
place without great provisions and trouble:

autem videri mirum sibi, quid negotii  
moreover to seem [it seems] wonderful to himself, what (of) business

esset aut Cæsāri aut omnino Romano  
 might be either to Cæsar or at all to the Roman  
 popūlo, in sūa Galliā, quam vicisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered  
 bello.  
 in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsārem,  
 These answers having been brought back to Cæsar,  
 Cæsar iterum mittit legatos ad eum cum his  
 Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these  
 mandatis: “Quoniam affectus tanto beneficio  
 commands: “Since being affected with so great kindness  
 suo que Romani populi (quum  
 his own [Cæsar’s] and (that) of the Roman people (since  
 appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in suo consulatu rex  
 he had been named in his own consulship king  
 atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc  
 and friend by the Senate,) he was returning this  
 gratiam sibi que Romano populo, ut<sup>87</sup>  
 favor to himself and to the Roman people, that  
 gravaretur invitatus venire in  
 he should be averse (though) invited to come into  
 colloquium, neque putaret dicendum  
 a conference, nor should think (it) to [must] be spoken  
 sibi et cognoscendum de communi  
 to [by] himself and [nor] (to) be investigated concerning a common  
 re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)  
 matter; these to be, [are] what he was demanding  
 ab eo: primum, ne-traduceret quam  
 from him: first, (that) he should not lead over any  
 multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in  
 multitude of men more across the Rhine into  
 Galliam: deinde redderet obsides quos  
 Gaul: then (that) he should restore the hostages that  
 haberet (imp. subj.) ab Æduis; que permitteret<sup>88</sup>  
 he was having from the Ædui; and should permit  
 Sequānis, ut liceret voluntate  
 (to) the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

ejus reddere illis quos illi  
 of him [his will] to restore to them [the Ædúi] (those) whom they  
 haberent (imp. subj.); nève lacesseret Æduos  
 were having; nor should harass the Ædúi  
 injuriâ; nève inferret bellum his ve  
 with violence nor should bring on war to these or  
 sociis eorum; si fecisset id ita,  
 to the allies of them; if he should do this thus,  
 perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam futuram  
 perpetual favor and friendship about to [would] be  
 sibi que Romano populo cum eo. Si  
 to himself and to the Roman people with him. If  
 impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quoniam, Marco Messalâ,  
 he was obtaining (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,  
 Marco Pisone consulibus, Senatus censuisset  
 Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved  
 (pl. perf. subj.) uti quicumque obtineret Galliam  
 that whosoever should hold Gaul  
 provinciam, defenderet Æduos que  
 (as a) province, should defend the Ædúi and  
 cæteros amicos Romani populi, quod  
 other friends of the Roman people, which [as]  
 posset facere commodo rei publicæ,  
 he might be able to do to the advantage of the republic,  
 se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum."  
 he) himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries of the Ædúi."

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: "esse  
 Ariovistus answered to these (things): "to be [it was]  
 jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,  
 imperarent iis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 should rule those, whom they had conquered,  
 quemadmodum vellent: item Romanum  
 in whatsoever manner they may wish; likewise the Roman  
 populum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)  
 people to have [had] been accustomed to rule the conquered  
 non ad præscriptum alterius, sed ad suum  
 not according to the edict of another, but according to their own

arbitrium. Si<sup>89</sup> ipse præscriberet (imp. subj.)  
will. If he (himself) was dictating

non Romano populo, quemadmodum uteretur  
not to the Roman people, how it should use

suo jure (abl.), non oportere se impedi  
its right, (it was) not (to be) proper (that) himself (to) be hindered

à Romano populo in suo jure: Æduos  
by the Roman people in his right: the Ædui

factos-esse stipendarios sibi, quoniam  
to have [had] been made tributary to himself, since

tentassent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et  
they had tried the fortune of war, and

congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac  
had engaged in arms and (had been)

superati: Cæsarem facere magnam injuriam, qui  
overcome: Cæsar to do [did] great injury, who

suo adventu faceret (imp. subj.) vectigalia deteriora  
by his arrival was making the taxes worse [less]

sibi: se<sup>90</sup> esse non redditurum  
for him: (he) himself to be [was] not about to restore

obsides Æduis; neque illaturum bellum  
the hostages to the Ædui; nor about to [would] bring on war

injuriâ iis, neque sociis eorum, si  
with damage to them, nor to the allies of them [their allies], if

manerent in eo, quod convenisset (pl.  
they should abide in that, which had been agreed upon,

perf. subj.), que pendèrent stipendium quotannis:  
and should pay tribute yearly:

si non fecissent id, fraternum nomen  
if they would not do this, the fraternal name

Romani populi abfuturum longè ab  
of the Roman people about to [would] be absent far from

his; quod Cæsar denuntiaret (imp. subj.) sibi,  
these, that Cæsar was declaring to him,

se non neglecturum injurias  
(that) he himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries

Æduorum, neminem contendisse cum se  
of the Ædui, no one to have [had] contended with himself

sine sua perniciē congrederetur quum  
without his own destruction let him come on when

vellet; intellecturum, quid invicti  
he wishes; about to [he would] understand, what the invincible

Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui subissent  
Germans, most practiced in arms, who had gone under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordecim  
not [no] roof within fourteen

annos, possent virtute."  
years, might be able (to effect) by valor."

37 Eodem tempore hæc mandata  
In [at] the same time these charges

referebantur Cæsari; et legati veniebant  
were reported to Cæsar; and [also] ambassadors were coming

ab Ædūis et Treviris: Ædūi, questum,  
from the Ædui and Treveri: the Ædui, (to) complain,

quod Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.  
that the Harudes, who lately had been brought over

perf. subj.) in Galliam, popularentur (imp. subj.)  
into Gaul, were laying waste

fines<sup>91</sup> eorum; sese potuisse redimere  
the borders of them; themselves to have [had] been able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne obsidibus quidem  
peace of Ariovistus, not hostages indeed [even]

dātis. Autem Treviri, centum pagos  
having been given. But the Treveri, (reported) a hundred cantons

Suevorum consedissee ad ripam Rheni, qui  
of the Suevi to have [had] settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum; fratres  
were endeavoring to cross the Rhine; (that) the brothers

Nasam et Cimberium præesse iis (dat.) Quibus  
Nasua and Cimberius to be [are] over these. By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer existimavit  
things Cæsar being moved greatly thought

maturandum<sup>92</sup> sibi ne si nova manus  
to be [it must be] hastened to [by] himself, lest, if the new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum  
of the Suevi should join itself with



veterībus      copīis      Ariovisti,      posset<sup>98</sup>      mīnūs  
the old      forces      of Ariovistus,      it might be able      less

facīlè      resisti.      Itāque,      frumentariā      re  
easily      to be withstood.      Therefore,      the corn      affair [grain]

comparatā,      quām-celerīrīmè      potūit,      contendit  
having been procured,      as quickly as      he could,      he hastened

magnis      itinerībus      ad      Ariovistum.  
by great [forced]      marches      to      Ariovistus.

38. Quum<sup>94</sup>      jam      processisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
When      now      he had proceeded

vīam      tridūi,      nuntiātum-est      ēi,  
a course      of three days,      it was reported      to him,

Ariovistum<sup>95</sup>      cum omnībus sūis copīis      contendere ad  
Ariovistus      with      all      his forces      to hasten      to

occupandum      Vesontionem,      quod est      maximū  
occupy      Vesontio,      which is      the largest

oppīdum Sequanorum, que      processisse      vīam  
town      of the Sequani,      and      to have [had] proceeded      a course

tridūi      à      sūis finībus.      Cæsar existimabat  
of three days      from      his      borders.      Cæsar      was thinking

præcavendum      sibi      magnopere,      ne      id  
to [it must] be guarded      to [by] himself      very greatly,      lest      this

accideret: namque erat      summa      facultas  
should happen; for indeed      there was      the highest [largest]      supply

in eo oppīdo omnīum rerum, quæ erant      usui ad  
in this      town      of all      things, which      were      for use      to

bellum,<sup>96</sup>      que      idem      muniebatur      sic      naturā  
war,      and      the same      was fortified      so      by the nature

loci,      ut dāret (imp. subj.)      magnam facultatem  
of the place,      that      it was giving      great      means

ad<sup>97</sup> ducendum bellum; propterēa quod flumen  
to      lead [protract]      the war;      because      (that)      the river

Dubis,      ut circumductum      circēno,      cingit  
Dubis [Doux],      as (if)      led [traced] around      by a compass,      girds

penè totum oppīdum; reliquum spatium, quod  
almost the whole      town;      the remaining      space,      which

est non amplius sexcentorum pēdum, quā flumen  
is      not      more (than)      (of) six hundred      feet,      where      the river

causā<sup>100</sup> frumentariæ rēi que commeatūs, ex  
by cause of corn affair [grain] and of provisions, from

percunctatione nostrorum que vocibus Gallorum  
the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions of the Gauls

et mercatorum qui prædicabant Germanos  
and of the merchants who were proclaiming the Germans

esse ingenti magnitudine corpōrum,  
to be [were] with [of] vast size of bodies

incredibīli virtute atque exercitatione in armis,  
with (of) incredible valor and practice in arms,

sese<sup>101</sup> sæpenumēro congressos cum iis,  
(they) themselves oftentimes having encountered with them,

potuisse ferre ne vultum quīdem atque  
to have [had] been able to bear not the look indeed [even] and

aciēm oculorum, tantus tīmor subitō  
edge [glance] of (their) eyes, so great fear suddenly

occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.  
occupied all the army, that it was disturbing

subj.) non mediocrīter mentes que animos omnium.  
in no moderate degree the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primū ortus-est à tribunis militū,  
 This (fear) first arose [started] from the tribunes of soldiers  
 ac præfectis, que reliquis, qui causâ  
 and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause [reason]  
 amicitîæ secuti Cæsarem ex urbe,  
 of friendship having followed Cæsar from the city,  
 miserebantur magnum pericūlum, quod habebant  
 were deploring the great danger, because they were having  
 non magnum usum in militari re (sing.):  
 not [no] great experience in military affairs:  
 quorum aliū,<sup>102</sup> aliâ causâ illatâ,  
 of whom one, one cause being brought [alleged], (another,  
 quam diceret (imp. subj.) esse necessariam  
 another) which he was saying to be [was] necessary  
 sibi ad proficiscendum, patebat, ut liceret  
 to himself for setting out, was asking, that it might be  
 discedere voluntate ejus; nonnulli  
 allowed (him) to depart by the will of him [by his will]; some  
 adducti pudore, ut<sup>103</sup> vitarent suspicionem  
 prompted by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion  
 timoris remanebant. Hi poterant neque fingere  
 of fear were remaining. These were able neither to form [keep]  
 vultum neque interdum tenere lacrymas;  
 (their) countenance nor sometimes to hold (their) tears;  
 abditi in tabernaculis, aut querebantur suū  
 hidden in the tents, either they were bewailing their own  
 fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur  
 fate, or with their confidants were deploring (their)  
 commune pericūlum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabatur  
 common danger. Everywhere wills were sealed  
 totis castris (pl.). Vocibus ac timore horum  
 in the whole camp. By the words and fear of these  
 paullatim etiam ii, qui habebant magnum usum  
 gradually also they, who were having great experience  
 in castris (pl.), militis que centuriones, que qui  
 in camps, soldiers and centurions, and (those) who  
 præerant equitatui (dat.), perturbabantur. Qui<sup>104</sup> ex  
 commanded the cavalry, were disturbed. Whoever of

his volebant se existimari mīnūs timīdos,  
these were wishing themselves to be thought less alarmed,

dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere  
were saying they (did) not (to) dread the enemy, but (to) fear

angustias itinēris et magnitudīnem silvarum,  
the (hard) straits of the way and the vastness of the woods,

quæ intercedērent (imp. subj.) inter eos atque  
which were intervening between them and

Ariovistum, aut frumentariam rem, ut  
Ariovistus, or the corn affair [supply], that

posset commōdē sātis supportari.  
it might be able [could] (not) conveniently enough (to) be carried up.

Etiam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsāri, cūm  
Also some were reporting to Cæsar, when

jussisset (pl. pref. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac  
he had ordered the camp to be moved, and

signa ferri, milītes<sup>105</sup> non fore  
the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be about to [would not] be

audientes dicto, nēque laturos  
hearing [obedient] to the word, nor about to [would] bear

signa propter timorem.  
the standards on account of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilio convocato, que  
these (things), a council having been called together, and

centurionibus omnium ordinum adhibitis ad  
the centurions of all ranks having been admitted to

id concilium, incusavit eos vehementer; primum,  
this council, he blamed them vehemently: first,

quod<sup>106</sup> putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut  
because they were thinking to [it must] be inquired [investigated] or

cogitandum sibi, aut in quam  
to [must] be considered to (by) themselves, either into what

partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur (imp. subj.).  
part, or with what plan they should be led.

Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimè  
Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most eagerly

appetisse amicitiā Romani populi:  
to have [had] sought the friendship of the Roman people:

cur quisquam iudicaret hunc discessurum  
why should any one judge this (man) about to [would] depart

tam temerē ab officio? Quīdem<sup>107</sup> persuaderi  
so rashly from (his) duty? Indeed to be [it was] persuaded

sibi, suis postulatis cognitis, atque æquitate  
to himself, his demands having been known, and the justice

conditionum perspectā, eum (acc.) nēque repudia-  
of the conditions being clearly seen, he neither about to

turum suam gratiā nēque Romani  
[would] reject his favor nor (that) of the Roman

populi: quōd si, impulsus furore atque amentia.  
people: but if, impelled by rage and by madness,

intulisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?  
he would wage war, what, pray should they fear!

aut cur desperarent de sua virtute,  
or why should they despair concerning (their) own valor,

aut de diligentia ipsius? Periculum  
or concerning the diligence of himself [Cæsar]? Danger [trial]

ejus hostis factum memoriā nostrorum  
of this enemy (was) made in the memory of our

patrum, quum, Cimbris et Teutōnis  
fathers, when, the Cimbri and Teutones

pulsis à Caio Mario, exercitum  
having been routed by Caius Marius, the army

videbatur<sup>108</sup> meritis non minorem laudem, quā  
was seeming to have deserved not less praise, than

imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in  
the general himself: also (a trial was) made recently in

Italiā, servili<sup>109</sup> tumultu, quos tamen aliquis  
Italy, in the slave uprising, whom however some

usus ac disciplina, quam acceperant  
experience and discipline, which they had received

(pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex<sup>110</sup> quo  
from us, assisted. From which

posse iudicari, quantum boni constantia  
to be able [it can] (to) be judged, how much (of) good firmness

haberet (imp. subj.) in se; propterēa quōd  
 was having [had] in itself; because (that)

quos aliquandū timuissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 (those) whom for some time they had feared

sine causâ inermes, superâssent (pl. perf. sudj.),  
 without cause, unarmed, they had subdued,

hos postēa armatos ac victores. Denique,  
 these afterwards armed and conquered. Lastly,

hos esse Germanos cum quibus Helveti  
 these to be [are] the Germans with whom the Helveti

sæpenumēro congressi non solū in suis,  
 oftentimes having engaged not only in their own,

sed etiam in finibus illorum plerumque  
 but also in the borders of them [their borders] generally

superârint (perf. subj.); qui tamen potuerint  
 have overcome; who notwithstanding have been able

(perf. subj.) non esse pæres nostro exercitui  
 not to be equal to our army.

Si adversum prælium et fuga Gallorum  
 If the adverse battle and flight of the Gauls

commoveret quos, hos posse reperire,  
 might move [affect] any, these to be able [can] (to) find,

si quærerent (imp. subj.), Gallis defatigatis  
 if they should inquire, (that) the Gauls being wearied

diuturnitate belli, Ariovistum, quum  
 by the long continuance of the war, Ariovistus, when

continisset (pl. perf. subj.) se multos menses  
 he had kept himself many months

castris (pl.) ac paludibus, nēque fecisset (pl. perf.  
 in camp and marshes, nor had made

subj.) potestatem sui, adortum  
 power of himself [given an opportunity], having attacked

subitō jam desperantes de pugna et  
 suddenly (those) already despairing of battle and

dispensos, vicisse magis ratione  
 scattered, to have [had] conquered more by reason [trickery]

ac consilio quàm virtute: cui rationi  
 and by counsel [wiles] than by valor: for which trickery

lŏcus                    fuisset                    contra                    barbāros                    atque  
a place [chance]    might have been    against                    barbarous                    and

imperitos                    homīnes:                    hāc                    ne                    ipsum                    quīdem  
unskilled                    men:                    by this                    not                    (he) himself                    even

sperare                    nostros exercitus                    posse                    cāpi.  
to expect [expected]    our                    armies                    to be able [could]    (to) be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sūm timorem in  
(They) who                    were assigning                    their                    fear                    upon

simulationem<sup>111</sup> frumentariæ rei                    que angustias  
the pretence                    of the corn                    affair [supply]                    and                    the difficulties

itinĕrum,                    facĕre                    arroganter,                    quūm  
of the marches,                    (to) do (this)                    officiously,                    since

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio  
they were seeming                    either                    to despair                    of                    the duty

imperatoris,                    aut                    præscribere.                    Hæc<sup>112</sup>  
of the commander,                    or                    to prescribe.                    These (things)

esse                    curæ                    sibi;                    Sequānos,                    Leucos,  
to be [are]                    (for) a care                    to himself;                    the Sequani,                    Leuci,

Lingōnes                    subministrare                    frumentum;                    que                    jam  
Lingones                    to [will] supply                    corn;                    and                    now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinĕre  
corn                    to be [is] ripe                    in the fields.                    Of                    the route

ipsos                    judicatuos                    brĕvi                    tempore.  
(they) themselves                    about to [would] judge                    in a short                    time.

Quōd dicantur<sup>113</sup> (pres. subj.) non fōre  
That                    they are [it is] said                    (they would) not                    (to be about to) be

audientes                    dicto, nēque laturi                    signa,  
hearing [obedient]                    to the word, nor (about to) bear                    the standards,

se commoveri nīhil                    ēā re; enim  
(he) himself                    to be [was] moved nothing [not at all] by this thing; for

scire,                    quibuscumque exercitus fuĕrit (perf.  
to know [he knew],                    to whomsoever                    an army                    has been

subj.) non                    audiens                    dicto,                    aut,  
not                    hearing [obedient]                    to the word,                    either,

re                    gestā                    mālĕ,                    fortunam defu-  
an affair                    having been carried on                    ill,                    fortune                    to have

isse;                    aut                    aliquo                    facinōre                    comperto,  
[had] failed;                    or                    some                    crime                    being found out.

avaritiām convictam-esse: sūam<sup>114</sup> innocentīam  
 avarice to have [had] been proved: his (own) innocence [integrity]

perpetuā vitā, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum  
 in (his) whole life, (his) success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Itaque, se repræ-  
 to have been [were] clearly seen. Therefore, (he) himself about to

sentaturum quod fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 [would] do presently (that) which he had been

collaturus in longiorem diem; et  
 (otherwise) about to defer to a more distant day; and

proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā  
 on the nearest [next] night from [at] the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primū  
 about to [he would] move the camp, in order that as soon as

posset intelligere, utrū pūdor  
 he might be able to [he may] understand, whether shame

atque officiū, an timor valeret plūs  
 and duty, or fear may prevail the more

apud eos. Quod si nemo præterea sequatur  
 with them. But if no one besides follows,

(pres. subj.), tamen se iturum cum  
 nevertheless (he) himself about [would] go with

decimā legione solā, de quā non dubi-  
 the tenth legion alone, of which he was not doubt-

taret (imp. subj.) que etiam futuram Prætoriam  
 ing and this about to [would] be a Prætorian

cohortem sibi." Cæsar et indulserat præcipuē  
 cohort for himself." Cæsar both had favored especially

huic legioni (dat.) et confidebat, maximè propter  
 this legion and was trusting, (it) very much on account of

virtutem.  
 (its) valor.

41. Hæc oratione habita, mentes  
 This speech having been delivered, the minds

omnium conversæ-sunt in mirum modum,  
 of all were changed into [in] a wonderful manner,

que summa alacritas et cupiditas belli  
 and the highest eagerness and desire of war



gerendi<sup>115</sup> innata-est: que decima  
 to be carried on [of waging war] was born in [inspired]: and the tenth  
 legio princeps egit gratias ei per tribunos  
 legion first rendered thanks to him through the tribunes  
 militum, quod fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optimum  
 of soldiers, that he had made the best  
 iudicium de se, que<sup>116</sup> confirmavit se esse  
 judgment concerning itself, and declared itself to be  
 partissimam ad gerendum bellum. Inde  
 most prepared for carrying on war. Then  
 reliquæ legiones egerunt per tribunos  
 the remaining legions acted through the tribunes  
 militum et centuriones primorum ordinum, uti  
 of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that  
 satisfacèrent Cæsari; “se neque unquam  
 they might satisfy (to) Cæsar; “(they) themselves neither ever  
 dubitâsse, neque timuisse. neque existimavisse  
 to be [had] doubted, nor to have [had] feared, nor (to) have thought  
 iudicium de summâ (sing.) belli esse  
 the judgment of the highest (concerns) of war to be [was]  
 suum sed imperatoris.” Satisfactio<sup>117</sup>  
 their own but (the part) of the commander.” The satisfaction [apology]  
 eorum acceptâ, et itinere exquisito  
 of them [their apology] being received, and the way being reconnoitred  
 per Divitiacum, quod habebat maximam  
 by Divitiacus, because he was having the greatest  
 fidem ei ex aliis ut duceret  
 faith to [in] him from [of] the others [Gauls] that he might lead  
 exercitum apertis locis, circuitu amplius  
 the army in the open places, by a circuit of more  
 quadraginta millium, profectus-est de quartâ  
 (than) forty miles, he set out from [at] the fourth  
 vigillâ, uti dixerat. Septimo die, quum  
 watch, as he had said. On the seventh day, when  
 non intermitteret (imp. subj.) iter, factus-est  
 he was not ceasing the march, he was made  
 certior<sup>118</sup> ab exploratoribus, copias  
 more certain [was informed] by scouts, (that) the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatŭor et  
 of Ariovistus to be [were] distant from our (forces) four and  
 viginti millibus (abl.) passum.  
 twenty thousand (of) paces.

42. Adventu Cæsaris cognito, Ariovistus  
 The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus  
 mittit legatos ad eum; "id licere  
 sends ambassadors to him; "this to be [is] allowed  
 fieri per se, quod antea postulasset  
 to be done by himself, which before he had demanded  
 (pl. perf. subj.) de colloquio, quoniam  
 concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propius; que<sup>119</sup> existimaret  
 he had approached nearer; and he was thinking

(imp. subj.) se posse facere id sine  
 (he) himself to be able [could] (to) do this without

periculo." Cæsar non respuit conditionem, que<sup>120</sup>  
 danger." Cæsar did not reject the condition, and

arbitrabatur eum jam reverti ad sanitatem,  
 was thinking him [he] now to [would] return to soundness [reason].

quum polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod  
 since he was offering spontaneously that, which

antea denegasset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;  
 before he had denied to (him) asking;

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro suis  
 and he was coming [entering] into great hope, for his

tantis beneficiis que Romani populi  
 (so) great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in eum, suis postulatis cognitīs, fore<sup>121</sup>  
 towards him (that), his demands having been known, to be about to be

ut desisteret pertinaciā. Quintus  
 [it would be] that he would cease from (his) obstinacy. The fifth

dies ex eo die dictus-est colloquio.  
 day from that day was said [appointed] for the conference.

Intèrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)  
 Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe citro que ultrò inter eos. Ariovistus  
 often hither and thither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; Cæsar ne adducēret quem pedītem  
requested; Cæsar should not lead up any foot soldiers

ad colloquūm, “se vereri  
to the conference, “himself to dread [he feared]

ne circumveniretur ab ěo per  
lest he should be circumvented by him through

insidiās (pl.): uterque veniret cum  
ambush: each should come with

equitatu, aliā<sup>122</sup> ratione se esse  
cavalry, in other method [manner] (he) himself to be

non venturum.” Cæsar, quōd volebat  
not about to [would not] come.” Cæsar, because he was willing

nēque colloquūm tolli, causā  
(that) neither the conference to [should] be taken away [be lost], cause

interposita; nēque audebat committere suam  
being interposed; nor was daring to commit his

salutem equitatu Gallorum, statuit esse  
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls, determined to be

commodissimum, omnibus Gallis equitibus  
[it was] most convenient [fitting], all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ěquis, imponere ěo  
having been withdrawn from the horses, to place upon there [them]

legionarios milites decimæ legionis, cui (dat.)  
the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which

confidebat quāmaximè; ut haberet  
ne was confiding as much as possible; that he might have

præsidium quāamicissimum, si quid ōpus  
a guard as friendly as possible, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fieret  
should be of deed [action]. When which [this] was done,

(imp. subj.), quidam ex militibus decimæ  
a certain one of the soldiers of the tenth

legionis dixit non irridicūlè, “Cæsārem facere  
legion said not unwittily, “Cæsar to do [does]

plus quā pollicitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.);  
more than he had promised;

pollicitum habiturum decimam legionem  
having promised about to [he would] have the tenth legion

in lōco prætoriæ cohortis; nunc rescribere<sup>123</sup>  
 in place of a pretorian cohort; now to enroll (it)

ad æquum."  
 [he enrolls it] to the horse."

43. Erat magna planities et in eâ tumulus  
 (There) was a great plain and on it a hillock

terrēnus sātis grandis. Hic lōcus abērat  
 of earth sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatiō fere æquo ab castris Ariovisti et  
 by a space nearly equal from the camps of Ariovistus and

Cæsar. Eò, ut dictum-erat, venerunt ad  
 Cæsar. Thither, as had been said [appointed], they came to

colloquium. Cæsar constituit legionem, quam  
 the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devererat equis, ducentis passibus (abl.)  
 he had brought down with horses, two hundred paces

ab eo tumulo. Item equites  
 from this hillock. Likewise the horsemen

Ariovisti constiterunt pari intervallo.  
 of Ariovistus took stand with [at] an equal interval.

Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex  
 Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from [on]

equis et ut adducerent denos præter  
 horses and that they should lead up ten each besides

se ad colloquium. Ubi<sup>124</sup> ventum-est eò,  
 themselves to the conference. When it was come [they came] there,

Cæsar, initio orationis, commemoravit  
 Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted

sua que beneficia Senatûs in eum,  
 his own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,

quod appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à  
 that he had been called king by

Senatu, quod amicus, quod  
 the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that

amplissima munera missa; quam rem,  
 most ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,

docebat, et contigisse paucis,  
 he was showing, both to have [had] happened to few,

et consuevisse tribūi à  
 and to have [had] been accustomed to be granted by  
 Romanis pro maximis officiis hominum,  
 the Romans for the greatest services of men,  
 illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) nēque aditum,  
 him [that he], although he was having neither access,  
 nēque justam causam postulandi, beneficio  
 nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty  
 ac suā liberalitate ac Senatūs,  
 and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,  
 consecutum ēa prēmīa. Docebat  
 having [he had] obtained these rewards [honors]. He was showing  
 etiam, quā vetēres, que quā justæ  
 also, how ancient, and how just  
 causæ necessitudinis intercederent<sup>125</sup> (imp. subj.)  
 causes of alliance were existing  
 ipsis cum Ædūis; quæ consulta Senatūs,  
 to themselves with the Ædui; what decrees of the Senate,  
 quoties, que quā honorifica facta-essent (pl.  
 how often, and how honorable had been made  
 perf. subj.) in eos; ut omni tempore,  
 towards them [in their behalf]; that in all time,  
 Ædūi tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum  
 the Ædui had held the supremacy  
 totius Gallīæ, etiam priusquā appetissent  
 of the whole of Gaul, even before that they had sought  
 (pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitiam. "Hanc esse  
 our friendship. "This to be [was]  
 consuetudinem Romani populi, ut vellent  
 the custom of the Roman people, that it wished  
 socios atque amicos non modo deperdere  
 (its) allies and friends not only to lose  
 nihil sui, sed esse auctiores gratiā,  
 nothing of their own, but to be more increased in favor,  
 dignitate, honore: verò quis posset  
 in dignity, in honor: but who would be able  
 pati id eripi  
 [could] (to) suffer (that) this to be [should be] snatched

his (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
from them, which they had brought to

amicitiām Romani populi?" Deinde  
the friendship of the Roman people?" Afterwards

postulavit eādem, quæ dedērat in mandatis  
he demanded the same, which he had given in the charges

legatis ne inferret bellum aut  
to the ambassadors that he should not bring on war either

Ædūis, aut sociis eorum; redderet  
to the Ædui, or to the allies of them [their allies]; (that) he should

obsides; si posset (imp. subj.)  
restore the hostages; if he was able

remittere dōmum nullam partem Germanorum;  
to send back home no part of the Germans;

at ne pateretur quos ampliūs transire  
still that he should not suffer any more to cross

Rhenum.  
the Rhine.

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata  
Ariovistus answered a few (things) to the demands

Cæsāris: prædicavit multa de suis  
of Cæsar: he declaimed many (things) of his own

virtutibus; sese transisse Rhenum  
virtues; (that he) himself to have [had] crossed the Rhine

non suā sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum  
not on his own accord, but (having been) asked and sent for

à Gallis: reliquisse dōmum que propinquos  
by the Gauls: to have [he had] left home and relations

non sine magnâ spe que magnis præmiis:  
not without great hope and great rewards:

habere sedes in Galliâ concessas ab  
to have [he has] settlements in Gaul granted by

ipsis, obsides ipsorum dātos voluntate,  
themselves, hostages of them given by (their) free will,

capere stipendium jure belli, quod  
to take [he takes] tribute by the right of war, which

victores consueverint (perf. subj.) imponere  
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non<sup>126</sup> intulisse bellum  
to [on] the conquered; (he) himself not to have [has not] brought on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sibi; omnes civitates  
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Galliæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac  
of Gaul to have [had] come for opposing [to oppose] himself, and

habuisse castra contra se; omnes eas copias  
to have had [had] camps against himself; all these forces

pulsas (esse) ac superatas esse abs se uno  
to have [had] been routed and overcome by himself in one

proelio. Si vellent (pres. subj.) experiri iterum,  
battle. If they wish to try again,

se paratum iterum decertare: sin malint  
he himself (is) prepared again to contend: but if they prefer

(pres. subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum  
to use peace, to be [it is] unjust

recusare de stipendio, quod pendērint (perf.  
to object concerning the tribute, which they paid

subj.) suā voluntate ad id tempus:  
by their own will [volition] to this time:

oportere amicitiam Romani populi  
to be [it is] proper (that) the friendship of the Roman people

esse ornamento et praesidio sibi, non  
(to) be (for) an ornament and a guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petisse id eā  
(for) a detriment; and (he) himself to have [had] sought it in this

spe. Si stipendium remittatur (pres. subj.) per  
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum populum, et dedititū subtrahantur  
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non minus libenter  
(he) himself about to [would] refuse not less willingly

amicitiam Romani populi, quam appetierit  
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it)..

(perf. subj.). Quod traducat (pres. subj.) multitudinem  
That he leads [brings] over a multitude

Germanorum in Galliam, se<sup>127</sup> facere id  
of the Germans into Gaul, he himself to do [did] this

causâ muniendi, sibi non impugnandæ  
for the sake of protecting, himself not of fighting against

Galliæ; esse testimonium ejus  
Gaul; to be [it was] a testimony [proof] of this

rei quod venisset (perf. subj.) non<sup>128</sup> nisi  
thing that he came not except (when)

rogatus, et quod non intulerit (perf. supj.)  
asked, and that he has not waged

bellum, sed defendisset (perf. subj.): se  
war, but has defended (himself): (he)himself

venisse in Galliam prius quam Romanum  
to have [had] come into Gaul earlier than the Roman

populum. Nunquam<sup>129</sup> ante hoc tempus exercitum  
people. Never before this time an army

Romani populi egressum finibus provinciæ  
of the Roman people [has] gone out of the borders of the province

Galliæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sibi? cur  
of Gaul: what did he wish for himself? why

veniret (imp. subj.) in suas possessiones? hanc  
did he come into his possessions? this

Galliam esse suam provinciam, sicuti illam  
Gaul to be [is] his province, even as that (is)

nostram: ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non  
ours: as it was proper [it ought] not

concedi sibi, si faceret impetum in  
to be permitted to himself, if he should make an attack upon

nostros fines; sic item, nos esse iniquos,  
our borders; so also, us to be [we are] unjust,

quod interpellaremus (imp. subj.) se in suo  
because we interfered with himself in his

jure: quod diceret (imp. subj.) Æduos appellatos  
right: that he was saying (that) the Ædui were called

amicos ex consulto Senatûs, se esse  
friends from [by] a decree of the Senate, (he) himself to be [was]

non tam barbarum, necque tam imperitum  
not so barbarous, nor so inexperienced

rerum, ut non, sciret (imp. subj.) Æduos  
of [in] affairs, that he did not, know the Ædui



nēque neither	tulisse (to) have brought	auxilium aid	Romanis to the Romans
proxīmo in the nearest [latest]	bello war	Allobrōgum, of the Allobroges,	nēque nor (that they)
ipsos themselves	in his in these	contentionibus, contests,	quas which
habuissent (pl. perf. subj.) had had	cum with	se himself	et cum and with
Sequānis, the Sequani,	usos-esse to have [had] used	auxilio (abl.) the aid	Romani of the Roman
popūli: people:	se (he) himself	debere <sup>130</sup> to owe [ought]	susplicari, to suspect,
			amicitiā friendship
simulatā, being [was] pretended,	Cæsārem, Cæsar,	quòd because	habēat (pres. subj.) he has
exercitum an army	in Gallīā, in Gaul,	habere to have [has it]	causā opprimendi for the sake of crushing
sui: himself:	qui who	nisi unless	decedat (pres. subj. aut or
deducat (pres. subj.) lead away	exercitum (his) army	ex from	his regionibus, these regions,
sese he himself	habiturum about to [would] hold	illum non him not	pro amico, sed for a friend, but
pro hoste: for an enemy:	quod <sup>131</sup> that	si interfecērit (perf. subj.) if he killed	ēum, him,
sese he himself	esse to be	facturum about to [would] do	gratum a grateful (thing)
nobilibus nobles	que and	principibus chiefs	Romani of the Roman
popūli: people:	se he himself	habere <sup>132</sup> to have [has]	id compertum ab ipsis this thing found out from themselves
per by	eorum their	nuntios; messengers;	gratiam atque amicitiam the favor and friendship
omnium of all	quorum of whom	posset (imp. subj.) he was able	redimere to purchase
eius morte: by his death:	quòd that	si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.) if he should depart	
ac and	tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) should deliver	liberam possessionem free possession	

Gallæ sibi, se remuneraturum  
 of Gaul to himself, (he) himself about to [would] remunerate  
 illum magno præmio, et confecturum,  
 him with great reward, and about to [would] dispatch,  
 quæcunque bella vellet (imp. subj.) geri  
 whatever wars he was wishing to be carried on  
 sine ullo labore et periculo ejus.  
 without any labor and danger of him [on his part].

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsare in eam  
 Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon this  
 sententiâ, quare posset (imp. subj.) non  
 opinion, wherefore he was able [could] not  
 desistere negotio. Næque suam næque  
 (to) desist from the business[undertaking]. Neither his nor  
 consuetudinem Romani populi pati, uti  
 the custom of the Roman people to suffer [permits], that  
 desereret socios<sup>133</sup> meritos optime;  
 he should desert allies having[who have] deserved the best;  
 næque se judicare Galliam esse  
 nor (does) (he)himself (to) judge(that) Gaul to be[is]

potius Ariovisti, quam Romani populi.  
 rather (the possession) of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people.

Arvernos et Rutenos superatos-esse bello  
 The Arverni and Ruteni to have [had] been overcome in war  
 à Quinto Fabio Maximo; quibus (dat.) Romanus  
 by Quintus Fabius Maximus; whom the Roman

populus ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), næque  
 people had pardoned, nor

redegisset (pl. perf. subj.) in provinciam næque  
 had reduced (them) (in)to a province nor

imposuisset (pl. perf. subj.) stipendium: quod<sup>134</sup> si  
 had imposed tribute: that if

oporteret (imp. subj.) quodque antiquissimum tempus  
 it was proper (that) every most ancient time

spectari, imperium Romani populi in Gallia  
 (to) be considered, the empire of the Roman people in Gaul

esse justissimum; si oporteret (imp. subj.)  
 to be [was] most just; if it is proper (that)

judiciū Senatūs observari, Galliā debere  
 the judgment of the Senate (to) be kept, Gaul to owe [ought]  
 esse libērā, quam victā bello  
 to be free, which (though) conquered in war  
 voluisset (pl. perf. subj.) uti suis  
 it [the senate] had willed to [should] use its own  
 legibus" (abl.).  
 laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in colloquio,  
 While these (things) are transpiring in the conference,  
 nuntiātum-est Cæsāri, equites Ariovisti  
 it was reported to Cæsar, (that) the horsemen of Ariovistus  
 accedēre<sup>135</sup> propiūs tumūlum, et adequitare ad  
 (to) approach nearer the hillock, and (to) ride up to  
 nostros, conjicere lapides que tela in  
 our (men), (to) throw stones and weapons against  
 nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que recepit  
 our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and betook  
 se ad suos, que imperavit suis (dat.)  
 himself to his own (men), and ordered his own (men)  
 ne rejicerent quod telum omnino  
 that they should not throw back any weapon at all  
 in hostes: nam etsi videbat  
 against the enemy: for although he was seeing (that)  
 prælium fore cum equitatu sine  
 a battle to be about to [would] be with the cavalry without  
 ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tamen putabat<sup>136</sup>  
 any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet he was thinking (it)  
 non, committendum ut, hostibus pulsus,  
 not, [must not] be permitted that, the enemy having been routed  
 posset dici, eos circumventos à  
 it might be able [it could] (to) be said, them [they were] circumvented by  
 se per fidem in colloquio. Posteaquam  
 himself through (broken) faith in the conference. After that  
 elatum-est in vulgus militum, quā<sup>137</sup>  
 it was published among the mass of soldiers, what  
 arrogantia (abl.) Ariovistus usus in colloquio  
 arrogance Ariovistus having used in the conference

interdixisset (pl. perf. subj.) Romanis (dat.) omni  
he had forbidden the Romans from all

Galliâ; que equites ejus fecissent  
Gaul; and that the horsemen of him [his horsemen] had made  
(pl. perf. subj.) impetum in nostros;  
an attack upon our men;

que hæc res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.) colloquium;  
and this thing had broken up the conference;

multo major alacritas que majus studium  
much greater activity and a greater desire

pugnandi injectum-est exercitui.  
of fighting was incited to [in] the army.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus mittit legatos  
Two days afterwards Ariovistus sends ambassadors

ad Cæsarem, "se velle agere cum  
to Cæsar, (to say), "he himself to wish [wishes] to treat with

eo de his rebus, quæ coeptæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
him about these things, which had been begun

âgi inter eos, necque perfectæ-essent  
to be treated between them, nor had been completed:

(pl. perf. subj.): uti aut constituëret iterum  
that either he would determine [fix] again

diem colloquio, aut si vellet (imp. subj.)  
a day for a conference, or if he was wishing

minus id, mitteret aliquem ex suis  
less (for) this (that), he would send some one from his

legatis ad se. Causa<sup>138</sup> colloquendi visa-est  
lieutenants to himself. A cause of conferring seemed

non Cæsari; et èd magis, quod pridie,  
not to Cæsar; and for this the more, that the day before,

ejus diei, Germani potuerant non retineri  
this day, the Germans had been able [could] not (to) be restrained,

quin conicerent tela in nostros.  
but that they should throw weapons against our (men).

Existimabat sese missurum  
He was thinking (that he) himself about to [would] send

legatum ex suis cum magno periculo ad  
an ambassador from his own (men) with great danger to

ĕum, et objecturum fēris hominībus.  
him, and about to [would] expose (him) to savage men.

Visum-est commodissimum mittere ad ĕum Caium  
It seemed most convenient to send to him Caius

Valerium Procillum, filium Caii Valerii  
Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius

Caburi, adolescentem summā virtute et  
Caburus, a young man with [of] the highest virtue and

humanitate, (pāter cujus donatus-erat  
politeness, (the father of whom had been presented

civitate à Caio Valerio Flacco et  
with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus both

propter fidem et propter scientiam  
on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge

Gallicæ linguæ, quā (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur  
of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus was using

multā (adj.) jam longinquā consuetudine, et  
much [fluently] now by long custom, and

quòd causa<sup>139</sup> peccandi esset non  
because a cause of transgressing [offense] was not

Germanis in ĕo); et Marcum Mettium, qui  
to the Germans in him); and Marcus Mettius, who

utebātur hospitio (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit  
was enjoying the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged

his (dat.), ut quæ Ariovistus dicēret,  
these, that what (things) Ariovistus might say,

cognoscērent et referrent ad se. Quos  
they should learn and should bring back to himself. Whom

quum<sup>140</sup> Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in  
when Ariovistus had beheld in

castris (pl.) apud se, suo exercitu  
(his) camp with himself, his army (being)

præsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)  
present, he cried out: "Why did they come

ad se? an causā speculandi?" Prohibuit  
to himself? (was it) for the sake of spying?" He stopped

conantes dicere, et conjecit in catenas.  
(them) endeavoring to speak, and cast (them) into chains.

48.	Eodem	dñe	promovit	castra (pl.),
	On the same	day	he moved forward	(his) camp,
	et	consedit	sub monte	sex millibus (abl.)
	and	pitched (it)	under a mountain	six thousand
	passum	à	castris (pl.)	Cæsaris.
	(of) paces	from	the camp	of Cæsar.
				Postridie
				The day after
	ejus diei	traduxit	suas copias præter	castra (pl.)
	this day	he led over	his forces beyond	the camp
	Cæsaris	et	fecit	castra (pl.)
	of Cæsar	and	made	a camp
				duobus
				(by) two
	millibus (abl.)	passum	ultra eum,	eo
	thousand	(of) paces	beyond him,	with this
	consilio,	ut	intercluderet	Cæsarem
	design,	that	he might shut off	Cæsar
				frumento
				from corn
	que	commeatu,	qui	supportaretur <sup>141</sup>
	and	provisions,	which	was [were] brought
				ex
				from
	Sequanis	et	Æduis.	Ex eo die Cæsar
	the Sequani	and	the Ædui.	From this day Cæsar
	produxit	suas copias	quinque	continuos
	led forth	his forces	five	continual [successive]
	dies	pro	castris (pl.),	et habuit
	days	before	the camp,	and had
				(his) battle line
	instructam,	ut	si Ariovistus	vellet contendere
	drawn up,	that	if Ariovistus	might wish to contend
	prelio,	potestas <sup>142</sup>	non	deesset ei.
	in battle,	the power [opportunity]	might not	be wanting to him.
	Ariovistus	omnibus	his diebus	continuit exercitum
	Ariovistus	on all	these days	kept (his) army
	castris (pl.);	contendit	quotidie	equestri prelio. <sup>143</sup>
	in camp;	he contended	daily	in a cavalry battle
	Hoc erat	genus	pugnæ,	quo Germani
	This was	the kind	of fight,	in which the Germans
	exercuerant	se.	Erant	sex millia
	had exercised	themselves.	(There) were	six thousand
	equitum,	totidem	pedites	numero
	(of) horsemen,	as many	foot soldiers	in number
				most swift
	ac	fortissimi,	singulos	quos singuli
	and	most brave	each (of),	whom (the horsemen) each

delegērant      ex      omni      copīâ,      causâ  
had chosen      from      all      the force,      for the sake of

sūæ      salutis (gen.).      Versabantur      cum  
their own      safety.      They were engaged      with

his      in      prœliis;      equītes      recipiebant  
these      in      the battles;      the horsemen      were betaking

se      ad      hos:      hi,      si      quid  
themselves      to      these:      these,      if      any (thing)

erat      durīus,      concurrebant:      si      qui,      graviore  
was      more difficult,      were rushing up:      if      any,      a heavier

volnēre      accepto,      decidērant  
[rather severe]      wound      having been received,      had fallen down

ēquo,      circumsistebant:      si      erat<sup>144</sup>  
from (his) horse,      they were rallying around:      if      it was

prodeundum      longiūs      aut      recipiendum  
to be advanced      farther      or      to be retreated

celeriūs      quò,      tanta      erat      celeritas  
more quickly      any where,      so great      was      the speed

horum      exercitatione,      ut,      sublevati      jūbis  
of these      by exercise,      that,      supported      by the manes

equorum,      adæquarent      cursum.  
of the horses,      they would equal      (their) course [speed].

49. Ubi      Cæsar      intellexit      eum      tenere  
When      Cæsar      learned (that)      him [he]      to hold

se      castris (pl.),      ne prohiberetur  
[was holding] himself      in camp,      (that) he might not be prohibited

diutiūs      commeatu,      delegit      locum      idoneum  
longer      from provision,      he chose      a place      suitable

castris (pl.),      circiter      sex-centos      passus      ab  
for camp,      about      six hundred      paces      from

his      ultra      eum      locum,      in      quo      loco  
them      beyond      this      place,      in      which      place

Germani      consederant,      que      triplici      acie  
the Germans      had encamped,      and      a triple      battle line

instructâ,      venit      ad eum locum.      Jussit  
having been drawn up,      he came      to this      place.      He ordered

primam      et      secundam      aciem      esse      in      armis,  
the first      and      second      line      to be      in      arms,

tertiam the third	munire to fortify	castra (pl.). the camp.	Hic This	lõcus, place,	ũti as
dictum-est, has been said,	abērat was distant	ab from	hoste the enemy	circiter about	
sex-centos six-hundred	passus. paces.	Eò Thither	Ariovistus Ariovistus	misit sent	
numērum a number	homīnum of men	circiter about	sexdēcim sixteen	millia thousand	
expedita, light armed,	cum omni with all	equitatu; the cavalry;	quæ which	copiæ forces	
perterrerent should alarm	nostros, our (men),	et and	prohiberent should check (them)	munitione. from fortifying.	
Nihilõ secũs, Nevertheless,	Cæsar, Cæsar,	ut as	constituērat he had determined	antē, before,	
jussit ordered	dũas the two	acĩes lines	propulsare to repel	hostem, the enemy,	
tertiam the third	perficere to complete	õpus. the work.	Castris (pl.) The camp	munitis, having been fortified,	
reliquit he left	ĩbi there	dũas two	legiones legions	et and	partem auxil- part of the aux-
iorum; iliaries;	reduxit he led back	quatũor the four	relĩquas remaining (legions)	in into	
majora the greater	castra (pl.). camp.				

50. Proximo                      dĩe,                      Cæsar                      sũo                      instituo  
On the next                      day,                      Cæsar                      by his                      practice

eduxit led forth	sũas his	copias forces	ex from	utrisque both	castris; camps;	que and
progressus having advanced	paullũlum very little	à from	majorĩbus, the greater,	instruxit drew up		
acĩem que (his) line and	fecit made [gave]	hostĩbus (to) the enemy	potestatem an opportunity			
pugnandi. of fighting.	Ubi When	intellexit he understood (that)	ẽos them [they]	ne not		
tum then	quĩdem indeed (even)	prodire, to [would] come forth,	circiter about	meridĩem midday		
reduxit he led back	exercĩtum the army	in into	castra (pl.). camp.	Tum Then	demum at last	



Ariovistus misit partem suarum copiarum, quæ  
Ariovistus sent part of his troops, which

oppugnaret<sup>145</sup> minora castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est  
might assault the lesser camp. It was fought

acriter utrimque usque ad vesp̄rum. Occasu  
sharply on both sides quite to [till] evening. With the setting

solis Ariovistus reduxit suas copias in  
of the sun Ariovistus led back his troops into

castra (pl.), multis vulneribus et illatis  
camp, many wounds both having been inflicted

et acceptis. Quum Cæsar quæreret (imp. subj.)  
and received. When Cæsar was inquiring

ex captivis, quamobrem Ariovistus decertaret  
from the captives, wherefore Ariovistus was contending

(imp. subj.) non proelio, reperiēbat hanc  
not in battle, he was ascertaining this

causam, quod ea consuetudo esset (imp.  
was the cause, because this custom was common

subj.) apud Germanos, ut matresfamilias  
with the Germans, that the mothers of family [matrons]

eorum declararent sortibus et vaticinationibus,  
of them should declare by lots and by divination,

utrū esset ex usu proelium committi  
whether it might be from [of] use that battle to [should] be joined

necne: eas dicere<sup>147</sup> ita. "Non esse fas  
or not: them [they] (to) say thus. "Not to be [it is not] right

Germanos superare, si contendissent proelio  
the Germans to [should] conquer, if they should contend in battle

ante novam lunam."  
before the new moon."

51. Postridie ejus diei, praesidio relicto  
The day after (of) this day, a guard having been left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est satis, constituit  
for both camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro  
all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy before

minoribus castris (pl.), quod valebat<sup>148</sup>  
the lesser camp, because he did avail [was strong]

mīnūs      multitudīne      legionariorum      milītum      pro  
less      in the multitude      of legionary      soldiers      for

numēro      hostīum;      ut      uteretur      alarīs (abl.)  
the number      of the enemy;      that      he might use      the auxiliaries

ad speciem.      Ipse, triplīci acīe      instructā,  
for a show.      (He) himself, a triple battle line      having been arrayed,

accessit      usque ad      castra (pl.)      hostīum.      Tum  
approached      quite to      the camp      of the enemy.      Then

demum      Germani      necessariō      eduxerunt      sūas  
at last      the Germans      necessarily      led out      their

copias      è      castris (pl.);      que      constituerunt  
forces      from      the camp;      and      arranged (them)

generatim;      que      paribus      intervallis,      Harudes,  
by nations;      and      at equal      intervals,      the Harudes,

Marcomannos,      Triboces,      Vangiōnes,      Nemetes,  
Marcomanni,      Triboces,      Vangiones,      Nemetes,

Sedusios,      Suevos,      que      circumdederunt      omnem  
Sedusii,      Suevi;      and      surrounded      all

sūam aciem      rhedis      et      carris.      Eō  
their line      with carriages      and      wagons.      There

imposuerunt muliēres, quæ,      manibus      passis,  
they consigned the women, who, (their) hands (having been) spread,

fientes      implorabant      milites      proficiscentes  
weeping      were imploring      the soldiers      setting out

ad prœlium, nē tradērent      se      in  
to battle,      that they should not deliver      themselves      into

servitutem      Romanis.  
slavery      to the Romans.

52. Cæsar      præfecit<sup>149</sup>      legatos      singulos  
Cæsar      appointed      lieutenants      one each

et quæstorem singulis legionibus (pl.), ūti      quisque  
and a quæstor      to each legion,      that      every one

haberet eos testes sūæ virtutis.      Ipse  
might have them (as) witnesses of his valor.      (He) himself

à      dextro cornu,      quod      animadvertērat  
from [on] the right horn [wing],      because      he had observed

eam partem hostium      esse minimè firmam,  
(that) this part      of the enemy      to be [was] least      firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dāto,  
 joined battle. Our (men), the signal (having been) given,  
 fecerunt impētum ita acriter in hostes: que  
 made an attack so sharply upon the enemy: and  
 hostes procurrerunt ita repentē que celeriter, ut  
 the enemy charged so suddenly and quickly, that  
 spatium conjiciendi pila in hostes non  
 space [time] of [for] throwing javelins against the enemy was not  
 daretur. Pilis rejectis,<sup>150</sup> pugnatum-est  
 given. The javelins (having been) thrown aside, it was fought  
 cominus gladiis. At Germani celeriter  
 hand to hand with swords. But the Germans quickly  
 ex sua consuetudine, phalange facta,  
 from [after] their custom, a phalanx having been formed,  
 exceperunt impetus gladiatorum. Complures nostri  
 received the attacks of the swords. Very many (of) our  
 milites (nom.) reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in phalanges  
 soldiers were found, who would leap up upon the phalanxes  
 et revellerent scuta manibus, et  
 and would tear away the shields with (their) hands, and  
 vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies hostium  
 would wound from above. When the line of the enemy  
 pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à sinistro cornu,  
 had been routed from [on] the left horn [wing],  
 atque conversa in fugam, premebant  
 and turned into flight, they were pressing  
 nostram aciem vehementer à dextro  
 our line urgently from (on) the right  
 cornu multitudinem suorum. Quum  
 horn [wing] by the multitude of their (men). When  
 Publius Crassus adolescens, qui præerat  
 Publius Crassus a young man, who commanded  
 equitatui (dat.) animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id  
 the cavalry, had perceived this  
 quod erat<sup>151</sup> expeditior quam hi, qui  
 because he was more disengaged than these, who  
 versabantur inter aciem, misit tertiam  
 were employed among [within] the line, he sent the third

aciēm nostris laborantibus subsidio.  
line to our (men) toiling [struggling] for [as] a reinforcement.

53. Ita prœlium restitutum-est atque omnes  
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, nēque destiterunt  
the enemy turned (their) backs, nor ceased

fugere, prius quàm pervenerunt ad flumen  
to flee, before that they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circiter quinque millia passuum ex eo  
Rhine, about five thousand (of) paces from this

loco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi viribus  
place. There very few, either having trusted their strength,

(dat.pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut, linitibus  
strove to swim over; or, boats

inventis, reppererunt salutem sibi.  
having been discovered, found safety for themselves.

In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, nactus  
In [among] these was Ariovistus, who, having found

naviculam deligatam ad ripam, profugit eâ:  
a small skiff fastened at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equites consecuti interfecerunt omnes  
our horsemen having overtaken slew all

reliquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt duæ,  
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva<sup>152</sup> natione, quam  
one a Suevian (woman) by nation [nationality], whom

adduxerat secum domo; altera  
he had brought up with himself from home; the other

Norica, soror regis Voccionis,  
a Norican (woman), sister of king Voccio,

quam duxerat Gallia, missam à  
whom he had led [married] in Gaul, sent by

fratre: utraque perit in eâ  
(her) brother: each perished in this

figâ: duæ filiae harum, altera  
fight: (there were) two daughters of these, the one

occisa-est, altera capta. Caius Valerius  
was slain, the other taken [captured]. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in  
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)

fūgā vinctus trinis catenis à custodibus,  
flight bound with triple chains by (his) keepers,

incīdit in Cæsārem ipsum persequentem  
fell upon [fell in with] Caesar himself pursuing

equitatum hostium. Quæ res quidem  
the cavalry of the enemy. Which thing [circumstance] indeed

attulit non minorem voluptatem Cæsāri, quàm  
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than

victoriā ipsa; quòd videbat honestissimum  
the victory itself; because he was seeing a most honorable

homīnem provinciæ Galliæ, sūm familiarem  
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance

et hospitem, ereptum è manibus hostium,  
and host, rescued from the hands of the enemy,

restitutum sibi: nèque fortuna diminuērat  
restored to himself: nor [and] fortune had [not] diminished

quidquam de tantā voluptate et gratulatione  
any thing from so great pleasure and congratulation

calamitate ejus. Is dicebāt  
by a disaster of [to] him. He was saying

consultum (-esse) sortibus ter, se  
to have [it had] been consulted by lots thrice, himself

præsente, de se, utrū necaretur  
(being) present, about himself, whether he should be put to death

stātīm igni, an reservaretur in aliud  
immediately with fire, or should be reserved unto [for] another

tempus: se esse incolūmen beneficio  
time: (that he) himself to be [was] safe by the favor

sortium. Item Marcus Mettius repertus-est  
of the lots. Likewise Marcus Mettius was found

et reductus ad eum.  
and led back to him.

54. Hoc prœliō nuntiatio trans Rhenum,  
This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venērant ad ripas Rheni,  
the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine

cœperunt reverti dõmum: quos Ubii, qui  
 began to return home: whom the Ubii, who  
 incolunt<sup>153</sup> proximè Rhenum, insecuti  
 dwell nearest the Rhine, having followed up  
 perterritos, occiderunt magnum numërum ex his.  
 dismayed, slew a great number from [of] these.  
 Cæsar, duobus maximas bellis confectis  
 Cæsar, two very great wars having been finished  
 unâ æstate, deduxit paullo maturiùs, quàm  
 in one summer, conducted a little earlier, than  
 tempus anni postulabat, exercitum in  
 the time of the year was demanding [requiring] the army into  
 hiberna in Sequānos: præposuit  
 winter quarters into [among] the Sequani: he appointed  
 Labienum hibernis: ipse profectus-est  
 Labienus for the winter quarters: (he) himself departed  
 in citeriorem Galliam ad agendos conventus.<sup>154</sup>  
 into hither Gaul for holding assemblies.

## SECOND BOOK

The second book contains an account of Cæsar's expeditions against the Belgæ, the Nervii, the Aduatuci, and the Amorigi, in the six hundred and ninety seventh year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 57. Learning that the Belgæ had entered with the other tribes into a confederacy against the Roman people, Cæsar immediately moves with his army against them. First the Remi are conquered, from whom valuable information is gained relating to the movements of the Belgæ. Crossing the Aisne, Cæsar relieves Bibrax then under attack by the Belgæ. It is not long before the Belgæ and the Suessiones are forced to surrender. The war then turns against the Nervii, who in spite of their extraordinary courage, are at last subdued. The Aduatuci then through sheer treachery seek to overthrow Cæsar's troops. But they like the other tribes are quickly brought under Roman rule. Cæsar returns to Italy and a Thanksgiving is voted by the senate.

1. Quum Cæsar esset in citeriore Gallia  
 When Cæsar was in hither Gaul,  
 Ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri  
 just as above we have shown, frequent  
 rumores afferebantur ad eum, que  
 rumors were brought to him, and  
 item<sup>1</sup> fiebat certior litëris (pl.) Labieni,  
 likewise he was made more sure [informed] by letters of Labienus,  
 omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertiam  
 (that) all the Belgæ, which we have said to be [are] the third  
 partem Gallia, conjurare contra Romanum populum,  
 part of Gaul, (to) conspire against the Roman people,  
 que dare obsides inter se. Has esse  
 and (to) give hostages between themselves. These to be [are]  
 causas conjurandi: primum, quod vererentur  
 the causes of conspiring: first, because they were fearing  
 (imp.subj.) ne, omni Gallia pacatâ, noster  
 lest all Gaul having been subdued, our

exercitus adduceretur ad eos; deinde, quòd  
 army should be led up to them; then, because

sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim  
 they were solicited by some Gauls, partly

qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 (those) who, as they were unwilling that the Germans

versari diutius in Gallia, ita  
 to be [should] be employed longer in Gaul, so

ferebant molestè exercitum Romani  
 were bearing (it) uneasily (that) the army of the Roman

populi hiemare atque inveterascere in  
 people to [should] winter and to grow old [continue] in

Gallia; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate  
 Gaul; partly (those) who, by fickleness and lightness

animi, studebant novis imperiis; etiam  
 of mind, were eager for new governments; also

ab nonnullis, quòd in Gallia regna  
 by some, because in Gaul the kingdoms [the thrones]

vulgò occupabantur à potentioribus atque  
 commonly were occupied by the more powerful and

his, qui habebant facultates ad conducendos  
 by those, who were having means for hiring

homines,<sup>2</sup> qui poterant minus facile consequi  
 men, who were able less easily to attain

eam rem nostro imperio.  
 this thing (under) our government.

2. Cæsar commotus his nuntiis que  
 Cæsar moved by these messages and

litteris conscripsit duas novas legiones in citeriore  
 letters levied two new legions in hither

Gallia, et æstate inita, misit Quintum  
 Gaul, and summer having begun, he sent Quintus

Pedii legatum qui deduceret in  
 Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into

interiorem Galliam. Ipse, quum<sup>3</sup> primum incip-  
 inner Gaul. (He) himself, when first there was

eret (imp. subj.) esse, copia pabuli venit ad  
 beginning to be, plenty of forage came to



exercitum.                      Dat                      negotium                      Senonibus  
the army.                      He gives                      the business [task]                      to the Senones

que                      reliquis                      Gallis,                      qui                      erant                      finitimi  
and                      to the remaining                      Gauls,                      who                      were                      neighbors

Belgis,                      uti                      cognoscant<sup>4</sup>                      ea,                      quæ  
to the Belgæ,                      that                      they learn [ascertain]                      these (things),                      which

gerantur (pres. subj.)                      apud                      eos,                      et                      faciant  
are carried on [transpiring]                      with                      them,                      and                      may make

se                      certiores                      de his rebus.                      Omnes  
himself                      more certain [inform him]                      about these things.                      All

hi                      constanter                      nunciaverunt,                      manus  
these                      continually                      reported, (that)                      bands

cogi,                      exercitum                      conduci  
to be [were being] brought together,                      an army                      to be [was being]

in                      unum                      locum.                      Tum                      verò  
assembled                      to                      one                      place.                      Then                      indeed

existimavit                      non dubitandum,<sup>5</sup>                      quin  
he thought (it) [he must]                      not                      to be hesitated [hesitate],                      but that

proficisceretur                      ad                      eos.                      Re                      frumentariâ  
he should set out                      to                      them.                      The                      grain supply

provisâ,                      movet                      castra (pl.)                      que  
having been provided,                      he moves (his)                      camp                      and

circiter                      quindécim                      diebus                      pervenit                      ad  
in about                      fifteen                      days                      arrives                      to [at]

fines                      Belgarum.  
the borders                      of the Belgæ.

3. Quum                      venisset (pl. perf. subj.)                      èd                      de  
When                      he had come                      there                      from

improviso                      que celerius                      opinione  
unforeseen [unexpectedly]                      and                      more quickly (than) the opinion [belief]

omnium,                      Remi,                      qui                      sunt                      proximi                      ex  
of all,                      the Remi,                      who                      are                      nearest                      from [of]

Belgis                      Galliæ,                      miserunt                      ad                      eum                      legatos,  
the Belgæ                      to Gaul,                      sent                      to                      him                      ambassadors,

Iccium                      et                      Andocombogium                      primos                      suæ  
Iccius                      and                      Andocombogius                      first (men)                      of their

civitatis,                      qui                      dicèrent,                      “permittere<sup>6</sup>                      se  
state,                      who                      should say,                      “to [that they] entrust                      themselves

que omnia sua in fidem atque potestatem  
and all their (effects) into [to] the faith and power

Romani populi, neque se  
of the Roman people, (that) neither (they) themselves

consensisse cum reliquis Belgæ, neque  
(to) have combined with the remaining Belgæ, nor

conjurasse contra Romanum populum, que  
(to) have conspired against the Roman people, and (that)

esse paratos et dare obsides, et  
to be [they are] prepared both to give hostages, and

facere imperata, et recipere oppidis  
to do (the things) commanded, and to receive (them) in the towns

et juvare frumento que cæteris rebus;  
and to aid with corn and in other things [matters];

omnes reliquos Belgas esse in armis:  
(that) all the remaining Belgæ to be [are] in arms:

que Germanos, qui incolunt cis Rhenum  
and the Germans, who dwell on this side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que  
(to) have united themselves with these [Belgæ]; and

tantum esse furorem omnium eorum, ut<sup>7</sup>  
so great to be [is] the fury of all of them, that

potuerint (perf. subj.) detertere ne SueSSIONES  
they have been able to restrain not the SueSSIONES

quidem, suos fratres que consanguineos, qui  
even, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem  
use the same right, the same

legibus, habent (pres. subj.) unum imperium, que  
laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin  
one magistracy with themselves, but that

consentirent cum his.  
they should conspire with these.

4. Quum quæreret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ  
When he was inquiring from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis.  
states and how great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello,  
 and what they were able in war,  
 reperiebat sic; plerosque Belgas  
 he was ascertaining thus; (that) the most of the Belgæ  
 ortos-esse Germanis que antiquitùs  
 (to) have sprung from the Germans and of old  
 traductos Rhenum, consedissee ibi  
 (were) led over the Rhine, to [that they] have settled there  
 propter fertilitatem agri; que expulisse  
 on account of the fertility of the land; and (to) have driven out  
 Gallos, qui incolerent (imp. subj.) ea loca; que  
 the Gauls, who were inhabiting these places; and  
 esse solos,<sup>8</sup> qui, memoriâ nostrorum patrum,  
 to be [are] alone, (those) who, in the memory of our fathers,  
 omni Galliâ vexatâ, prohibuerint (perf. subj.)  
 all Gaul having been harassed, prohibited  
 Teutônes que Cimbros ingredi intra suos  
 the Teutones and Cimbri to enter within their  
 fines. Ex quâ re fieri uti  
 borders. From which thing to be done [it resulted] that  
 sumerent (imp. subj.) magnam auctoritatem que  
 they were taking [assuming] great authority and  
 magnos spiritus in militari re sibi,  
 great spirits [airs] in military matters to themselves,  
 memoriâ earum rerum. Remi dicebant  
 by the memory of these things. The Remi were saying  
 se habere omnia explorata de  
 (that) they themselves (to) have all (things) investigated about  
 numero eorum, propterea quod conjuncti  
 the number of them [their number], because (that) joined together  
 propinquitatibus (pl.) atque affinitatibus,  
 by kinship and by marriage alliances,  
 cognoverint (perf. subj.) quantam multitudinem  
 they knew how great a multitude  
 quisque pollicitus-sit (perf. subj.) in communi  
 each promised in the common  
 concilio Belgarum ad id bellum. Bellovacos<sup>9</sup>  
 council of the Belgæ to [for] this war. The Bellovacos

valere plurimum inter eos, et virtute, et  
(to) prevail most among them, both in valor, and

auctoritate, et numero hominum; hos posse  
in authority, and in the number of men; these to be [are] able

conficere centum millia armata;  
to convene [muster] a hundred thousand armed (men);

pollicitos sexaginta millia electa  
having [that they had] promised sixty thousand chosen

ex eo numero, que postulare  
from this number, and to demand [demanded]

imperium belli sibi. Suessiones esse  
the control of the war for themselves. The Suessiones to be [are]

suos finitimos; possidere latissimos que  
their neighbors; to (they) possess the most broad and

feracissimos agros; Divitiacum fuisse regem  
most productive lands; Divitiacus to have [has] been king

apud eos, potentissimum totius Gallie,  
with [over] them, the most powerful of entire Gaul,

etiam nostra memoria, qui cum obtinuisset  
even in our memory, who not only had held

(perf. subj.) imperium magnæ partis harum  
the empire of a great part of these

regionum, tum etiam Britannie; Galbam  
regions, but also even of Britain; Galba

nunc esse regem; summam  
now to be [is] (their) king; the sum [chief command]

totius belli deferri ad hunc  
of the whole war to be [was] conferred to (on) this (man)

voluntate omnium; habere duodecim oppida  
by the will of all; to have [they have] twelve towns

numero, polliceri quinquaginta millia  
in number, and (to) promise fifty thousand

armata: Nervios, totidem, qui habeantur  
armed (men): the Nervii, just as many, who are held [deemed]

(pres. subj.) maxime feri inter ipsos que absint  
the most fierce among them and are distant

(pres. subj.) longissime; Atrebatum, quindecim  
farthest; the Atrebatum, fifteen

millia; Ambianos, decem millia; Morinos,  
thousand; the Ambiani, ten thousand; the Morini,

viginti quinque millia: Menapios, novem millia;  
twenty five thousand: the Menapii, nine thousand;

Calētos decem millia; Veliocasses et  
the Caleti ten thousand; the Veliocasses and

Veromandūos totīdem; Aduatucos, viginti novem  
Veromandui just as many; the Aduatuci, twenty nine

millia; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cærosos,  
thousand; to [they] believe the Condrusi, Eburones, Cærosi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomīne Germani,  
Pæmani, who are called by one name German,

ad quadraginta millia.  
(promise), to [about] forty thousand.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus<sup>10</sup> Remos, que  
Cæsar, having encouraged the Remi, and

prosecutus liberaliter oratione, jussit  
having followed up liberally [kindly] with a speech, ordered

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que  
all (their) senate to assemble to himself and

liberos principum adduci obsides ad  
(that) the children of the chiefs (to) be brought (as) hostages to

se. Omnia quæ facta-sunt diligenter  
him(self). All which (things) were done exactly

ab his ad diem. Ipse cohortatus  
by these to the day. He himself having encouraged

magnopere Ædūm Divitiacum, docet  
very greatly [earnestly] the Æduan Divitiacus, shows

quantopere intersit (pres. subj.) rei publicæ (gen.)  
how greatly it concerns the republic

que communis salutis, minus hostium  
and the common safety, (that) the hands of the enemy

distineri, ne sit<sup>11</sup> configendam uno tempore  
(to) be separated, lest it must be fought at one time

cum tantâ multitudīne; id posse  
with so great a multitude; that it to be able [could-

fieri, si Ædūi introduxerint (perf. subj.)  
to) be done, if the Ædui should introduce

sūas copias in fines Bellovacorum et  
 their forces into the borders of the Bellovaci and

cœpērint (perf. subj.) populari agros eorum.  
 should begin to ravage the lands of them [their lands].

His mandatis, dimittit<sup>12</sup> eum ab  
 These (things) having been enjoined, he dismisses him from

se. Postquam cognovit ab his exploratoribus,  
 himself. After that he knew from these scouts,

quos misērat, et ab Remis, omnes copias  
 whom he had sent, and from the Remi, (that) all the forces

Belgarum coactas in unum locum  
 of the Belgæ (having been) collected into one place

venire ad se, nēque jam  
 to come [were coming] to him(self), nor now

abesse<sup>13</sup> longē; maturavit traducēre  
 to be [were] distant far; he hastened to take over

flumen Axōnam, quod est in extremis  
 the river Axona, which is in the extreme [remotest]

finibus Remorum, exercitum, atque ibi  
 borders of the Remi, the army, and there

posuit castra (pl.). Quæ res et  
 pitched (his) camp. Which thing [action] both

muniebat unum latus castrorum (pl.) ripis  
 was fortifying one side of the camp by the banks

fluminis et reddebat ea  
 of the river and was rendering these (things)

quæ erant pōst, tuta ab hostibus, et  
 which were behind, safe from the enemy, and

efficiebat ut commeatus possent  
 was effecting that provisions might be able [could]

portari ad eum ab Remis, que  
 (to) be carried to him from the Remi, and

reliquis civitatibus sine pericūlo. Pons erat  
 the remaining states without danger. A bridge was

in eo flumine; ibi ponit præsidiū,  
 on this river; there he places a guard,

et reliquit Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum  
 and left Quintus Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant

in altērâ parte fluminis cum sex cohortibus;  
on the other part [side] of the river with six cohorts;

jūbet munire castra (pl.) vallo in  
he orders (him) to fortify the camp with a rampart into [in]

altitudīnem duodēcim pēdum que fossâ  
height (of) twelve feet and with a trench

duodeviginti pēdum.  
(of) eighteen feet (deep).

6. Oppidum Remorum, nomīne Bibrax, abērat  
A town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant  
octo millia passūm ab castris ipsis (pl.);  
eight thousand (of) paces from the camp itself;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impētu  
the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinēre: sustentatum est ægrē  
from [on] the march: it [the assault] was sustained hardly

eo dīe. Eādem oppugnatīo Gallorum atque  
on this day. The same assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est haec: Hi, ūbi, multitudīne  
of the Belgæ is this: These, when, a multitude

homīnum circumjectâ totis mœnibus (dat.),  
of men having been thrown around the whole wall,

lapīdes cœpti-sunt jāci in murum  
stones were begun to be thrown against the wall

undīque que murus nudatus-est defensoribus;  
on all sides and the wall was stripped from defenders

testudīne factâ, succedunt portis (dat.)  
a testudo having been formed, approach the gates

que subrūunt murum. Quod tum fiebat  
and undermine the wall. Which then was done

facilē. Nam cum tanta<sup>14</sup> multitudo conjiciebant  
easily. For when so great a multitude were hurling

lapīdes ac tela, protestas consistendi in  
stones and darts, a power [ability] of standing on

muro erat nulli. Quam nox fecisset  
the wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Remus Iccius,  
an end of assaulting, the Remian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter  
with [of the] highest nobility and favor among

sũos, qui tum præerat oppido, unus ex  
his own (people), who then commanded (to) the town, one from [of]

his, qui venérant ad Cæsarem legati  
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors

de pace, mittit nuntios ad eum, nisi  
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidiũ submittatur (pres. subj.) sibi, se  
aid is sent to him(self), he himself

posse non sustinere diutius.  
to be able [could] not (to) hold out longer.

7. Eò de mediâ nocte, Cæsar usus  
Thither about mid night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducibus, qui venérant nuntii ab  
the same guides, who had come (as) messengers from

Iceio, mittit Numidas et Cretas sagittarios  
Iceius, sends the Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidio oppidanis.  
and Balearic slingers for a reinforcement to the townsmen.

Adventu quorum, et studium propugnandi  
By the arrival of whom, both a zeal of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit  
with a hope of defence approached

Remis (dat.), et de eadem causâ spes  
the Remi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppidi discessit hostibus.  
of gaining the town departed from [left] the enemy.

Itaque morati paulisper apud oppidum  
Therefore having delayed a little while at the town

que depopulati agros Remorum, omnibus  
and having laid waste the lands of the Remi, all

vicis que ædificiis incensis, quò  
the villages and buildings having been burnt, where

poterant adire, contenderunt  
they were able to approach, they strove [hastened]

ad castra (pl.) Cæsaris cum omnibus copiis,  
to the camp of Cæsar with all (their) forces,



et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mīnūs duobus  
 and pitched (their) camp from [at] less than two  
 millibus passūm, quæ castra (pl.) ut  
 thousand (of) paces, which camp as  
 significabatur fumo atque ignibus, patebant  
 was indicated by smoke and by fires, was extending  
 in latitudīnem amplius octo millibus  
 into [in] breadth more (than) eight thousand  
 passūm.  
 (of) paces.

8. Cæsar primò statuit supersedēre  
 Cæsar at first determined to defer  
 prælio (abl.) et propter multitudīnem  
 a battle both on account of the multitude  
 hostium et propter eximiam opinionem  
 of the enemy and on account of the extraordinary reputation  
 virtutis; tamen periclitabatur quotidie  
 of (their) valor; yet he was making trial daily  
 equestribus præliis, quid hostis posset  
 in cavalry battles, what the enemy might be able  
 virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi  
 in valor, and what our (men) might dare. When  
 intellexit nostros esse non inferiores,  
 he understood (that) our (men) to be [were] not inferior,  
 loco pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque  
 the place before the camp (being) favorable and  
 idoneo<sup>15</sup> naturâ ad instruendam aciem; quòd  
 suitable by nature for drawing up the line; because  
 is collis ubi castra (pl.) posita-erant, editus  
 this hill where the camp had been placed, being raised  
 paullulum ex planitie, patebat in  
 a little from the plain, was extending into [in]  
 latitudīnem adversus tantum loci, quantum  
 breadth opposite so much of place [distance] as  
 acies instructa potērat occupare atque  
 the line (of battle), arrayed, was able to occupy, and  
 habebat dejectus lateris ex utrâque  
 was having descents of the side from [on] either

parte, et lenīter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim  
part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually

redibat ad planitiem: ab utroque latēre  
was returning to the plain: from each side

ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circīter  
of this hill he led over a transverse trench about

quadringentorum passūum, et ad extremas  
(of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]

fossas constituit castella, que ibi collocavit  
the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed

tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
engines; lest, when he had arrayed

aciem, hostes (quod poterant tantum  
(his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much

multitudine) possent circumvenire à  
by (their) multitude) might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]

lateribus suos pugnantes. Hoc facto,  
the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,

duabus legionibus, quas conscripsērat proximè,  
two legions, which he had levied last,

relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid opus  
having been left in camp, that, if any need

esset possent duci subsidio,<sup>16</sup> constituit  
should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed

relīquas sex legiones in acie pro castris (pl.).  
the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.

Item hostes instruxerant suas copias eductas  
Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth

ex castris (pl.).  
from the camp.

9. Pālus non magna erat inter nostrum atque  
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercitum hostium; hostes expectabant, si  
the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri erant  
our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initium transeundi  
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fiëret ab illis,<sup>17</sup> aggrederentur impeditos.  
 should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intërim contendebatur<sup>18</sup> equestri prælio  
 Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dūas acies. Ubi neutri faciunt  
 between the two lines. When neither make

initium transeundi, prælio nostrorum equitum  
 a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit suos in  
 (being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protinus contenderunt  
 the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex ão loco ad flumen Axõnam, quod  
 from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi  
 has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducere  
 fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, ão consilio, ut,  
 part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,  
 if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurius legatus præerat, que  
 over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

interscindere pontem: si minus, popula-  
 might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui erat magno  
 ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usui nobis ad gerendum bellum<sup>19</sup> que  
 use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibere<sup>20</sup> nostros commeatū.  
 were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certior à Titurio,  
 Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numidas  
 leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lëvis<sup>21</sup> armaturæ, funditores que sagittarios, atque  
 of light armor. the slingers and archers, and

contendit ad eos. Pugnatum-est acriter<sup>22</sup> in  
 strains [hastens] to them. It was fought sharply in  
 ěo lōco: nostri aggressi hostes  
 this place: our (men) having attacked the enemy  
 impeditos in flumīne, occiderunt magnum numĕrum  
 entangled in the river. slew a great number  
 eorum: repulerunt multitudīne telorum  
 of them; they [our men] repulsed with a multitude of weapons  
 reliquos conantes audacissimĕ transire  
 the remaining (men) endeavoring most boldly to cross  
 per corpōra eorum: interfecerunt primos, qui  
 among the bodies of those (slain); they killed the first, who  
 transiĕrant, circumventos equitatu. Hostes (pl.),  
 had passed, surrounded by cavalry. The enemy  
 ůbi intellexerunt spem<sup>23</sup> fefellisse se  
 when they understood hope to have [had] deceived themselves [them]  
 et de expugnando oppĭdo, et de transeundo  
 both of storming the town, and of crossing  
 flumīne, nĕque viderunt nostros progrĕdi  
 the river, nor saw our (men) advance  
 in iniquiorem lōcum causā  
 into a more unequal (disadvantageous) place for the sake  
 pugnandi, atque frumentariā res cœpit  
 of fighting, and corn thing [provisions] began  
 deficĕre eos; concilio convocato, constitu-  
 to fail them; a council having been convened, they  
 erunt esse optĭmum quemque reverti sŭam  
 resolved it was best (for) each to return (to) his  
 dōmum: et convenire undīque ad defend-  
 home: and to assemble from all sides for defend-  
 endos,<sup>24</sup> ěos in fines quorum Romani  
 ing, those into the borders of whom the Romans  
 primūm introduxissent exercĭtum; ut decertarent  
 first should lead on the army; that they might contend  
 potĭus in sŭis, quā alienis finĭbus, et  
 rather in their own, than in foreign borders, and  
 uterentur domesticis copĭis (abl.) frumentarię rei.  
 might use domestic supplies of corn thing

Quōque hæc ratio, cum reliquis  
 [provisions]. Also this reason, with remaining [other]  
 causis, deduxit eos ad eam sententiam,  
 causes, led them to this opinion [resolution],  
 quōd cognoverant Divitiacum atque Æduos  
 because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædui  
 appropinquare<sup>25</sup> finibus Bellovacorum. Poterat  
 (to) approach (to) the borders of the Bellovaci. It was possible  
 non persuaderi his, ut morarentur  
 not to (be) persuaded [persuade] (to) these, that they should delay  
 diutius, neque ferrent auxilium suis.<sup>26</sup>  
 longer, nor should bring aid to their (countrymen).

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ,  
 This thing being resolved, in the second watch,  
 egressi castris cum magno strepitu  
 having gone out from camp with great noise  
 ac tumultu, nullo certo ordine neque imperio,  
 and tumult, with no certain order nor command,  
 quum quisque peteret (imp. subj.) primum  
 since each was seeking the first  
 locum itineris sibi, et properaret (imp. subj.)  
 place of the road for himself, and was hastening  
 pervenire domum, fecerunt, ut profectio  
 to reach (to) home, they did [acted] so, that (their) departure  
 videretur (imp. subj.) consimilis fugæ. Hæc  
 was seeming very like (to) a flight. This  
 re statim cognita per speculatores,  
 thing immediately being known through scouts,  
 Cæsar veritus insidias, quōd per-  
 Cæsar having feared snares, because he had  
 spexerat<sup>27</sup> nondum de quâ causâ disced-  
 seen clearly not yet on [for] what cause they were  
 erent (imp. subj.) continuit exercitum, que  
 departing held the army, and  
 equitatum castris. Primâ luce,<sup>28</sup> re  
 cavalry in camp. At the first light the thing [fact]  
 confirmatâ ab exploratoribus, præmisit  
 being confirmed by scouts, he sent before

omnem equitatum, qui moraretur  
 all the cavalry, which should delay [detain]  
 novissimum agmen. His præfecit Quintum  
 the last troop [rear]. Over them (he) appointed Quintus  
 Pedium, et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam  
 Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta  
 legatos ei: jussit Titum Labienum  
 lieutenants to him [his lieutenants]: he ordered Titus Labienus  
 legatum subsequi cum tribus legionibus.  
 the lieutenant to follow close with three legions.  
 Hi adorti novissimos et prosecuti  
 These, having attacked the last [rear] and having pursued  
 multa millia passum, conciderunt magnam  
 (them) many thousand (of) paces, cut up a great  
 multitudinem eorum fugentium. Quum hi ab  
 multitude of them fleeing When those from [on]  
 extremo agmine, ad quos ventum-erat,<sup>29</sup>  
 the last troop [rear], to whom it had been [they had] come,  
 consistèrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)  
 were standing together and were sustaining  
 fortiter impetum nostrorum militum; priores,  
 bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former [the  
 quod viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à  
 van], because they seemed to be distant from  
 periculo, neque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ  
 danger, nor were held together by any  
 necessitate neque imperio, clamore exaudito,  
 necessity nor command, the din being heard,  
 ordinibus perturbatis, omnes ponerent  
 the ranks being disturbed [confused], all put  
 præsidium sibi in fugâ. Ita sine ullo  
 protection for themselves in flight. Thus without any  
 periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudinem  
 danger our (men) killed so great a multitude  
 eorum, quantum spatium<sup>30</sup> diei fuit; que  
 of them, as the space of the day was [permitted]; and  
 sub occasum solis destiterunt  
 under [just before] the going down of the sun they ceased

sequi, que receperunt se in castra, ūti  
to follow, and betook themselves into camp, as

imperatum-ērat.  
it had been commanded.

12. Postridie ejus diei, prius-quàm hostes (pl.)  
The day after this day, before (that) the enemy

reciperent se ex terrore ac fugā,  
might recover themselves from terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercitum in fines Suessi-  
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Suessi-

onum, qui erat proximi Remis; et  
ones, who were nearest to the Remi; and

magno itinere confecto, contendit ad  
a great march having been completed, he hastened to

oppidum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare  
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinere, quòd audiebat  
this from the way [on his march], because he was hearing

esse vacuum ab defensoribus, potuit<sup>31</sup>  
(it) to be [was] clear from [of] defenders, he was able

non expugnare propter latitudinem fossæ,  
not to storm (it) on account of the breadth of the ditch,

que altitudinem muri, paucis defendentibus.<sup>32</sup>  
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).

Castris (pl.) munitis cœpit agere vinças,  
The camp having been fortified he began to drive [push] the sheds,

que comparare quæ erant usui  
and to prepare (the things) which were for use

ad oppugnandum.<sup>33</sup> Intèrim omnis multitudo  
for storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum convēnit ex fugā in  
of the Suessiones comes together [gathers] from flight into

oppidum proximâ nocte. Vinçis actis  
the town on the nearest [next] night. The sheds having been pushed

celeriter ad oppidum, aggere jacto, que  
quickly to the town, a mound having been thrown up, and

turribus constitutis, Galli permoti  
towers (having been) erected, the Gauls much moved [alarmed]

magnitudīne opĕrum, quæ nēque vidĕrant  
by the vastness of the works, which neither they had seen

antē nēque audiĕrant, et celeritate  
before nor had heard (of), and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsārem  
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditione; et, Remis petentibus,  
about a surrender; and, the Remi seeking [petitioning],

ut conservarentur,<sup>34</sup> impĕtrant.  
that they may be preserved, they obtain (it).

13. Cæsar obsidibus acceptis primis  
Cæsar hostages having been received the first (men)

civitatis, atque duobus filiis regis Galbæ  
of the state, and two sons of king Galba

ipsius que omnibus armis traditis ex oppido,  
himself and all arms having been delivered from the town,

Cæsar accipit Suessiones in deditionem;<sup>35</sup> que  
Cæsar received the Suessiones into a surrender; and

duxit exercitum in Bellovācos: qui quum  
led the army among the Bellovaci: and when

contulissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnia  
they had brought together themselves and all

sua in oppidum Bratuspantium, atque  
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and

Cæsar, cum exercitu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab  
Cæsar, with the army, was distant from

eo oppido circiter quinque millia passuum,  
this town about five thousand (of) paces,

omnes maiores natu egressi ex  
all (the) greater by birth [the elders] having gone out from

oppido, cœperunt tendere manus ad  
the town, began to stretch (their) hands to

Cæsārem, significare voce, sese venire  
Cæsar, to signify by voice, (that they) themselves (to) come

in ejus fidem ac potestatem nēque  
into his faith [protection] and power nor

contendere contra Romanum populum armis:<sup>36</sup>  
(to) contend against the Roman people with arms:



item, quum accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppidum,  
also, when he had approached to the town,

que poneret (imp. subj.) castra (pl.) ibi, pueri que  
and was placing [pitching] (his) camp there, the boys and

mulieres ex muro, manibus passis, suo  
women from the wall, (with) hands stretched out, by their

more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.  
custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiācus facit verba pro his (nam  
Divitiacus makes words [intercedes] for these (for  
post discessum Belgarum, copiis Æduorum  
after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces of the Ædui

dimissis, revertērat ad eum):  
having been sent away, he had returned to him [Cæsar] );

Bellovācos omni tempore fuisse in fide  
the Bellovaci in[for]all time (to) have been in the faith [confidence]

atque amicitia Ædūæ civitatis; impulsos à  
and friendship of the Æduan state; impelled by

suis principibus, qui dicērent (imp. subj.) Ædūos  
their chiefs, who were saying the Ædui,

redactos in servitutem à Cæsare, perferre omnes  
reduced into servitude by Cæsar, (to) endure all

indignitates que contumelias, et defecisse ab  
indignities and outrages, (both) (to) have revolted from

Ædūis, et intulisse bellum Romano populo.<sup>37</sup>  
the Ædui, and have waged war upon the Roman people.

Qui fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principes hujus  
(Those) who had been chiefs [authors] of this

consilii, quod intelligērent (imp. subj.) quantam  
counsel, because they understood how great

calamitatem intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati (dat),  
a calamity they had brought on the state,

profugisse in Britanniam. Non solum Bellovācos  
to have [had] fled into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci

petere, sed etiam Ædūos, pro his,  
to seek [entreated] but also the Ædui, for these

ut utatur sua clementia ac mansuetudine (abl.)  
that he may use his clemency and mildness

in Æos: quod si fecerit, amplificaturum  
towards them: which if he shall have done, about to [it would]

auctoritatem Æduorum apud omnes  
enlarge the authority of the Ædui at [among] all

Belgas, auxilis atque opibus quorum  
the Belgæ, by the troops and resources of whom

consueverint (perf. subj.) sustentare,<sup>38</sup> si  
they have been accustomed to endure, if

qua bella incidērint.  
any wars may have happened [occurred].

15. Cæsar, causâ honoris Divi-  
Cæsar, for the sake of the honor of Divi-  
tiâci atque Æduorum, dixit sese  
tiacus and of the Ædui, said (that he) himself

recepturum Æos in fidem et  
about to [would] receive them into faith [allegiance] and

conservaturum; et quod civitas erat  
about to [would] preserve (them); and because the state was

magna et præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate  
great and it was excelling among the Belgæ in authority

ac multitudīne homīnum, proposcit sex-centos  
and in multitude of men, he required six hundred

obsīdes: his tradītis que omnibus armis  
hostages: these having been delivered and all (their) arms

collatis ex oppīdo, pervenit ab Æo  
(having been) brought together out of the town, he passed from this

lōco in fines Ambianorum, qui dederunt  
place into the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered

se que omnia sua sine mōrâ.  
themselves and all their (possessions) without delay.

Nerviī attingebant fines eorum: de  
The Nervii were touching upon the borders of them [their borders]: con-

naturâ que moribus quorum, quum Cæsar  
cerning the nature and manners of whom, when Cæsar

quæreret (imp. subj.), reperiebat sic; nullum  
was inquiring, he ascertained thus: no

aditum esse mercatoribus ad Æos: pāti  
access to be [was] for merchants to them: to (they) suffer

nihil vini, que reliquarum rerum pertinentium  
nothing [no] (of) wine, and (of) remaining things tending

ad luxuriam, inferri: quodd  
to luxury, to be brought in [imported]: because

existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum  
they thought (that) the minds of them [their minds]

relanguescere, que virtutem remitti  
(to) grow feeble, and (their) virtue [valor] to be [is] relaxed

his rebus: homines esse ferros, que magnæ  
by these things: the men to be [are] fierce, and of great

virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos  
valor: to (they) upbraid and (to) blame the remaining

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
Belgæ, who had surrendered themselves

Romano populo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
to the Roman people, and had cast aside

patriam virtutem; confirmare,  
[their] native virtue [national honor]; to (they) affirm (that they),

se neque missuros legatos, neque  
themselves neither about to [would] send ambassadors, nor

accepturos ullam conditionem pacis.<sup>89</sup>  
about to [would] receive any condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) iter triduo  
When he had made a journey of three days

per fines eorum, inveniebat  
through the borders of them [their borders], he was learning

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab  
from the captives, (that) the river Sabis to be [was] distant from

suis castris non amplius decem millia  
his camp not more (than) ten thousand

passum: omnes Nervios consedis-  
(of) paces: (that) all the Nervii to have [had] halted

trans id flumen, que ibi una cum  
beyond this river, and there together with

Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, suis finitimis,  
the Atrebatæ and Veromandui, their neighbors,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam  
to [were] awaiting the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasērānt      utrisque      his,<sup>40</sup>      ut      experirentur  
they had persuaded      both      these,      that      they should try

eandem      fortunam      belli;      etiā      copias  
the same      fortune      of war:      also      (that) the forces

Aduatucorum      expectari      ab      his,  
of the Aduatuci      to be waited for [were expected]      by      these,

atque      esse      in      itinēre:  
and (that they)      to be [were]      on      the way [march]:

conjecisse      mulieres,      que  
to have [that they had] thrown [put] together      the women,      and

qui      per      ætatem      viderentur (imp. subj.)  
(those) who      through      age      were seeming

inutiles      ad      pugnam,      in      eum      locum,      quod  
useless      for      a battle,      into      this      place,      in which

propter      paludes      aditus      non      esset      exercitui.<sup>41</sup>  
on account of      the marshes      access      might not      be      for an army.

17. His      rebus      cognitis,      Cæsar      præmittit  
These      things      having been known,      Cæsar      sends forward

exploratores,      que      centuriones,      qui      deligant  
scouts,      and      centurions,      who      may choose

locum      idoneum      castris:      que      quum      complures  
a place      suitable      for camp:      and      since      many

ex      Belgis      que      reliquis      Gallis  
from      the Belgæ      and      remaining      Gauls

deditit̃is,      secuti      Cæsārem,      facerent  
(who had) surrendered,      having followed      Cæsar,      made

(imp. subj.)      iter      unā:      quidam      ex  
(their) way      together:      certain ones      from [among]

his,      ut      postea      cognitum-est      ex      captivis,  
these,      as      afterwards      it was known      from      the captives,

consuetudine      itinēris      nostri      exercitūs  
the custom      of the journey [march]      of our      army

eorum      dierum      perspectā,      pervenerunt      nocte  
of those      days      being fully seen,      repaired      by night

ad Nervios      atque      demonstraverunt      iis  
to      the Nervii      and      showed      to them (that)

magnum      numerum      impedimentorum      intercedere  
a great      number      of baggage wagons      (to) come between

[intervened] inter singulas legiones; neque  
 between the several legions; nor  
 esse quidquam negotii,<sup>42</sup> cum prima  
 to be [was] (there) any thing of business [any difficulty], when the first  
 legio venisset in castris, que reliquæ  
 legion had come into camp, and the remaining  
 legiones abessent magnum spatium, adoriri  
 legions were distant a great space [way], to attack  
 hanc sub sarcinis: quâ pulsâ, que  
 this (one) under packs [baggage]: which being routed, and  
 impedimentis direptis, futurum,<sup>43</sup>  
 the baggage wagons having been plundered, about to [it would] be,  
 ut reliquæ non auderent consistere  
 that the remaining (legions) would not dare to stand  
 contrâ. Etiam adjuvabat consilium eorum,  
 against [in opposition]. Also it was aiding the design of these,  
 qui deferebant rem, quod Nervii  
 who were proffering the thing [plan], because the Nervii  
 antiquitûs, quum possent (imp. subj.) nihil  
 anciently, since they were able (to do) nothing  
 equitatu, (enim neque ad hoc tempus  
 with cavalry, (for neither to this time  
 student ei rei, sed, quidquid possunt,  
 are they zealous for this thing, but, (in) whatever they are able,  
 valent pedestribus copiis,) quod impedirent  
 they are strong in foot forces,) that they might hinder  
 facilius equitatum finitimorum, si venissent  
 more easily the cavalry of (their) neighbors, if they might come  
 ad eos causâ prædandi, tenëris arboribus  
 to them for the sake of robbing, pliant trees  
 incisis atque inflexis, que crebris ramis  
 being cut and bent in, and thick boughs  
 enatis in latitudinem, et rubis  
 having sprouted forth into breadth [sidewise], and brambles  
 que sentibus interjectis, effecerant,  
 and thorns having been cast between, they had brought to pass,  
 ut hæ sæpes præberent (imp. subj.) munimenta  
 that these hedges were affording fortifications

instar muri; quò posset (imp. subj.) non mōdò  
like a wall; where it was possible not only

non intrari, sed ne perspīci<sup>44</sup> quīdem.  
not to be entered, but not to be seen through even.

Quum iter nostri agmīnis impediretur  
When the march of our army should be hindered

(imp. subj.) his rebus Nervī  
by these things [conditions] the Nervii

existimaverunt consilium non omittendum  
thought the advice (must) not (to) be omitted

sibi (dat.).

[neglected] by themselves.

18. Hæc erat natura loci, quem  
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegērant castris. Collis æqualiter  
(our) men had chosen for camp. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad  
sloping from the highest (point) was receding to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavimus supra:  
the river Sabis [Sambre], which we have named [mentioned] above:

ab eo flumine pāri acclivitate collis  
from this river with equal ascent a hill

nascebatur adversus et contrarius huic, infimus  
was rising opposite and facing this, the lowest

circiter ducentos passus apertus,  
(portion) about two hundred paces (being) clear,

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.  
woody from [on] the higher part; so that it was possible

subj.) non perspīci facīle introrsus.<sup>45</sup> Intra  
not to be seen through [to see] easily within. Inside

has silvas hostes continebant se in  
these woods the enemy were holding themselves in

occulto. In aperto loco, secundum flumen,  
secret [hiding]. In the open place, near [along] the river,

paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Altitudo  
a few pickets of horsemen were seen. The depth

fluminis erat circiter trium pedum.  
of the river was about (of) three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur  
 Cæsar, the cavalry having been sent before, was following closely  
 omnibus copiis: sed ratio que ordo  
 with all (his) forces; but the manner and order  
 agminis habebat se aliter ac  
 of the marching line was keeping itself otherwise and [than]  
 Belgæ detulerant ad Nervios. Nam,  
 the Belgæ had carried [reported] to the Nervii. For,  
 quod hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar suâ  
 because the enemy was approaching, Cæsar by his  
 consuetudine ducebat sex expeditas legiones:<sup>46</sup>  
 custom was leading six light armed legions:  
 post eas collocabat impedimenta  
 after [behind] these he was putting the baggage  
 totius exercitus; inde duæ legiones,  
 of the whole army; then (the) two legions,  
 quæ conscriptæ-erant proximè, claudebant  
 which had been enrolled last, were closing up  
 totum agmen, que erant præsidio  
 the whole line of march, and were (for) a safeguard  
 impedimentis. Nostri equites cum fundi-  
 to the baggage. Our horsemen with the  
 toribus que sagittariis transgressi flumen,  
 slingers and archers having passed the river,  
 commiserunt prælium cum equitatu hostium.  
 joined battle with the cavalry of the enemy.  
 Quum illi identidem recipèrent (imp. subj.)  
 When they now and then were betaking  
 se in silvas ad suos, ac rursus  
 themselves into the woods to their (men), and again  
 facerent (imp. subj.) impetum in nostros ex  
 were making an attack upon our (men) out of  
 silvâ; neque nostri auderent (imp. subj.) insēqui  
 the wood; nor our (men) were daring to pursue  
 cedentes longius, quam ad quem finem  
 (those) yielding farther, than to which end [the limit]  
 porrecta ac aperta loca pertinebant:<sup>47</sup>  
 the extended and open places were reaching:

intērim sex legiones, quæ venērunt primæ,  
meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,

opēre dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.  
the work having been measured, began to fortify (the) camp

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītus visa-  
When the first baggage wagons of our army were

sunt ab eis, qui latebant abdīti in silvis,  
seen by these, who were lying concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenērat inter eos  
which time had been agreed upon between them

committendi prœlium: ut constituērant intra  
of [for] joining battle: as they had stationed within

silvas aciem que ordīnes, atque  
the woods the battle line and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavērant sese,<sup>48</sup> subitō  
they themselves had encouraged themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnibus copiis, que fecerunt  
they flew forth with all (their) forces [troops], and made

impētum in nostros equites. His pulsus  
an attack upon our horsemen. These having been routed

facilē ac proturbatis, decucurrerunt incredibili  
easily and disordered, they ran down, with incredible

celeritate ad flumen; ut pænē uno tempore  
speed to the river; so that almost at one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad silvas,  
the enemy were seen both at the woods,

et in flumine, et jam in nostris  
and in the river, and now in our

manibus. Autem contenderunt eādem  
hands [close at hand]. But they hastened with the same

celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos  
speed on the opposite hill to our camp, and (to) these

qui erant occupati in opēre.  
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnia erant agenda Cæsāri (dat.) uno  
All (things) were to be acted [managed] by Cæsar at one

tempore: vexillum proponendum, quod erat  
time: the standard to [must] be set up, which was



insigne, quum oporteret concurri (passive verb)  
the sign, when it was proper to make a rush

ad arma: signum dandum tūbā:  
to arms: the signal to [must] be given with the trumpet:

milītes revocandi ab opère: qui  
the soldiers to [must] be recalled from the work: (those) who

processerant paulò longiùs, causā aggēris  
had proceeded a little farther, for the sake of the rampart

petendi arcessendi,<sup>49</sup> acies  
[materials] to [must] be sought, to [must] be summoned, the line

instruenda: milītes cohortandi:  
(of battle) to [must] be arranged: the soldiers to [must] be exhorted:

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum  
the signal to [must] be given. A great part of which things

brevitas temporis, et successus et incursus  
the shortness of the time, and the approach and charge

hostium impediēbat (sing.). Dū res erant subsidio  
of the enemy were hindering. Two things were (for) an aid

his difficultatibus, scientia atque usus  
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

milītum, quòd, exercitati superioribus  
of the soldiers, because, having been exercised in former

præliis, poterant ipsi præscribere  
battles, they were able themselves to prescribe [assign]

sibi quid oporteret fieri, non minus  
to themselves what was proper to be done, not less

commòdè quàm doceri ab aliis:  
conveniently [fitly], than to be shown by others;

et quòd Cæsar vetuerat singulos legatos  
and because Cæsar had forbidden the several lieutenants

discedere ab opère que singulis legionibus,  
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,

nisi castris (pl.) munitis. Hi, propter  
unless the camp having been [was] fortified. These, on account of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium,  
the nearness and swiftness of the enemy,

spectabant nihil jam imperium Cæsaris;  
were awaiting not at all now the command of Cæsar;

sed per se, administrabant quæ  
but by themselves, were managing what (things)

videbantur.

seemed (best).

21. Necessariis rebus imperatis, Cæsar  
The necessary things having been commanded, Cæsar

decucurrit ad cohortandos<sup>50</sup> milites in partem,  
ran down for exhorting [to exhort] the soldiers into the part,

quam fors obtulit; et devenit ad decimam  
which chance presented; and came down to the tenth

legionem. Cohortatus-est milites non longiore  
legion. He exhorted the soldiers not with longer

oratione, quam ūti retinerent memoriā  
speech, than that they should retain the memory

sūæ pristinæ virtutis, neu perturbarentur animo  
of their former valor, nor should be confused in mind

que sustinerent fortiter impetum hostium;  
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemy;

et, quod hostes abérant non longius,  
and, because the enemy were distant not farther,

quam quò telum posset adjici, dedit  
than where a weapon might be able [could] (to) be cast, he gave

signum committendi<sup>51</sup> praelii atque profectus  
the signal of [for] joining battle and having set out

item in alteram partem, causā cohortandi,  
likewise into another part, for the sake of exhorting,

occurrit pugnantibus. Tanta fuit exig-  
he meets (them) fighting. So great [such] was the brief-

uitas temporis, que tam paratus animus hostium  
ness of the time, and so prepared the mind of the enemy

ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuërit (perf. subj.);  
for battling, that time failed

non modò ad accommodanda insignia,  
not only for fitting on the ensigns [badges],

sed etiam ad induendas galchas, que detrahenda  
but even for putting on the helmets, and (for) drawing off

tegmina scutis.<sup>52</sup> In quam partem  
the coverings from the shields. Into what [whatever] part

quisque devenit casu ab opère, que  
each came down by chance from the work, and

quæ signa conspexit prima, constitit  
what (whatever) standards he beheld first, he took stand

ad hæc, ne dimittëret tempus pugnandi  
at these, lest he might let pass [lose] the time of fighting

in quærendo suos.

in seeking his own (comrades).

22. Exercitu instructo, mägis ut natura  
The army having been drawn up, rather as the nature

lôci que dejectus collis, et necessitas  
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

temporis postulabat (sing.), quàm ut ratio  
of the time were requiring, than as [according to] the plan

atque ordo militaris rēi (sing.); quum aliæ  
and arrangement of military affairs; since some

legiones in aliâ parte resistërent (imp.  
legions in one part (others in another) were resisting

subj.) hostibus (dat.) diversis lôcis, que densissimis  
the enemy in different places, and very thick

sepibus interjectis, ut demonstravimus  
hedges having been interposed [intervening], as we have shown

antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.): nèque  
before, the view was impeded: neither

certa subsidia potërant collocari, nèque  
sure reserves were able [could] (to) be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset õpus in quâque  
(to) [could it] be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nèque omnia imperia administrari  
part; nor all the orders to [could] be managed [given]

ab uno.<sup>53</sup> Itaque, in tantâ iniquitate  
by one. Therefore, in so great an irregularity

rerum, varii eventus fortunæ quodque sequebantur.  
of things. various events of fortune also were following.

23. Milites nonæ et decimæ legionis,  
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions,

ut constitërant in sinistrâ parte acie,  
as they had stood in the left part of the battle line, (their)

pilis emissis, celeriter compulerunt ex  
 javelins having been thrown, quickly forced from  
 superiore loco in flumen Atrebat, (nam  
 the higher place into the river the Atrebat, (for  
 ěa pars obvenĕrat his) exanimatos cursu  
 this part had fallen to these) exhausted [spent] with running  
 ac lassitudĭne, que confectos vulnerĭbus;  
 and fatigue, and worn out with wounds;  
 et insecuti gladĭis conantes  
 and having pursued (them) with swords endeavoring  
 transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum  
 to cross over, they killed a great part of them  
 impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire  
 encumbered. They hesitated not to cross  
 flumen;<sup>54</sup> et progressi in iniquum locum,  
 the river; and having advanced into an unfavorable place,  
 conjecerunt in fūgam hostes rursus resistentes,  
 cast into flight the enemy again resisting,  
 proelio redintegrato. Item in aliā parte, dūā  
 the battle having been renewed Also in another part, two  
 diversæ legiones, undecĭma et octava, Verom-  
 different legions, the eleventh and eighth, the Verom-  
 andūis profligatis, cum quĭbus congressi-ĕrant,  
 andui having been routed, with whom they had joined,  
 proeliabantur ex superiore loco in ripis  
 were fighting from the higher place in [on] the banks  
 ipsis fluminis.<sup>55</sup> At totis castris (pl.)  
 themselves [the very banks] of the river. But the whole camp  
 fĕrĕ nudatis à fronte et à sinistrā  
 nearly being exposed from [on] the front and from [on] the left  
 parte, cū duodecĭma legĭo et septĭma  
 part [side], when the twelfth legion and the seventh  
 non magno intervallo ab ěā, constitisset  
 not at a great distance from it, had taken stand  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu, omnes Nevĭ  
 upon the right wing, all the Nervii  
 confertissĭmo agmĭne duce Boduognato,  
 in closest marching line the leader (being) Boduognatus,

qui tenebat summam imperi, contenderunt  
 who was holding the chief place of command, hastened

ad eum locum: pars quorum coepit circumvenire  
 to this place: part of whom began to surround

legiones aperto latere pars petere  
 the legions (on) the open flank, part to seek [attack]

summum locum castrorum.  
 the highest place [portion] of the camp.

24. Eodem tempore nostri equites que  
 At the same time our cavalry and

pedites levis armaturæ, qui fuerant unâ  
 infantry of light armor, who had been [were] together

cum his, quos dixeram pulsos(-esse) primo  
 with these, whom I had said to have [had] been routed in the first

impetu hostium, cum recipèrent (imp. subj.)  
 attack of the enemy, when they were betaking

se in castra, occurrebant hostibus (dat.)  
 themselves into camp, were meeting the enemy

adversis ac rursus petebant fugam in aliam  
 opposite and again were seeking flight into another

partem. Et calones, qui conspexerant à  
 part[direction]. And the camp followers, who had beheld from

Decumanâ portâ, ac summo jûgo collis  
 the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi  
 our (men) conquerors (to) cross the river, having gone out

causâ prædandi, quum respexissent (pl. perf.  
 for the sake of plundering, when they had looked back

subj.) et vidissent (pl. perf. subj.) hostes  
 and had seen the enemy (to be)

versari in nostris castris, præcipites mandabant  
 engaged in our camp, headlong were consigning

sese fugæ: simul clamor que  
 themselves to flight: at the same time the shout and

fremitus eorum qui veniebant cum impedimentis  
 uproar of those who were coming with the baggage wagons

oriebatur, que alii perterriti ferebantur in aliam  
 was arising, and some dismayed were borne into one

partem.<sup>56</sup> Omnibus quibus rebus Treviri  
part (others into another). By all which [these] things, the Trevirian

equites permoti, virtutis quorum est  
cavalry having been alarmed, of the valor of whom there is

singularis opinio inter Gallos, qui  
a singular [very high] opinion among the Gauls, who

missi causâ auxiliî à civitate,  
(having been) sent for the sake of aid by the state,

venérant ad Cæsarem, quum vidissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
had come to Cæsar, when they had seen (that)

nostra castra compleri multitudine hostium,  
our camp to be [was] filled with a multitude of the enemy

legiones præmi, et teneri  
(that) the legions to be [were] pressed, and to be [were] held

pænè circumventas, calones, equites,  
almost surrounded, (that) the camp followers, the cavalry,

Numidas funditores, diversos que dissipatos  
the Numidian slingers, separated and scattered

fugère in omnes partes, nostris rebus  
to flee [were fleeing] into all parts, our affairs

disperatis, contenderunt domum; renuntiaverunt  
being despaired of, hastened home; they announced

civitati, Romanos pulsos que  
to the state (that) the Romans (had been) routed and

superatos, hostes potitos eorum<sup>57</sup>  
overcome, (that) the enemy to have [had] got possession of their

castris que impedimentis (abl.).  
camp and baggage.

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione  
Cæsar having set out from the exhortation

decimæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ubi vidit  
of the tenth legion to the right wing, where he saw

suos urgeri, que signis  
his (men) to be [were] pressed hard, and the standards

collatis in unum locum, milites  
having been assembled into one place, the soldiers

duodecimæ legionis confertos esse  
of the twelfth legion to have been [were] crowded together

impedimento sibi ipsis ad pugnam, omnibus  
for [as] an impediment to themselves for the battle, all

centurionibus quartæ cohortis occisis, que  
the centurions of the fourth cohort having been killed, and

signifero interfecto, signo  
the standard bearer (having been) slain, the standard

amisso, fere omnibus centurionibus  
(having been) lost, almost all the centurions

reliquarum cohortium, aut vulneratis aut  
of the remaining cohorts, either having been wounded or

occisis, in his primopilo Publio Sextio  
killed, in [among] these the first centurion Publius Sextius

Baculo, fortissimo viro, confecto multis  
Baculus, a very brave man, (having been) worn out with many

que gravibus vulneribus, ut jam non  
and heavy [severe] wounds, (so) that now he was not

posset (imp. subj.) sustinere se; reliquos  
able to support himself; the rest

esse tardiores, et nonnullos desertos à  
to be [were] more slow, and some (being) deserted by

novissimis excedere proelio, ac  
the rear to depart [were withdrawing] from the battle, and

vitare tela; hostes neque  
to avoid [were avoiding] the weapons; (that) the enemy neither

intermittere, subeuntes à fronte ex  
to intermit [ceased], advancing on the front from

inferiore loco, et instare ab  
the lower place [ground], and to press [pressed] on from [at]

utroque latere, et rem esse in  
each flank, and (that) the affair to be [was] in

angusto, neque esse ullum subsid-  
a narrow [critical state], nor to be [was there] any reinforce-

um, quod posset submitti;<sup>58</sup> scuto  
ment, which might be able [could] (to) be sent up; (with) a shield

detracto (abl. abs.) uni militi (dat.)  
(having been) snatched away from one soldier

ab novissimis (quod ipse venerat èd  
from [in] the latest [rear] (because) (he) himself had come there

sine scuto) processit in primam aciem;  
without a shield) he advanced into the first battle line;

que centurionibus appellatis nominatim,  
and the centurions having been called by name,

cohortatus reliquos, jussit milites inferre  
having encouraged the rest, he ordered the soldiers to bear on

signa, et laxare manipulos, quò  
the standards, and to loosen [open] the companies, in order that

possent uti gladiis (abl.) facilius. Spe  
they might be able to use the swords more easily. Hope

illatâ militibus ejus, adventu ac  
having been brought in to the soldiers by his, arrival and

animo (sing.) redintegrato, quum quisque  
(their) spirits having been renewed, since every one

pro se cuperet (imp. subj.) navare operam  
for himself was desiring to ply [do well] (his) task

in conspectu Imperatoris, etiam in suis  
in the sight of the General, even in his

extremis rebus, impetus hostium tardatus-est  
most critical affairs, the violence of the enemy was retarded

paulum.<sup>59</sup>  
a little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) septimam  
When Cæsar had seen (that) the seventh

legionem, quæ constitêrat juxta, urgeri  
legion, which had stood near, to be [was] pressed

item ab hoste, monuit tribunos militum,  
likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of the soldiers,

ut legiones conjungerent sese paullatim, et  
that the legions should join themselves gradually, and

inferrent signa conversa in hostes.<sup>60</sup>  
should bear on the standards turned against the enemy.

Quo facto, quum alii ferrent (imp. subj.)  
Which having been done when some were bringing

subsidium aliis neque timerent (imp.  
aid to some (others to others) nor were fearing

subj.)<sup>61</sup> ne aversi circumvenirentur  
lest having been turned about they might be surrounded



ab hoste, cœperunt resistere audaciùs ac  
 by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and  
 pugnare fortius. Intërim milites duarum  
 to fight more bravely. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two  
 legionum, quæ fuërant in novissîmo agmîne  
 legions, which had been in the rear marching line  
 præsidio impedimentis, prælio nuntiato,  
 for protection to the baggage, the battle having been reported,  
 cursu incitato, conspiciëbantur in  
 (their) course having been increased, were beheld on  
 summo colle (abl.) ab hostibus: et  
 the highest [the summit] (of the) hill by the enemy: and  
 Titus Labienus potitus castris (abl.) hostium,  
 Titus Labienus having possessed the camp of the enemy,  
 et conspicatus ex superiore loco, quæ res  
 and having beheld from the higher place, what things  
 gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit  
 were transpiring in our camp, sent  
 decimam legionem subsidio nostris; qui  
 the tenth legion for [as] aid to our (men); who  
 quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj.) ex fugâ  
 when they had ascertained from the flight  
 equitum et calonum, in quo loco  
 of the cavalry and of the camp followers in what place [condition]  
 res esset (imp. subj.), que quanto  
 the affair [action] was, and in how great  
 periculo et castra et legiones et  
 danger both camp, and the legions and  
 Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nihil  
 the Commander were involved, made [left] nothing  
 reliqui (gen.) sibi ad celeritatem.<sup>62</sup>  
 left [wanting] to themselves for speed.  
 27. Tanta commutatio rerum facta-est  
 So great a change of things [conditions] was made  
 adventu horum, ut nostri etiam qui  
 by the arrival of these, that our (men) even those who  
 procubuissent (pl. perf. subj.) confecti vulneribus,  
 had lain down spent with wounds.

innixi          scutis (dat.), redintegrarent (imp. subj.)  
 having leaned on   the shields,          were renewing

proelium.          Tum          calones          conspicati  
 the battle.          Then          the camp followers          having beheld

hostes          perterritos,          etiam          inermes          occurrerent  
 the enemy          dismayed,          even          unarmed          were assailing

(imp. subj.)          armatis :          equites          verò,  
                                  the armed (enemy):          the cavalry          indeed,

ut          delerent          turpitudinem          fugæ          virtute,  
 that          they might blot out          the disgrace          of flight          by valor,

pugnabant in omnibus locis, quod præ-  
 were fighting in all places, in order that they might

ferrent se          legionariis militibus  
 show better themselves than [might surpass] the legionary soldiers.

(dat.). At hostes, etiam in extremâ  
                          But          the enemy,          even in          the extreme [last]

spe salutis, præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut,  
 hope of safety, displayed so great valor, that.

quum primi eorum cecidissent proximi  
 when the first of them had fallen the nearest [next]

insisterent          jacentibus, atque pugnarent  
 would stand upon (those) lying prostrate, and would fight

ex eorum corporibus: his dejectis,  
 from their bodies: these having been thrown down

et cadaveribus coacervatis<sup>63</sup> qui  
 and the dead bodies having been heaped up (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut  
 survived, would hurl weapons upon our (men) as

ex tumulo, que remitterent intercepta  
 from a mound, and would return the intercepted

pila: ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non  
 javelins: so that it ought to be judged (that) not

nequidquam homines tantæ virtutis<sup>64</sup> ausos-esse  
 in vain men of so great valor (to have) [had] dared

transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas  
 to cross a very broad river, to ascend very high

ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quæ  
 banks, to mount a most unfavorable place: which (things)

magnitudo	anīmi	redegērat	faciliā	ex
a greatness	of soul	had rendered	easy	from

difficilimis.

the most difficult (conditions).

28. Hoc proelio facto, et gente  
 This battle having been done [fought], and the nation  
 ac nomine Nerviorum redacto propè ad  
 and name of the Nervii having been reduced nearly to  
 internecionem: majores natu,  
 extermination: (those) greater by birth [the elders],

quod	dixeramus	collectos <sup>65</sup>	unā
whom	we had said	to have [had been] collected	together

cum	puëris	que	mulieribus	in	æstuariā
with	the boys	and	women	into [among]	the inlets

ac	paludes,	hac	pugnā	nuntiātā,	quum
and	marshes,	this	battle	having been reported,	when

arbitrarentur (imp. subj.)	nihil	impeditum
they were considering (that)	nothing	was difficult

victoribus,	nihil	tutum	victis;
for the conquerors,	nothing	safe	for the conquered,

consensu	omnium,	qui	supererant,	miserunt
by consent	of all, (those)	who	survived,	sent

legatos	ad	Cæsārem	que	dediderunt
ambassadors	to	Cæsar	and	surrendered

se	ei:	et	in	commemorandā,
themselves	to him:	and	in	to be recounted

	calamitate	civitatis	dixerunt:
[recounting],	the calamity	of the state	they said (that they):

sese	esse	redactos	ex	sexcentis
themselves	to be [were]	reduced	from	six-hundred

ad	tres	senatores;	ex	sexaginta	millia
to	three	senators;	from	sixty	thousand

homīnum,	ad	vix	quingentos,	qui	possent
(of) men,	to	scarcely	five-hundred,	who	were able

ferre	arma;	quos	Cæsar	conservavit	diligent-
to bear	arms;	whom	Cæsar	preserved	most care-

issimè,	que	jussit	uti	suis
fully,	and	commanded (them)	to use	their own

finibus atque oppidis, ut videretur usus<sup>66</sup>  
 territories and towns, that he might seem to have used  
 misericordiâ (abl.) in misēros ac supplices;  
 compassion toward the wretched and suppliant;  
 et imperavit finitimis (dat.) ut prohiberent  
 and ordered the neighbors that they should check  
 se que suos ab injuriâ et  
 themselves and their own (people) from injury and  
 maleficiō.  
 trouble (to them).

29. Aduatuci, de quibus scripsimus suprâ,  
 The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above,  
 quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnibus copiis  
 when they came with all (their) forces  
 auxilio Nervis, hâc pugnâ nuntiâtâ,  
 for aid to the Nervii, this battle having been reported,  
 reverterunt dōmum ex itinere; cunctis  
 returned home from the march; all  
 oppidis que castellis desertis, contulerunt  
 the towns and fortresses having been deserted, they brought together  
 omnia sua in unum oppidum egregiè  
 all their (effects) into one town excellently  
 munitum naturâ: quum quod habere  
 fortified by nature: since which [this] had  
 (imp. subj.) altissimas rupes que despectus  
 very high rocks and outlooks  
 ex omnibus partibus in circuitu,<sup>67</sup>  
 from [on] all parts [sides] in compass [round about],  
 aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex  
 an approach gently sloping was left, from [on]  
 unâ parte, non amplius ducentis pēdum  
 one side, not more (than) two hundred (of) feet  
 in latitudinem: quem locum muniērant  
 in breadth: which place they had fortified  
 altissimo duplici muro: tum collocārant  
 with a very high double wall: besides they had placed  
 saxa magni pondēris, et præacutas trābes  
 stones of great weight, and sharpened beams

in muro. Ipsi erant prognati ex Cimbris  
on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutonis: qui, quum facerent (imp. subj.)  
and Teutones: who, when they were making

iter in nostram Provinciā atque Italiā,  
(their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis (pl.), quæ potērant non  
this baggage, which they were able not

agere ac portare secum, depositis  
to bring and to carry with them, having been deposited

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unā  
on this side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millia hominum ex suis custodiam  
six thousand (of) men from [of] their own as a guard

ac præsidium. Hi, post obitum  
and protection. These [the latter], after the destruction

eorum, exagitati multos annos à  
of those, having been harassed many years by

finitimis, quum aliās inferrent (imp. subj.)  
(their) neighbors, when sometimes they were waging

bellum, aliās defendērent (imp. subj.) illatum,  
war, at other times were repelling (it) (when) waged,

pace<sup>68</sup> factā consensu omnium, delegerunt  
a peace having been made by consent of all, chose

hunc locum domicilium.  
this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercitus,  
And at the first approach of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex oppido,  
they were making frequent sallies from the town,

que contendebant parvulis proeliis cum  
and were contending in trifling battles with

nostris. Postea circummuniti vallo  
our (men). Afterwards having been fortified around with a rampart

duodecim pedum, quindecim millium in  
of twelve feet, fifteen thousand (feet) in

circuito, que crebris castellis, continebant  
compass, and with frequent fortresses, they were holding

sese oppido. Ubi, vinēis actis,  
 themselves in the town. When, the sheds having been driven on,  
 aggere exstructo, viderunt turrim constitūi  
 a mound having been constructed, they saw a tower (to be) erected  
 procul, primūm irridere ex  
 at a distance, (they began) first to mock from  
 muro atque increpitare vocibus: quō  
 the wall and to call out with voices [cries]: wherefore  
 tanta machinatio institueretur ab tanto  
 so great a machine was constructed from [at] so great  
 spatium! quibusnam manibus, aut quibus  
 a space [distance]! with what hands, or with what  
 viribus, confiderent sese collocare  
 forces, did they trust (that they) themselves to [would] place  
 turrim tanti oneris in muros, præsertim  
 a tower of so great burden against the walls, especially  
 homines tantulæ staturæ, (nom nostra brevitas  
 men of so little statue, (for our shortness  
 est contemptui plerisque Gallis hominibus,  
 is (for) a contempt to most Gallic men,  
 præ magnitudinē suorum  
 before [in comparison with] the hugeness of their own  
 corporum).  
 bodies).

31. Verò ubi viderunt moveri, et  
 But when they saw (it) (to be) moved, and  
 appropinquare mœnibus,<sup>69</sup> commoti novâ  
 (to) approach (to) the walls, being alarmed by the new  
 et inusitatâ specîe, miserunt legatos ad  
 and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to  
 Cæsarem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc  
 Cæsar about peace: who spoke to [after] this  
 modum: Se existimare Romanos  
 manner: (They) themselves (to) think the Romans  
 gerere bellum non sine ope deorum,  
 (to) carry on war not without the assistance of the gods,  
 qui possent promoverē machinationes tantæ  
 who are able to move forward machines of so great

altitudinis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex  
 height with so great speed, and to fight from [at]  
 propinquitate: dixerunt permittère  
 nearness [close quarters]: they said (they) (to) give up  
 se que omniâ sũa eorum  
 themselves and all their (effects) to their  
 potestati petère ac deprecari unum,<sup>70</sup> si  
 power to (they) seek and (to) beg one (thing), if  
 pro sũa clementiâ ac mansuetudine, quam  
 for [according to] his clemency and mildness, which  
 ipsi audissent (pl. perf. subj.) ab aliis, statuisset  
 they had heard from others, he should decree that  
 fortè Aduatucos conservandos-esse,  
 perchance the Aduatuci should be preserved,  
 ne despoliaret se armis (abl.): omnes  
 that he would not deprive themselves of arms: all  
 finitimos fèrè esse inimicos sibi, ac  
 the neighbors nearly to be [are] hostile to themselves, and  
 invidere sũa virtuti (dat.), à quibus possent  
 (to) envy their valor, from whom they could  
 non defendere se, armis traditis;  
 not (to) defend themselves, (their) arms having been surrendered;  
 præstare sibi pãti quamvis  
 to be [it is] better for themselves to endure any  
 fortunam à Romano populo, si deducerentur  
 fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led  
 in eum casum, quàm interfici per cruciatum  
 into this calamity, than to be slain with torture  
 ab his inter quos consuissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 by those among whom they had been accustomed  
 dominari.  
 to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc: Se  
 Cæsar answered to these (words): He himself

conservaturum civitatem magis sũa  
 about to [would] preserve the state rather by his  
 consuetudine quàm eorum merito, si  
 custom than by their merit [deserts], if

dedidissent se, prius-quàm arīs  
 they should surrender themselves, before (that) the battering ram  
 attigisset murum: sed esse nullam  
 should touch the wall: but to be [there was] no  
 conditionem deditiōis, nisi armis tradi-  
 condition of surrender, unless the arms having been  
 tis: se facturum<sup>71</sup> id. quod  
 [were] delivered up: (he) himself about to [would] do that, which  
 fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Nervios; que  
 he had done to the Nervii; and  
 imperaturum finitimis (dat.), ne-inferrent  
 about to [would] order the neighbors, that they should not inflict  
 quam injuriām dedititiis (dat.) Romani  
 any injury upon the surrendered (subjects) of the Roman  
 populi. Re nuntiata ad suos, illi  
 people. The matter having been reported to their own (people), they  
 dixerunt se facere, quæ imperarentur.  
 said (that they) themselves to [would] do, what was ordered.  
 Magnâ multitudīne armorum jactâ de  
 A great multitude of arms having been thrown from  
 muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum,  
 the wall into the ditch, which was before the town,  
 sic ut acervi armorum adæquarent (imp. subj.)  
 so that the heaps of arms were equalling  
 propè summam altitudīnem muri que  
 nearly the highest [greatest] height of the wall and  
 aggēris: et tamen circiter tertīā parte  
 of the mound: and yet about a third part  
 celatâ, (ut perspectum-est postea,)  
 having been concealed, (as was ascertained afterwards,)  
 atque retentâ in oppido, portis  
 and having been retained in the town, the gates  
 patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.)  
 having been thrown open, they used [obtained] peace  
 eo die.  
 on that day.

33. Sub vespērum Cæsar jussit portas  
 Towards evening Cæsar ordered the gates



claudi, que milites exire ex oppido,  
 to be shut, and the soldiers to go out from the town,  
 ne oppidani accipèrent quam injuriam à  
 lest the townsmen might receive any injury from  
 militibus noctu. Illi, consilio inīto  
 the soldiers by night. They, a plan having been formed  
 antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd, deditione  
 before, as it was understood, because, the surrender  
 factâ, credidērant nostros non  
 having been made, they had believed our (men) not  
 inducturos præsidiâ, aut denique  
 about to [would not] introduce garrisons, or, finally,  
 servaturos indiligentiùs: partim cum his  
 [would] watch somewhat carelessly: partly with these  
 armis, quæ retinuērant et celavērant,  
 arms, which they had retained and had concealed,  
 partim scutis factis ex cortice, aut intextis  
 partly with shields made from barks, or woven  
 viminibus, quæ induxērant pellibus subitò  
 twigs, which they had overlaid with hides suddenly  
 (ut exiguïtas temporis postulabat), fecerunt  
 (as the briefness of the time was demanding), (they) made  
 eruptionem repentè ex oppido omnibus  
 a sally unexpectedly from the town with all  
 copiis, tertîâ vigiliâ, quâ ascensus ad  
 the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to  
 nostros munitiones videbatur minimè arduus.  
 our fortifications was seeming least difficult.  
 Significatione factâ celeriter ignibus, ut Cæsar  
 A signal having been made quickly by fires, as Cæsar  
 imperavêrat antè, concursum-est èd ex  
 had ordered before, it was [they] run together there from  
 proximis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab  
 the nearest fortresses; and it was fought by  
 hostibus<sup>72</sup> ita acriter, ut debuit pugnari  
 the enemy so vigorously, as it ought to be fought  
 à fortibus viris in extremâ spe salutis,  
 by brave men in the last hope of safety



pacatâ tantâ opinio hujus belli  
 having been subdued, so great an opinion of this war  
 perlata-est ad barbâros, ut legati  
 was carried to the barbarians, that ambassadors  
 mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsârem ab nationibus,  
 were sent to Cæsar by the nations,  
 quæ incolèrent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ  
 which were dwelling across the Rhine, who  
 pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas  
 were promising (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, facturas imperata: quas  
 hostages, about to [and would] do (the things) commanded: which  
 legationes Cæsar jussit reverti ad se,  
 embassies Cæsar commanded to return to himself,  
 proximâ æstate inîtâ, quod  
 (when) the next summer having begun [began], because  
 properabat in Italiâ, que Illyricum. Ipse  
 he was hastening into Italy, and Illyricum. He himself  
 profectus-est in Italiâ, legionibus deductis  
 set out into Italy, the legions having been conducted  
 in hiberna in Carnutes, Andes,  
 into winter quarters into [among] the Carnutes, Andes,  
 Turones, quæ civitates erant propinquæ his  
 Turones, which states were neighboring to these  
 locis, ubi gesserat bellum. Ex literis  
 places, where he had carried on war. From the letters  
 Cæsaris, supplicatio quindécim dies  
 of Cæsar, a general thanksgiving (for) fifteen days  
 decreta-est ob eas res: quod  
 was decreed on account of these things: which  
 acciderat nulli ante id tempus.  
 had happened to no one before this time.

## THIRD BOOK

This book describes the principal events of five wars which were carried on against the various nations of Gaul in the six hundred and ninety-eighth year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 56: the first, against the Nantuates, the Veragri and the Seduni, is successfully conducted by the lieutenant, Galba; the second, against the Veneti, though fought at a disadvantage by the Roman forces because of the position of the Venetic towns, finally ends through the strategy of Cæsar, himself, in a naval engagement; the third results in a victory by Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant, over the Venelli, the Auber-ci, the Eburovices, and the Lexovii; the fourth is conducted by Crassus against the Sotiates and other Aquitanian tribes, the greatest part of Aquitania being subdued; and the fifth, Cæsar's campaign against the Morini and the Menapii closes with the army entering into winter quarters after brilliantly repelling the offensive attack of the enemy.

1. Quum	Cæsar	proficisceretur	(imp. subj.)	in	
When	Cæsar	was setting out		into	
Italiam,	misit	Sergium	Galbam	cum	duodecimâ
Italy,	he sent	Sergius	Galba	with	the twelfth
legione	et	parte	equitatûs	in	Nantuates,
legion,	and	part	of the cavalry	into	the Nantuates,
Veragros,	que	Sedunos;	qui	pertinent	à
Veragri,	and	Seduni;	who	reach [extend]	from
finibus	Allobrögum,	et	lăcu	Lemanno	
the borders	of the Allobroges,	and	the lake	Lemannus	
et	flumîne	Rhodăno,	ad	summas	
and	the river	Rhone,	to	the highest [summit of the]	
Alpes.	Causa	mittendi	fuit,	quod	
Alps.	The cause	of sending (him)	was,	because	
volebat	iter	patefieri	per	Alpes,	
he was desiring (that)	the passage	(to) be opened	through	the Alps,	
quo	mercatores	consueverant	ire	cum	
by which	merchants	had been accustomed	to go	with	

magno pericūlo que magnis portorūis. Permisit  
 great danger, and great tolls. He permitted  
 huic (dat.), si arbitraretur esse opus,  
 him if he should think (it) to be [was] necessary,  
 ūti collocaret legionem in iis locis,  
 that he might place a legion in these places,  
 causā hiemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis  
 for the sake of wintering. Galba, some successful  
 praeliis factis, que compluribus eorum  
 battles having been made [completed], and several of their  
 castellis expugnatis, legatis missis  
 strongholds having been stormed, ambassadors having been sent  
 undique ad eum, que obsidibus datis,  
 from every side to him, and hostages having been given,  
 et pace factā, constituit collocare duas  
 and peace having been made, resolved to place two  
 cohortes in Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum  
 cohorts in [among] the Nantuates; himself to winter with  
 reliquis cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico  
 the remaining cohorts of this legion, in a village  
 Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui<sup>1</sup>  
 of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which  
 vicus positus in valle, planitie non magnā  
 village being placed [situated] in a valley, a plain not large  
 adjectā, continetur undique altissimis  
 being adjacent, is bounded on every side by very high  
 montibus. Quum hic divideretur (imp. subj.) in  
 mountains. Since this was divided into  
 duas partes flumine, concessit alteram partem  
 two parts by the river, he granted the one part  
 ejus vici Gallis; attribuit alteram  
 of this village to the Gauls; he assigned the other  
 relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad  
 left vacant by them to the cohorts for win-  
 hiemandum: munivit eum locum vallo  
 tering [to winter]: he fortified this place with a rampart  
 que fossā.  
 and (with) a trench.

2. Quum complures dñes hibernorum  
 When several days of the winter quarters  
 transissent (pl. perf. subj.) que jussisset (pl. perf.  
 had passed and he had ordered  
 subj.) frumentum comportari ěd, factus-est  
 corn to be brought there, he was made  
 certior subitò per exploratores,  
 more sure [was informed] suddenly by scouts, (that)  
 omnes discessisse noctu ex ěā  
 all to have [had] departed by night from this  
 parte vici, quam concesserat Gallis; que  
 part of the village, which he had granted to the Gauls; and  
 montes, qui impenderent (imp. subj.),  
 (that) the mountains, which were overhanging  
 teneri à maxīmā multitudīne Sedunorum  
 to be [were] held by a very great multitude of the Seduni  
 et Veragrorum. Id accidērat de aliquot  
 and of (the) Veragri. This had happened from several  
 causis, ut Galli capērat (imp. subj.) subitò  
 causes, that the Gauls were taking suddenly  
 consilium renovandi belli que opprimendæ  
 the purpose of renewing the war and of overwhelming  
 legionis. Primū, quòd despiciebant legionem,  
 the legion. First, because they were despising the legion,  
 propter paucitatem, nēque ěam  
 on account of the fewness (of soldiers), nor (was) this  
 plenissimam, duabus cohortibus detractis  
 very full, two cohorts having been drawn out (of it)  
 et compluribus singillatim absentibus, qui  
 and very many individually (being) absent, who  
 missi-erant causā petendi commeatūs; tum  
 had been sent for the purpose of seeking provisions; then  
 etiā, quòd propter iniquitatem loci  
 also, because, on account of the unfavorableness of the place,  
 existimabant ne quīdem primum impētum  
 they were thinking (that) not even the first attack [shock]  
 posse sustineri, quum  
 to be able [could] (to) be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi decurrērent ex montibus in  
 (they) themselves should run down from the mountains into  
 vallem, et conicērent tela. Accedebat,  
 the valley, and should hurl (their) weapons. It was added,  
 quòd dolebant sūos libēros abs-  
 because [that] they were mourning for their children (having  
 tractos ab se nomīne obsīdum; et  
 been) taken from themselves in the name of hostages; and  
 habebant<sup>2</sup> persuasum sibi  
 they were having (it) persuaded to themselves [were persuaded]  
 Romanos conari occupare culmīna  
 (that) the Romans to endeavor [endeavored] to occupy the tops  
 Alpium non solūm causā itinērum, sed  
 of the Alps not only for the sake of the passes, but  
 etiā perpetuā possessionis, et adjungere ēa  
 also of perpetual possession, and to unite these  
 loca finitimæ provinciæ.  
 places to the neighboring province.

3. His nuntis acceptis, quum<sup>3</sup> nēque  
 These messages having been received, since neither  
 ōpus hibernorum, que munitiones  
 the work of the winter quarters, and the fortifications  
 essent (imp. subj.) plenē perfectæ, nēque  
 were fully finished, nor  
 esset (imp. subj.) provisum satis de frumento,  
 was (there) provided enough from [of] corn,  
 que reliquo commeatu, quòd, deditione  
 and the other provisions, because, a surrender  
 factâ, que obsidibus acceptis, Galba  
 having been made, and hostages having been received, Galba  
 existimaverat nihil timendum de bello:  
 had thought nothing to [must] be feared about war:  
 concilio convocato celeriter, cœpit exquirere  
 a council having been called together quickly, he began to seek  
 sententiās. In quo concilio, quum  
 the opinions. In which council, since  
 tantum repentini periculi accidisset (pl. perf.)  
 so much (of) sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fêrè omnia  
contrary to opinion [expectation], and now nearly all

superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa  
the higher places were seen (to be) filled

multitudine armatorum, nêque  
with a multitude of armed (men), neither (could it) [any one]

veniri, subsidio<sup>4</sup> nêque commeatus posset  
(to be) come, to (their) aid nor were provisions able

supportari, itineribus interclusis: jam  
to be brought up, the ways having been shut up [closed]: now

salute propè desperatâ, nonnullæ sententiæ  
safety nearly having been despaired of some opinions

hujusmodi dicebantur; ut, impedimentis (pl.)  
of this kind were said [delivered]; that, the baggage

relictis, eruptione factâ, contendèrent  
having been left a sally having been made, they should hasten

ad salutem, iisdem itineribus, quibus  
to safety, by the same ways, by which

pervenissent (pl. perf. subj.) êd. Tâmen placuit  
they had arrived there. However it pleased

majori parti (dat.), hoc consilio reservato  
(to) the greater part, this counsel having been reserved

ad extremum, experiri eventum rei  
to the last, to try the issue of the thing [matter]

intërim, et defendere castra.  
meanwhile, and to defend the camp.

4. Brëvi spatio interjecto, vix ut  
A short space [period] having intervened, scarcely that  
tempus daretur collocandis<sup>5</sup> atque administrandis  
time might be given for arranging and for managing

his rebus, quas constituissent (pl. perf.  
these things, which they had resolved,

subj.), hostes decurrere<sup>6</sup> ex omnibus  
the enemy (to) run down from all

partibus, signo dâto, conjicere  
sides, a signal having been given, (and) (to) hurl

lapides que gæsa in vallum. Nostri<sup>7</sup>  
stones and heavy darts upon the rampart. Our (men)



primò repugnare fortiter intēgris  
at first (to) repulse (them) bravely (when) with whole [fresh]

viribus neque mittere ullum telum  
power [strength] nor (to) send [cast] any weapon

frustrà ex superiore loco: ut quæque pars  
in vain from the higher place: as each part

castrorum nudata defensoribus videbatur  
of the camps stripped from [of] defenders was seeming

premi, occurrere eò, et ferre auxilium:  
to be pressed. to (they) run there and (to) bring aid:

sed superari hoc, quòd  
but to be (they are) surpassed [overcome] in this (manner), because

hostes defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant  
the enemy wearied by the length of the fight were retiring

proelio, alii succedebant intēgris viribus:  
from battle, others were succeeding with whole [fresh] powers

nihil quarum rerum potērat  
[strength]: nothing of which [these] things was able [could]

fiēri à nostris propter paucitatem; ac  
(to) be done by our (men) on account of (their) fewness; and

non mōdò facultās dabatur defesso  
not only (no) opportunity was given to a wearied (man)

excedendi ex pugnâ, sed ne sauciò quidem  
of retiring from the fight, but not to a wounded even

relinquendi ejus loci (gen.), ubi constitērat, ac  
of leaving his place, where he had stood, and

recipiendi sui (gen.).  
of recovering himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur<sup>8</sup> jam continenter ampliùs  
When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires (pl.) sed etiā  
six hours, and not only strength but also

tela deficērent (imp. subj.) nostris (dat.), atque  
the weapons were failing our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acriùs, que  
the enemy were pressing on more vigorously, and

nostris<sup>9</sup> languidioribus, cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
our (men) having become more faint, they began

scindere vallum et complere fossas, que  
to tear down the rampart and to fill up the ditches, and

res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad  
the affair [action] was now led [brought] to

extremum casum; Publius Sextius Beculus,  
the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus,

centurio primipili quem<sup>10</sup> diximus  
a centurion of the first rank whom [who] we have said

confectum (-esse) compluribus vulneribus  
to have [had] been overcome with many wounds

Nervico praelio, et item Caius Volusenus,  
in the Nervian battle, and also Caius Volusenus,

tribunus militum, vir et magni consilii  
a tribune of the soldiers, a man both of great counsel [prudence]

et virtutis, accurrunt ad Galbam, atque docent  
and valor, run up to Galba, and show

esse<sup>11</sup> unam spem salutis, si eruptione  
(that) to be [there is] one hope of safety, if a sally

factâ, experirentur extremum auxilium.  
having been made, they should try the last aid [resort].

Itaque centurionibus convocatis, facit  
Therefore the centurions having been called together, he makes

milites certiores intermittent  
the soldiers more sure [informs them] (that) they should intermit [moder-

proelium paullisper, ac exciperent tantummodo  
ate] the battle a little while, and should deliver only

tela missa, que refecerunt se ex  
the weapons sent [thrown], and should refresh themselves from

labore; post, signo dato, erum-  
labor; afterwards, the signal having been given, they should

perirent e castris, atque ponerent omnem  
burst forth from the camp, and should put all

spem salutis in virtute.  
hope of safety in (their) valor.

6. Faciunt, quod jussi sunt; ac eruptione  
They do, what they were ordered; and a sally

factâ subito omnibus portis, relinquunt  
having been made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem      hostibus      nēque      cognoscendi      quid  
 opportunity      to the enemy      neither      of knowing      what  
 fiēret,      nēque      colligendi<sup>12</sup>      sūi.      Ita,  
 should be done,      nor      of collecting      themselves.      Thus,  
 fortunā      commutatā,      interficiunt      eos<sup>13</sup>  
 fortune      having been changed,      'they slay      these  
 circumvetos      undique,      qui      venērant      in      spem  
 surrounded      on every side,      who      had come      into      the hope  
 potiundorum      castrorum;      et      ex      ampliūs  
 of possessing      the camps;      and      from      more (than)  
 triginta      millibus      hominum,      (quem      numērum  
 thirty      thousand      (of) men,      (which      number  
 barbarorum      constabat      venisse      ad      castra)  
 of the barbarians      it was manifest      to have [had] come      to      the camp)  
 plus      tertiā      parte      interfectā,      coniciunt  
 more (than)      the third      part      having been killed,      they throw  
 in      fūgam      reliquos      perterritos;      ac      patiuntur  
 into      flight      the rest      affrighted;      and      suffer (them)  
 consistere      ne      quidem<sup>14</sup>      in      superioribus      locis.  
 to take stand      not      even      in      the higher      places.  
 Sic      omnibus      copiis      hostium      fuis,  
 Thus      all      the forces      of the enemy      having been routed,  
 que      armis      exutis,      recipiunt      se  
 and      (their) arms      having been stripped off,      they betake      themselves  
 in      castra (pl.)      que      suas      munitiones.      Quo      praelio  
 into      the camp      and      their      fortifications.      Which      battle  
 facto,      quod      Galba      nolebat  
 having been done [completed],      because      Galba      was unwilling  
 tentare      fortunam      sæpius,      atque      meminērat<sup>15</sup>  
 to try      fortune      too often,      and      (he had) remembered  
 sese      venisse      alio  
 (that)      he himself      to have [had] come      with another [a different]  
 consilio      in      hiberna,      videbat  
 design      into      winter quarters,      he was seeing (that he)  
 occurrisset      aliis      rebus (dat.);      permotus      maxime  
 to have [had] met with other      things;      being moved principally  
 inopiā      frumenti      que      commeatūs:      postero  
 by the want      of corn      and      of provisions:      on the following [next]

dīe,            omnībus            ædificiis            ejus            vici  
 day,            all            the buildings            of this            village  
 incensis,            contendit    reverti    in    provinciā:  
 having been burned,    he hastened    to return    into    the province;  
 ac    nullo            hoste            prohibente,    aut    demorante  
 and    no            enemy            preventing,    or    delaying  
 iter,            perduxit            legionem    incolūmem    in  
 the march,    he conducted    the legion    safe    into  
 Nantuates,            inde            in    Allobroges,            que  
 the Nantuates,            thence            into    the Allobroges,            and  
 hiemavit    ibi.  
 wintered    there.

7. His            rebus            gestis,            quum            Cæsar  
 These    things    having been performed,    when    Cæsar  
 existimaret (imp subj.)    Galliā            pacatā            de  
 was thinking    that    Gaul (was)    subdued    from  
 omnībus            causis;            Belgis            superatis,  
 all (these)    reasons;    the Belgæ    having been overcome,  
 Germanis    expulsi,            Sedunis            victis  
 the Germans    having been expelled,    the Seduni    having been conquered  
 in            Alpibus,            atque            ita            hieme<sup>16</sup>  
 in            the Alps,            and            so            the winter  
 inīta            profectus-esset (pl. perf. subj.)    in  
 having begun    he had set out    into  
 Illyricum,    quod            volebat            adire    eas    nationes  
 Illyricum,    because    he was wishing    to visit    these    nations  
 quodque    et    cognoscere            regiones;    subitum  
 also    and    to know [investigate]    the countries;    a sudden  
 bellum coortum-est in    Galliā.    Hæc fuit    causa  
 war    arose    in    Gaul.    This    was    the cause  
 ejus belli. Publius Crassus adolescens    hiemabat  
 of this    war.    Publius    Crassus    a young man    was wintering  
 cum    septimā    legione    in    Andibus    proximus  
 with    the seventh    legion    among    the Andes    nearest  
 Oceānum mære.<sup>17</sup>    Is dimisit complures præfectos  
 the Ocean    (sea).    He    dispatched    very many    prefects  
 que    tribunos    militum    in    finitimas    civitates,  
 and    tribunes    of soldiers    into    the neighboring    states,

causâ frumenti, quòd inopiâ frumenti erat  
for the sake of corn, because a want of corn was

in his locis: in quo numëro Titus  
in these places: in which number Titus

Terrasidius missus erat in Eusubios; Marcus  
Terrasidius had been [was] sent into the Eusubii; Marcus

Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus  
Trabius Gallus into the Curiosolitæ; Quintus

Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venetos.  
Velanius with Titus Silius into the Veneti.

8. Auctoritas hujus civitatis est longè  
The authority of this state is by far

amplissima omnis maritimæ oræ earum  
the most extensive of all the maritime coast of these

regionum; quòd Veneti habent et plurimas  
countries; because the Veneti have both very many

naves, quibus consueverunt navigare in  
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britanniâ; et antecedunt cæteros scientiâ  
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno  
and use [practice] of naval matters; and in the great

impetu vasti atque aperti maris, paucis  
violence of the vast and open sea, few

portibus interjectis, quos ipsi tinent,  
harbors intervening, which (they) themselves hold,

habent fere omnes vectigales, qui consue-  
they have nearly all (those) tributary, who have been

verunt uti eodem mari (abl.). Initium  
accustomed to use the same sea. A beginning

fit ab his, retinendi Silii atque Velanii,  
was made by these, of retaining Silius and of Velanius,

quòd per eos existimabant se  
because through them they were thinking (that they) themselves

recuperaturos suos obsides, quos dedissent  
about to [would] recover their hostages, whom they had given

(pl. perf. subj.) Crasso. Finitimi adducti  
to Crassus. (Their) neighbors induced

**excitari** Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,  
 was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,  
**ut** quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,  
 that any one should mount the wall before (himself),  
**nactus** tres suos manipulares atque  
 having taken three (of) his company and  
**sublevatus** ab iis adscendit murum;  
 having been raised up by them he mounted the wall;  
**ipse** rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,  
 he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,  
 singulos.  
 one at a time.

48. **Interim** ii, qui convenërant ad altëram  
 In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other  
**partem** oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ  
 part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose  
**munitionis**, primo clamöre exaudito, inde  
 of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward  
**etiã** incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum  
 also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town  
**teneri** ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,  
 was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,  
**contenderunt** eo magno concursu. Ut quisque  
 they hastened there in a great throng. As each  
**eorum** primus venërat consistebat sub muro,  
 of them first came he was halting under the wall,  
**que** augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.  
 and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.  
**Quum** magna multitudo quorum convenisset,  
 When a great multitude of these had assembled,  
**matres** familiâs quæ paulò antè  
 the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before  
**tendebant** manus de muro Romanis,  
 were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans,  
**cœperunt** obtestari suos et Gallico mōre  
 began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner  
**ostentare** passum capillum, que proferre  
 to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

remiges institui ex Provinciâ, nautas  
 rowers to be provided from the Province, sailors  
 que gubernatores comparari, quod ipse  
 and pilots to be procured, because he himself  
 aberat longius. His rebus administratis  
 was distant farther [too far]. These things having been managed,  
 ipse contendit celeriter ad exercitum, quâm-  
 he himself hastened quickly to the army, as soon  
 primum potuit per tempus anni.  
 as he was able through [for] the time of the year.  
 Veneti que item reliquæ civitates, adventu  
 The Veneti and also the other states, the arrival  
 Cæsaris cognito, simul quod  
 of Cæsar having been known, at the same time because  
 intelligebant quantum facinus admisissent  
 they were understanding how great a crime they had committed  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in se, legatos,<sup>19</sup> nomen  
 against themselves, the ambassadors, a name  
 quod semper fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) sanctum que  
 which always had been holy and  
 inviolatum apud omnes nationes, retentos  
 inviolate at [among] all nations, to have [had] been  
 ab se et coniectos in vincula;  
 detained by themselves and cast into chains;  
 institunt parare bellum pro  
 resolve to prepare a war for [in proportion to]  
 magnitudîne periculi, et maxime providere  
 the greatness of the danger, and especially to provide  
 ea quæ pertinerent (imp. subj.)  
 these (things) which were pertaining  
 ad usum navium; hoc, majore  
 to the use of ships; from this [on this account], with greater  
 spe, quod confidebant multum naturâ  
 hope, because they were relying much in [on] the nature  
 loci. Sciebant pedestria itinera  
 of the place. They were knowing (that) the foot ways  
 concisa-esse æstuaris; navigationem  
 to have [had] been cut up by æstuaries; navigation

impeditam<sup>20</sup> propter inscientiam locorum  
prevented on account of (our) ignorance of the places

que paucitatem portuum: confidebant nostros  
and the fewness of the harbors: they were trusting (that) our

exercitus neque posse morari diutius<sup>21</sup>  
armies neither to [would] be able to delay longer

apud se, propter inopiam frumenti.  
at [among] themselves, on account of the want of corn.

Ac jam, ut omnia acciderent contra  
And now, though all (things) might happen against [contrary to]

opinionem, tamen se posse  
(their) opinion, yet (they) themselves to [would] be able (to do)

plurimum navibus: Romanos habere neque ullam  
very much by ships: the Romans to have [had] neither any

facultatem navium, neque novisse vada,  
power[supply] of ships, nor to have known [knew] the shallows,

portus, insulas eorum locorum, ubi essent (imp.  
harbors, islands of these places, where they were

subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant  
about to carry on war: and they were perceiving

navigationem in concluso mari, atque in  
(that) navigation in an inclosed sea, and in

vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, esse longè  
a very immense and very open Ocean, to be [is] far

aliam. His consiliis initis,  
other [different], These counsels having been entered into,

mununt oppida, comportant frumenta (pl.)<sup>22</sup>  
they fortify the towns, they bring together corn

ex agris in oppida; cogunt naves  
from the fields into the towns; they collect (their) ships

quàm-plurimas possunt, in Venetiam, ubi  
as many as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Cæsarem primum gesturum  
it was evident Cæsar first to be about to [would] carry on

bellum. Adsciscunt socios sibi ad id  
the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves for this

bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambialites,  
war the Osismii. Lexovii. Nannetes, Ambialites,



Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapiōs; accersunt auxilia  
 Morini, Diablintes, Menapii; they send for auxiliaries  
 ex Britannīā, quæ est posita contra  
 from Britain, which is located over against  
 eas regiones.  
 these countries.

10. Hæ erant difficultates gerendi,<sup>23</sup> belli  
 These were the difficulties of carrying on, a war  
 quas ostendimus suprā: sed tamen multa  
 which we have shown above: but yet many (things)  
 incitabant Cæsarem ad id bellum: injuriæ (pl.)  
 were urging Cæsar to this war: the injuries [wrong]  
 retentorum Romanorum equitum; rebellio  
 of detaining Roman knights; an uprising  
 facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidibus  
 having been made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages  
 dātis: conjuratio tot civitatum:  
 having been given: the conspiracy of so many states:  
 in-primis, ne, hæc parte neglectā,  
 in particular, lest, this part [region] having been neglected  
 reliquæ nationes arbitrarentur idem  
 the remaining nations might think the same (thing)  
 licere sibi. Itaque quum  
 to [would] be allowed to themselves. Therefore since  
 intelligeret (imp. subj.) ferè omnes Gallos  
 he understood (that) nearly all the Gauls  
 studere novis rebus, et  
 to be [were] eager for new things [revolution], and  
 excitari mobiliter que celeriter ad  
 to be [were] aroused readily and quickly to  
 bellum; autem omnes homines naturā  
 war; moreover (that) all men by nature  
 studere libertati, et odisse  
 to be [are] eager for liberty, and (to) have hated  
 conditionem servitutis; prius-quam plures civitates  
 the condition of slavery; before (that) more states  
 conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum,  
 should conspire, he thought the army to [must] be divided.

ac distribuendum latius sibi(dat.).  
and to [must] be distributed more widely by himself.

11. Itaque mittit Titum Labienum legatum  
Therefore he sent Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant

cum equitatu in Treviros, qui sunt proximi  
with the cavalry among the Treviri, who are nearest

flumini Rheno. Mandat huic(dat.), adëat  
to the river Rhine. He charges him, (that) he go to

Remos que reliquos Belgas, atque continëat  
the Remi and the remaining Belgæ, and keep (them)

in officio; que prohibëat Germanos, qui  
in duty; and prevent the Germans, who

dicebantur arcessiti<sup>24</sup> auxilio à Belgis, si  
were said (to have) been summoned for aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen  
they may attempt by force to cross the river

navibus. Jübet Publüm Crassum cum  
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodëcim legionariis cohortibus, et magno numëro  
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatus proficisci in Aquitaniam, ne auxilia  
of cavalry to set out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationibus in Galliam, ac  
may be sent from these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum  
so great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurium Sabinum legatum cum tribus legionibus  
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiolitas, que Lexovios; qui  
among the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet ëam mănum distinendam.  
may take care (that) this band (of people) (to) be kept apart.

Præfecit Decium Brutum adolescentem classi,  
He appointed Decius Brutus a young man to the fleet,

que Gallicis navibus, quas jussërat  
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonibus que Santonis, et  
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni. and

reliquis      pacatis      regionibus;      et      jubet  
the remaining      subdued      countries;      and      he orders

proficisci      quam-primùm      posset,      in  
(him) to set out      as soon as      he may be able,      among

Venētos.      Ipse      contendit      èd      pedestribus  
the Veneti.      He himself      hastens      thither      with the foot

copiis.  
forces.

12. Situs      oppidorum      erant      fere  
The situations      of (their) towns      were      nearly

ejusmodi, ut      posita      in      extremis  
of this sort, that      having been placed [located]      on      extreme

lingulis      que      promontoriis, haberent (imp.  
little tongues (of land)      and      promontories, they were having

subj.) neque      aditum      pedibus,      quum      aestus  
neither      access      by feet [foot],      when      the tide

incitavisset      se      ex      alto,      quod      accidit  
may have aroused      itself      from      the deep,      which      occurs

semper      bis      spatio      duodecim      horarum:  
always      twice      in the space [period]      of twelve      hours:

neque      navibus,      quod      aestu      rursus      minuente  
nor      by ships,      because      the tide      again      diminishing

naves      afflictae      in      vadis.      Ita  
[ebbing]      the ships      may be dashed      on      the shoals.      Thus

utraque      re      oppugnatione      oppidorum  
by each      thing [condition]      a siege      of the towns

impediebatur.      Ac, si      quando      fortè      sup-  
was hampered.      And, if      at any time      by chance      having

erati      magnitudine      operis,      mari  
been overcome      by the greatness      of a work,      the sea

extruso      aggere      ac      molibus,      atque  
having been shut out      by a mound      and      by moles,      and

his      adaequatis      mœnibus      oppidi,  
these      having been made equal      to the walls      of the town,

coeperant<sup>25</sup>      desperare      suis      fortunis;      magno  
they had begun      to despair of      their      fortunes;      a great

numero      navium      appulso,      cujus      rei  
number      of ships      having been landed,      of which      thing [means]

habêbant summam facultatem, deport-  
 they were having the highest [greatest] power [supply], they were  
 abant omnia sua que recipiebant se  
 removing all their (effects) and were betaking themselves  
 in proxima oppida: ibi defendebant se  
 into the nearest towns: there they were defending themselves  
 rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci. Facie-  
 again by the same favorableness of place. They were  
 bant hæc ideo facilius magnam partem  
 doing these (things) for this reason more easily a great part  
 æstatis, quod nostræ naves detinebantur  
 of the summer, because our ships were detained  
 tempestatibus; que erat summa difficultas  
 by storms; and (there) was the highest [greatest] difficulty  
 navigandi vasto atque aperto mari, magnis  
 of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great  
 æstibus, raris ac propè nullis portibus.  
 tides, with few and nearly no harbors,

13. Namque ipsorum naves factæ-erant que  
 For indeed their ships had been made and  
 armatæ ad hunc modum: carinæ  
 armed [equipped] according to this manner: the keels (were)  
 aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navium;  
 considerably more flat than (those) of our ships:  
 quod<sup>26</sup> possent excipere  
 in order that they might be able [could] (to) receive [endure]  
 vada ac decessum æstus facilius:  
 the shoals and the departure [ebb] of the tide more easily:  
 proræ admodum erectæ, atque item puppes,  
 the prows (were) very upright, and also the sterns  
 accommodatæ ad magnitudinem fluctuum que  
 suited to the greatness of the waves and  
 tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex  
 storms. The whole ships (were) made from  
 robore, ad perferendam<sup>27</sup> quamvis vim et  
 oak, for bearing [enduring] any force and  
 contumeliā; transtra ex trabibus  
 violence; the benches (were) made from [of] beams

pedalibus in latitudinem (acc), confixa ferrēis  
 a foot in width, fixed [fastened] together with iron  
 clavis, crassitudine pollicis digiti:  
 nails, with [of] the thickness of the thumb (finger):  
 anchōræ revinctæ ferrēis catenis, pro  
 the anchors (were) fastened with iron chains, instead of  
 funibus. Pelles que alutæ (pl.) tenuiter  
 ropes. Hides and fine leathers (were) thinly  
 confectæ pro velis; sive propter inopiam  
 dressed for sails; whether on account of the want  
 lini, atque inscientiam usûs ejus; sive,  
 of flax, and ignorance of the use of it; or,  
 quod est magis verisimile, quod arbitrabantur  
 what is more likely, because they were thinking  
 tantas tempestates oceani que tantos<sup>28</sup>  
 (that) so great storms of the ocean and so great  
 impetus ventorum posse non sustineri,  
 violence of winds to be able [could] not (to) be supported,  
 ac tanta onera navium regi velis  
 and so great burdens of ships (to) be governed by sails  
 satis commode. Congressus nostræ classi  
 sufficiently conveniently. The encounter to [of] our fleet  
 cum his navibus erat ejusmodi ut præstaret  
 with these ships was of this kind that it was excelling  
 (imp. subj.) celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum;  
 in speed alone, and the beat [stroke] of oars;  
 reliqua essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et  
 the remaining (conditions) were more suitable and  
 accommodatiora illis pro naturâ  
 more accommodated to them for [in view of] the nature  
 loci, pro vi tempestatum: enim  
 of the place (and), (for) the violence of the storms: for  
 nostræ neque poterant nocere his (dat.)  
 our (ships) neither were able to injure them  
 rostro, (tanta erat firmitudo in his)  
 with the beak [prow], (so great was the strength in them)  
 neque telum adiciebatur<sup>29</sup> facile propter  
 nor a weapon was hurled easily on account of

altitudīnem; et de eādē causā continebantur  
(their) height; and from the same cause they were held fast

scopūlis mīnūs commōdē. Accedebat  
by grappling hooks less conveniently. It was added,

ut quum ventus cœpisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
that when the wind had begun

sævire et dedidissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
to rage and they had given [committed] themselves

vento, et ferrent tempestatem faciūis,  
to the wind, both they would bear a storm more easily,

et consistērent tutiūs in vādīs, et  
and would stop more safely in the shoals, and

derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nihil  
having been left by the tide, they would fear nothing

[in no wise] saxa et cautes: casus omnium  
the rocks and reefs: accidents of all

quarum rerum ĕrant extimescendi nostris  
which [these] things [kinds] were to be dreaded by our

navibus (dat.).

ships,

14. Compluribus oppidis expugnatis, ūbi  
Several towns having been stormed, when

Cæsar intellexit tantum laborem sumi  
Cæsar understood so great labor to be [was] taken

frustrā, nēque fūgam hostium reprīmi,  
in vain, neither the flight of the enemy to be [was] checked,

oppidis captis, nēque posse<sup>80</sup>  
the towns having been taken, nor to be able [could he]

noceri his (dat.), statuit classem  
to be injured [injure] them, he resolved (that) the fleet

expectandam, Ubi quæ convenit ac  
to [must] be awaited. When which [this] assembled and

primūm visa-est ab hostibus, circiter ducentæ<sup>81</sup>  
first was seen by the enemy, about two hundred

viginti paratissimæ eorum, naves atque  
twenty most prepared [equipped] of their, ships and

ornatissimæ omni genere armorum,  
most furnished with all [every] kind of arms,

profectæ having set out	è from	portu, port,	constiterunt stood	adversæ opposite
nostris. (to) our (ships).	Nēque Neither	satis constabat was it sufficiently clear	Bruto, to Brutus,	
qui who	præerat commanded	classi (dat.), the fleet,	nēque nor	tribunis to the tribunes
militum of the soldiers	que and	centurionibus, to the centurions,	quibus to whom	singulæ single
[particular]	naves ships	attributæ-erant, had been assigned,	quid what	agèrent, they should do,
aut or	quam what	rationem plan	pugnæ of battle	insisterent: enim they should adopt: for
cognoverant <sup>32</sup> they had known	posse to be able [they could]	non not	noceri (to) be injured	
rostris: by the beak [prow]:	autem but	turribus towers	excitatis, having been raised,	
tamen yet	altitudo the height	puppium of the sterns	ex from [of]	barbaris the barbarian
navibus ships	superabat was overtopping	has; these;	ut (so) that	nēque neither
				tela weapons
possent might be able [could]	adjici (to) be thrown	commodè conveniently	satis enough	ex from
inferiore the lower	loco, place,	et and	missa (those) sent	à by
				Gallis the Gauls
acciderent would fall	gravius. more heavily.	Una One	res thing	præparata à prepared by
nostris our (men)	erat was	magno for [of] great	usui; use;	præcutæ sharp-pointed
				falces, scythes,
insertæ inserted in	que and	affixæ fastened	longuris, to long poles,	formâ with a shape
				non not
absimili unlike	muralium (that) of wall	falcium: <sup>33</sup> scythes:	quum when	funes, the ropes,
				qui which
destinabant were bracing	antennas the yards	ad to	malos, the masts.	comprehensi-erant had been seized
que and	adducti drawn taut	his, by these,	navigio the vessel	incitato having been urged forward
remis, with the oars,	prærumpebantur: they were broken apart:			quibus which

abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidebant;  
 having been cut away, the yards necessarily were falling;

ut quum omnis spes consistèret (imp. subj.)  
 (so) that since all hope was resting

Galliæis navibus in velis que armamentis,  
 for the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus<sup>84</sup> navium  
 these having been torn away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempore. Reliquum  
 was wrested away at one time. The remaining

certamen erat positum in virtute; quâ  
 contest was placed in valor; in which

nostri milites facîle superabant; atque magis  
 our soldiers easily were excelling; and the more

èd, quòd res gerebatur in  
 for this reason, because the action was carried on in

conspecto Cæsaris atque omnis exercitûs, ut  
 sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paulò fortius posset latere;  
 no deed a little more brave was able to be hid;

enim omnes coles ac superiora loca, unde  
 for all the hills and higher places, whence

erat propinquus despectus in mære, tenebantur  
 was a near view upon the sea, were held

ab exercitû.  
 by the army.

15. Antennis disjectis, ut diximus,  
 The yards having been thrown down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.  
 when two or three ships were surrounding

subj.) singulas naves, milites contendebant  
 (our) individual ships, the soldiers were striving

summâ vi transcendere in naves  
 with highest [utmost] force [exertion] to climb over into the ships

hostium. Quod<sup>85</sup> postquam barbâri  
 of the enemy. Which after (that) the barbarians

animadverterunt fieri, compluribus navibus  
 perceived to be [was] done, several ships



expugnatis, quum nullum auxiliū  
 having been stormed [boarded], since no aid  
 reperiretur ēi rēi, contenderunt petere  
 was found for this thing [crisis], they hastened to seek  
 salutem fūgā: ac jam navibus conversis in  
 safety by flight: and now the ships having been turned to  
 eam partem, quod ventus ferebat, tanta  
 that part [direction], where the wind was bearing, so great  
 malaciā ac tranquillitatem subito exstitit, ut  
 a calm and stillness suddenly occurred, that  
 possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex  
 they were able not to move themselves from  
 loco: quæ res<sup>36</sup> quidem fuit maximè opportuna  
 the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable  
 ad conficiendum negotiū, nam nostri  
 for completing the business [engagement], for our (men)  
 consecrati singulas expugnaverunt, ut  
 having pursued individual (ships) stormed [boarded] (them), so that  
 perpaucæ ex omni numero pervenērunt ad  
 very few from [of] all the number arrived to  
 terram, interventu noctis, quum pug-  
 land, by the interposition of night, since it was  
 naretur<sup>37</sup> (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque  
 [they] fought from the fourth hour until  
 ad occasum solis.  
 (to) the setting of the sun.

16. Quo prælio bellum Venetorum que  
 By which battle the war of the Veneti and  
 totius maritimæ oræ confectum-est. Nam  
 of the whole maritime coast was finished. For  
 quum omnis juventus, etiam omnes gravioris  
 not only all (their) youth, also all of more mature  
 ætatis, in quibus<sup>38</sup> fuit, aliquid consilii aut  
 age, in whom (there) was, something [some] (of) counsel or  
 dignitatis convenērant eō; tum coegerant  
 (of) dignity had assembled there; but also they had collected  
 in unum locum, quod navium fuerat  
 into one place, what [whatever] (of) ships had been

ubique: quibus amissis, reliqui habebant  
 everywhere: which having been lost, the rest were having  
 neque quod recipere se, neque  
 neither where they might betake themselves, nor  
 quemadmodum defenderent oppida. Itaque  
 how they might defend (their) towns. Therefore  
 dediderunt se que omnia sua  
 they surrendered themselves and all their (effects)  
 Cæsari: in quos Cæsar statuit vindicandum  
 to Cæsar: against whom Cæsar resolved to be avenged  
 gravius eò quod jus legat-  
 more severely for this reason in order that the right of ambas-  
 sadors conservaretur diligentius à barbaris  
 might be observed more carefully by the barbarians  
 in reliquum tempus. Itaque, omni  
 for the remaining [future] time. Therefore, all  
 senatu necato, vendidit reliquos sub  
 the senate having been put to death, he sold the rest under  
 coronâ.<sup>39</sup>  
 the crown [at auction].

17. Dum hæc geruntur in  
 While these (things) are carried on in [among]  
 Venetis, Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit in  
 the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus passed into  
 fines Venellorum, cum his copiis, quas  
 the borders of the Venelli, with these forces, which  
 acceperat à Cæsare. Viridovix præerat  
 he had received from Cæsar, Viridovix commanded  
 his (dat.), ac tenebat summam imperii  
 these, and was holding the height (of) [the chief] power  
 omnium earum civitatum, quæ defecerant; ex  
 of all of these states, which had revolted; from  
 quibus coegerat exercitum que magnas  
 which he had collected an army and great  
 copias. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,  
 resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,  
 Eburovices, que Lexovii, suo senatu inter-  
 Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate having been put

fecto, quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,  
to death, because they were unwilling to be advisers of war,

clausērunt portas, que conjunxerunt se  
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves

cum Viridovice: que præterea magna multitudo  
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude

perditorum hominum que latronum convenērat  
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled

undique ex Galliâ, quos spes  
from every side from Gaul, whom the hope

prædandi que studium<sup>40</sup> bellandi revoc-  
of plundering and an inclination of warring were calling

abat ab agri culturâ et quotidiano labore.  
away from agriculture and daily labor.

Sabinus tenebat sese castris (pl.) loco  
Sabinus was holding himself in camp in a place

idoneo omnibus rebus: quum Viridovix  
suitable for all things: when Viridovix

considisset (pl. perf. subj.) contrâ eum spatio  
had pitched camp opposite him (to) a space

[distance] duum millium, que copiis  
of two miles, and (his) forces

productis quotidie faceret (imp. subj.)  
having been led forth daily he was making

potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam  
power [an opportunity] of fighting; so that Sabinus already

veniret (imp. subj.) in contemptionem non solum  
was coming into contempt not only

hostibus, sed etiam carperetur (imp. subj.)  
to [as regards] the enemy, but also was censured

nonnihil vocibus nostrorum militum: que  
somewhat by the expressions of our soldiers: and

præbuit tantam opinionem timoris, ut  
he exhibited so great an opinion [a sentiment] of fear, that

hostes auderent jam accedere ad vallum  
the enemy would dare at length to approach to the rampart

castrorum (pl.). Faciebat id eâ causâ,  
of the camp. He was doing this from this cause [reason].

quòd existimabat<sup>41</sup> non dimicandum  
because he was thinking (it) not to [must not] be contended

legato (dat.) cum tantâ multitudîne hostîum,  
by a lieutenant with so great a multitude of the enemy,

præsertim ẽo absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.)  
especially he (being) absent, who was holding

summam imperiî, nisi æquo lĩco,  
the height [chief] (of) command, unless on equal place [ground],

aut aliquâ opportunitate datâ.  
or some opportunity having [had] been given.

18. Hęc opinione timoris confirmatâ,  
This opinion of fear having been strengthened,

delegit quendam Gallum idoneum et callidum  
he selected a certain Gaul a suitable and shrewd

homĩnem, ex iis, quos habebat secum  
man, from those, whom he was having with him

causâ auxiliî (sing.). Persuadet huic (dat.)  
for the sake of reinforcements. He persuades him

magnis præmiis que pollicitationĩbus, uti  
by great rewards and promises, that

transẽat<sup>42</sup> ad hostes: edõcet quod  
he go over to the enemy: he shows (him) what

vẽlit fieri. Qui, ubi venit ad ẽos  
he wishes to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfũgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:  
for [as] a deserter, exposed the fear of the Romans:

edõcet quĩbus angustĩs Cæsar ipse  
he shows (them) with what straits [difficulties] Cæsar himself

prematur (pres. subj.) à Venetis: nõque<sup>43</sup> longĩus  
is pressed by the Veneti: nor farther

abesse, quin Sabinus educat  
to be [was it] distant (from fact), but that Sabinus may lead out

exercitum clàm ex castris (pl.) proximâ  
(his) army secretly from the camp on the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsarem, causâ  
night, and (may) set out to Cæsar, for the sake

ferendi auxiliî. Ubi quod auditum-est,  
of bearing aid, When which (this report) was heard,

omnes conclamant, occasionem gerendi ne-  
all cry out (that), an opportunity of performing the

gotīi bēnē non amittendam-esse: oportere  
business [task] well not to [must not] be lost: to be fitting

iri ad castra (pl.). Multæ  
'they ought] to be gone [to go] to the camp. Many

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilium:  
things were encouraging the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatio Sabini superiorum dierum;  
the hesitation of Sabinus of [on] the former days;

confirmatio perfūgæ; inopīa<sup>44</sup> cibariorum (pl.),  
the assurance of the deserter; the want of food,

cui provisum-erat ab his parum  
for which it had been provided by them not very

diligenter; spes Venetīci belli; et quod  
carefully; the hopes of the Venetian war; and because

homīnes fēre credunt libenter id quod  
men generally believe willingly that which

vōlunt. Adducti<sup>45</sup> iis rebus, dimittunt  
they desire. Induced by these things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que reliquos dūces ex  
Viridovix and the rest of the generals from

concilio non prius quàm concessum-sit ab  
the council not sooner than it has been [was] granted by

his, ūti capiānt arma et contentant ad  
them, that they may take arms and may hasten to

castra (pl.). Quā re concessā, læti,  
the camp. Which thing having been granted, (they) joyful,

vēlūt victoriā exploratā, sarmentis que  
as if the victory having been [were] assured, fagots and

virgultis collectis, quibus complēant  
bushes having been collected, with which they may fill up

fossas Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).  
the ditches of the Romans, they press on to the camp.

19. Locus castrorum (pl.) erat editus, et  
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circiter  
gradually sloping from the lowest [from below] about

mille a thousand	passus : paces :	huc hither	contenderunt they hastened	magno with great
cursu, <sup>46</sup> running,	ut that	quàm as	minimùm least [little as possible]	spatîi (of) space [time]
datur might be given	Romanis to the Romans	ad for	colligendos, collecting,	
que and	armandos, arming	se themselves	que and	exanimati breathless
pervenerunt. they arrived (there).	Sabinus, Sabinus,	hortatus having encouraged	sûos, his (men),	
dat gives	signum the signal	cupientibus : to (them) being eager for (it) :	hostibus the enemy	
impeditis having been encumbered	propter on account of	ëa these	onëra, quæ burdens, which	
ferebant, they were bearing,	jûbet he orders	eruptionem a sally	fieri to be made	subitò suddenly
duabus from the two	portis. gates.	Factum-est <sup>47</sup> It was done	opportunitate by the convenience	
lôci, of the place,	inscientia by the ignorance	ac defatigatione and exhaustion	hostium, of the enemy.	
virtute by the valor	milîtum of the soldiers	ac and	exercitatione the practice	superiorum of former
pugnarum, battles,	ut that	ferrent (imp. subj.) they were bearing	ne not	quidem even
primum the first	impëtum charge	nostrorum ; of our (men) ;	ac and	stâtîm immediately
vertërent (imp. subj.) they were turning	terga : (their) backs :	quos <sup>48</sup> whom	impeditos encumbered	
nostri our	milites soldiers	consecuti having pursued	intëgris with fresh	viribus (pl.), strength,
occiderunt slew	magnum a great	numërum number	eorum : of them :	equites the cavalry
consecrati having pursued	reliquos the rest	reliquerunt left	paucos, few,	qui who
evasërant had escaped	ex from	fûgâ. flight.	Sic Thus	Cæsar Cæsar
certior more sure [was informed]	uno in [at] one	tempore time	et both	de of

navali pugnâ, et de victoriâ Sabini :  
the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus :

que omnes civitates dediderunt se stätim  
and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Tituriô. Nam ut animus Gallorum est  
to Titurius. For as the spirit of the Gauls is

alâcer ac promptus ad suscipienda<sup>49</sup> bella,  
alert and ready for undertaking wars,

sic eorum mens est mollis ac minimè  
so their mind is soft [weak] and by no means

resistens ad perferendas calamitates.  
resistant for bearing misfortunes.

20. Fërè eodem tempöre, quum Publius  
Nearly at the same time, when Publius

Crassus pervenisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Aquitaniam,  
Crassus had arrived into [at] Aquitania,

quæ pars, ut dictum-est antè, est  
which part, as has been said before, is

æstimanda ex tertîâ parte Gallïæ, et  
to [must] be regarded from [as] the third part of Gaul, both

latitudïne regionum et multitudïne  
by the breadth [extent] of countries and by the multitude

homīnum; quum intelligëret (imp. subj.) bellum  
of men; when he was understanding (that) war

gerendum sibi (dat.) in eis locis,  
to [must] be carried on by himself in these places,

ubi paucis (abl.) annis antè Lucius  
where a few years before Lucius

Valerius Præconinus legatus interfectus-esset  
Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant had been killed,

(pl. perf. subj.), exercitu pulso; atque  
(his) army having been routed; and

unde Lucius Manilius Proconsul, impedi-  
whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul, (his)

mentis amissis, profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
baggage having been lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentiam  
he was understanding (that) not [no] moderate diligence

adhibendam sibi (dat.). Itaque, frumentariâ  
to [must] be employed by himself. Therefore, corn

re provisâ, auxiliis que equitatu  
affair [grain] having been provided, auxiliaries and cavalry

comparato, præterea multis fortibus viris  
having been prepared, moreover many brave men

Tolosâ et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates  
from Tolosa and Narbo (which are cities

provinciæ Galliæ, finitimæ his regionibus)  
of the province of Gaul, neighboring to these countries)

evocatis nominatim, introduxit exercitum  
having been called out by name, he led forth (his) army

in fines Sotiatium. Cujus adventu  
into the territories of the Sotiates. Whose arrival

cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coac-  
having been known, the Sotiates, great forces having been

tis, que equitatu, quo valebant  
collected, and cavalry, in which they were availing

plurimum, adorti nostrum agmen in itinere,  
most, having attacked our army on the march,

primum commiserunt equestre prælium; deinde  
first engaged (in) a cavalry fight; afterwards

suo equitatu pulso, atque nostris  
their cavalry having been routed, and our (men)

insequentibus, ostenderunt subito pedestres  
pursuing, they showed [revealed] suddenly the foot

copias, quas collocaverant in convalle in  
forces, which they had placed in a valley basin in

insidiis. Hi adorti nostros disiectos,  
ambuscaders. These having attacked our (men) scattered,

renovarunt prælium.  
renewed the battle.

21. Pugnatum-est<sup>50</sup> diu atque acriter, quum  
It was fought long and sharply, since

Sotiates, freti superioribus victoriis,  
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem<sup>51</sup> totius Aquitanie  
were thinking (that) the safety of the whole of Aquitania



positam in sua virtute; autem nostri  
 was placed in their own valor; but our (men)  
 cuperent (imp. subj.) perspicere,<sup>52</sup> quid pos-  
 were desiring (that it) to [should] be seen, what they might be  
 sent efficere sine imperatore,  
 able [could] (to) accomplish without the commander in chief,  
 et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo  
 and with ut the remaining legions, a very young man  
 duce. Tamen hostes tandem confecti  
 (being) general. However the enemy at length having been spent  
 vulneribus vertērunt terga: magno numero  
 with wounds turned (their) backs: a great number  
 quorum interfecto, Crassus cepit oppugnare  
 of whom having been slain, Crassus began to storm  
 oppidum Sotiatium ex itinere; quibus  
 the town of the Sotiates from [on] (his) march; who [they]  
 resistentibus<sup>53</sup> fortiter, egit vineas que  
 opposing bravely, he pushed the sheds and  
 turres. Illi, alias eruptione tentata,  
 towers. They at one time a sally having been tried,  
 alias cuniculis actis ad aggērem  
 at another time mines having been pushed to the rampart  
 que vineas; cujus rei Aquitani sunt longē  
 and sheds; of which thing the Aquitani are by far  
 peritissimi, propterea-quod ærariæ que sectoræ  
 most skillful, because (that) copper mines and quarries  
 sunt apud eos multis locis; ubi intellexerunt  
 are among them in many places; when they understood  
 nihil posse profici his rebus,  
 nothing to be able [could] (to) be accomplished by these things  
 diligentia nostrorum, mittunt legatos  
 [tactics], from the activity of our (men), they send ambassadors  
 ad Crassum que petunt, ut recipiat se  
 to Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves  
 in deditionem. Quæ re impetrata,  
 into a surrender. Which thing having been obtained,  
 jussi tradere arma, faciunt  
 having been ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it)

22. Atque animis omnium nostrorum intentis  
 And the minds of all our (men) being engaged  
 in ěā re, Adiatōmus qui tenebat summam  
 on this thing, Adiatomas who was holding the height  
 imperiī, ex aliā parte oppīdi, cum  
 (of) [the chief] command, from another part of the town, with  
 sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant  
 six hundred devoted (men), whom they call  
 Solduriōs: quorum hæc est conditio ut  
 Soldurii: of whom this is the estate that  
 fruuntur (pres. subj.) omnibus commōdis (abl.) in  
 they enjoy all advantages in  
 vitā unā cum his, amicitīæ quorum  
 life together with those, to the friendship of whom  
 deditērint se: si quid  
 they may have given up [devoted] themselves: if any (thing)  
 accīdat iis per vim, aut  
 may happen to these through violence, (that) either  
 fērant eundem casum unā, aut consciscant<sup>54</sup>  
 they may bear the same calamity together, or inflict  
 mortem sibi (dat.) nēque quisquam repertus-est  
 death upon themselves nor has any one been found  
 adhuc memoriā hominum, qui recusaret  
 as yet in the memory of men, who would refuse  
 mōri, ěo interfecto, amicitīæ cuius  
 to die, he having been killed, to the friendship of whom  
 devovisset se. Cum his Adiatōmus  
 he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomas  
 conatus facere eruptionem, clamore  
 having endeavored to make a sally, a shout  
 sublato ab ěā parte munitionis,  
 having been raised from that part of the fortification,  
 quum milites concurrissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 when the soldiers had run together to  
 arma, que pugnatum-esset<sup>55</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ibi  
 arms, and it had been [they had] fought there  
 vehementer, repulsus-est in oppīdum; tāmen  
 violently, he was forced back into the town; however

impetravit à Crasso, ūti uteretur<sup>56</sup>  
 he obtained from Crassus, that he might use

eādem conditione (abl.) deditionis.  
 the same condition [terms] of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidibus acceptis, Crassus  
 The arms and hostages having been received Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocationem et  
 set out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatium. Tum verò barbari  
 of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognoverant oppidum munitum  
 alarmed, because they had learned (that) a town fortified

et naturā loci et manu  
 both by the nature of the place and by hand [by art]

expugnatum<sup>57</sup> paucis diebus, quibus ven-  
 having been stormed in the few days, in which it had been

tum fuerat eò; coeperunt dimittere legatos  
 [they had] come there; they began to send ambassadors

quoqueversus, conjurare, dare obsides inter  
 in every direction, to take oaths, to give hostages between

se, parare copias. Legati mittuntur  
 themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors are sent

etiā ad eas civitates, quæ sunt citerioris  
 also to these states, which are in nearer

Hispaniæ (gen.) finitimæ Aquitaniæ: inde  
 Spain neighboring to Aquitania: thence

auxilia que dūces arcessuntur; adventu  
 auxiliaries and generals are summoned; on the arrival

quorum conantur gerere bellum cum magnā  
 of whom they endeavor to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnā multitudīne hominum.  
 authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò ii deliguntur dūces, qui fuerant  
 Moreover these are chosen (as) generals, who had been

unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos, que  
 together with Quintus Sertorius all the years, and

existimabantur habere summam scientiam militaris  
 were thought to have the highest knowledge of military

rēi                      Hi        consuetudinē        Romani        populi  
 affair [tactics]    These        by the custom        of the Roman        people  
 institūunt        capere                      loca,                      munire  
                     resolve        to take [choose]        places [ground],        to fortify  
 castra (pl.),        intercludere        nostros        commeatibus.  
 the camp,                      to shut off        our (men)        from provisions.  
 Quod        ūbi        Crassus        animadvertit,                      suas  
 Which        when        Crassus                      perceived,        (and that) his own  
 copias        non        facile        diduci                      propter  
 forces        not        easily        to be [were] divided        on account of  
                     exiguitatem,        et        hostem        vagari  
 (their) scantiness [fewness], and        (that) the enemy        (to) wander about  
 et        obsidere        vias,        et        relinquere        satis  
 and        (to) block up        the ways,        and        (to) leave        enough  
 praeidii        castris (pl.);        ob        eam causam  
 of protection        to (their) camp;        on account of        this        cause (that)  
 frumentum        que        commeatum        supportari  
                     corn        and        provision        to be [were] brought up  
 sibi        minus        commode,        numerum        hostium  
 to himself        less        conveniently, (that) the number        of the enemy  
                     augeri        in dies; existimavit<sup>58</sup> non        cunctan-  
 (to be) increased        daily;        he considered (it) not        to [he must not] be  
 dum,        quin        decertaret        pugnâ. Hâc re  
 delayed [delay], but that        he should contend        in battle. This thing  
                     delatâ        ad        concilium,        ūbi        intellexit  
 having been referred        to        a council,        when        he understood (that)  
 omnes<sup>59</sup>        sentire        idem,        constituit        postêrum  
                     all        (to) think        the same,        he appointed        the following  
 diem        pugnae.  
                     day        for the battle.

24. Omnibus        copiis                      productis                      primâ  
                     All        (his) forces        having been drawn out        at the first  
 luce,                      duplici        acie        institutâ,        que  
 light [early dawn],        a double        line        having been formed,        and  
                     auxiliis        conjectis        in        mediâ        aciem,  
 the auxiliaries        having been thrown        into        the middle        line,  
 expectabat        quid        consilii (gen.)        hostes        caperent.  
 he was awaiting        what        plan        the enemy        might take

Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et  
 They, although on account of (their) multitude, and  
 vetērem gloriā belli que paucitatem nostrorum  
 ancient glory of war and the fewness of our (men)  
 existimabant se dimicaturos tutò;  
 were considering (that) themselves about to [would] contend safely;  
 tamen arbitrabantur esse tutiūs potiri  
 however they were judging (it) to be [was] safer to possess  
 victoriā sine vulnere, viis  
 a victory without a wound, the ways [roads] having  
 obsessis, commeatu intercluso: et si  
 been blocked up, provisions having been intercepted: and if  
 propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani  
 on account of the want of provisions the Romans  
 cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.) recipere sese,  
 should begin to take away themselves [to re-  
 cogitabant adoriri impeditos  
 treat], they were thinking to [they would] attack (them) encumbered  
 agmine et sub sarcinis (pl.), inferiores animo.  
 on the march and under baggage, (and) weaker in spirit.  
 Hoc consilio<sup>60</sup> probato ab ducibus,  
 This plan having been approved by (their) generals,  
 copiis Romanorum productis, tenebant  
 the forces of the Romans having been drawn out, they were keep-  
 ing themselves in camp. Hæc re perspectâ  
 Crassus, quum hostes effecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 Crassus, since the enemy had rendered  
 suâ cunctatione atque opinione timoris,  
 by their delay and the belief of fear,  
 nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum,  
 our soldiers more eager to fight [for fighting],  
 atque voces omnium audirentur (imp. subj.),  
 and the expressions of all were heard, (that it)  
 oportere<sup>61</sup> non expectari diutius, quin  
 to be [was] fitting not to be waited [to wait] longer, but that  
 iretur ad castra (pl.); cohortatus  
 it should be gone [they should go] to the camp; having exhorted

sūos,	omnībus	cupientībus,	contendit	ad
his (men),	all	desiring,	he hastens	to
castra (pl.)	hostium.			
the camp	of the enemy.			

25. Ibi quum alii complerent (imp. subj.) fossas  
 There when some were filling the ditches  
 alii depellerent (imp. subj.) defensores vallo  
 others were dislodging the defenders from the rampart  
 que munitionibus, multis telis coniectis, que  
 and fortifications, many weapons having been thrown, and  
 auxiliares, quibus (dat.) Crassus confidebat non  
 the auxiliaries, [in] whom Crassus was confiding not  
 multum ab pugnam, praeberent (imp. subj.)  
 much for the battle. were exhibiting

speciem	atque	opinionem	pugnantium
the appearance	and	impression	of fighting (men)

subministrandis lapidibus que telis, et comportandis  
by supplying stones and weapons, and by collecting

cespitibus    ad    aggĕrem ;    quum    ĭtem    pugnaretur  
turfis        for    a mound ;    since    likewise    it was fought

(imp. subj.) constanter ac non timide ab hostibus,  
steadily and not timidly by the enemy,

que        tela        missa        ex        superiore        lōco,  
and    the weapons    sent [thrown]    from        the higher        place,

accidērent (imp. subj.) non frustra; equites, castris  
were falling not in vain; horsemen, the camp

(pl.) hostium      circumītis,      renuntiaverunt      Crasso  
of the enemy      having encircled,      announced      to Crassus

	castra (pl.)	non	esse	munita	eâdem
(that)	the camp	not	to be [was not]	fortified	with the same

diligentiâ	ab	Decumanâ	portâ, que habere
diligence	from [at]	the Decuman	gate, and to have

[had]      facilem      aditum.  
              an easy      access.

26. Crassus cohortatus praefectos equitum  
Crassus having encouraged the perfects of the horsemen

ut	excitarent	sūos	magnis	præmīs
that	they should stimulate	their (men)	by great	rewards

que pollicitationibus, ostendit quid vĕlit  
 and promises, shows (them) what he wishes  
 fieri. Illi, ut imperatum erat, eis  
 to be done. They, as it had been commanded, these  
 cohortibus devectis, quæ relictæ  
 cohorts having been brought forth, which having been left  
 præsidio castris (pl.), erant intritæ ab  
 for a guard to the camp, were unworn [fresh] from  
 labore: et circumductis longiore itinere,  
 labor: and having been led round by a longer route,  
 ne possent conspīci ex castris  
 lest they might be able [should] (to) be seen from the camp  
 hostium; oculis que mentibus omnium  
 of the enemy; the eyes and minds of all  
 intentis ad pugnam, pervenerunt celeriter  
 being engaged to [on] the fight, they arrived quickly  
 ad eas munitiones, quas diximus; atque  
 to [at] these fortifications, which we have mentioned; and  
 his prorutis, constitērunt in castris  
 these having been demolished, they stood in the camp  
 (pl.) hostium prius quàm posset  
 of the enemy before that it might be able [could]  
 videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid  
 (to) be seen plainly by these or (to) be known, what  
 rei gereretur. Tum verò clamore  
 (of) thing was transpiring. Then indeed a shout  
 audito ab eâ parte, nostri, viribus (pl.)  
 having been heard from this part, our (men), their strength  
 redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit  
 having been renewed, which generally has been accustomed  
 accidere in spe victoriæ, cœperunt impugnare  
 to occur in the hope of victory, began to assault  
 acrius. Hostes circumventi undique,  
 more vigorously. The enemy surrounded on every side,  
 omnibus rebus desperatis, contenderunt  
 all things having been despaired of, hastened  
 dejicere se per munitones, et  
 to hurl themselves through the fortifications, and

petĕre to seek	salutem safety	fŭgâ by flight.	Quos Whom	equitatus the cavalry
consectatus having pursued	apertissimis in the most open	campis, plains,	recepit betook	
se itself	in into	castra (pl.) camp	multâ in much	nocte, <sup>62</sup> night [late at night],
vix scarcely	quartâ a fourth	parte part	relictâ having been left	ex from
numĕro the number	quingenta of fifty	millium, thousand,	quæ which	
constabat it was evident	venisse to have [had] come	ex from	Aquitaniâ Aquitania	
que and	Cantăbris. the Cantabri.			

27. Hâc This	pugnâ battle	auditâ, having been heard of,	maxîma the greatest	pars part
Aquitaniæ of Aquitania	dedidit surrendered	sese itself	Crasso, to Crassus,	que and
misit sent				
obsides hostages	ultrô: voluntarily:	in in	quo which	numĕro number
fuerunt were				
Tarbelli, the Tarbelli,	Bigerriōnes, Bigerriones,	Ptiani, Ptiani,	Vocates, Vocates,	Tarusates, Tarusates,
Elusâtes, Elusates,	Gates, Gates,	Ausci, Ausci,	Garumni, Garumni,	Sibusates, Sibusates,
que and				
Cocosates. Cocosates.	Paucæ A few	ultimæ remotest	nationes, nations,	confisæ having relied
tempĕre on the time	anni, of the year,	quòd because	hiems winter	subĕrat, was near,
neglexerunt neglected	facĕre to do	id. this.		
28. Fĕrĕ Nearly	eodem at the same	tempĕre, time,	etsi although	æstas the summer
ĕrat was	jam already	prōpĕ almost	exacta, finished,	tâmen still
quòd, because,	omni all			
Galliâ Gaul	pacatâ, having been subdued,	Morîni the Morîni	que and	Menapii Menapii
superĕrant, were remaining,	qui who	essent (imp. subj.) were	in in	armis arms



nēque unquam misissent<sup>63</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum  
 nor had ever sent to him

legatos de pace, Cæsar arbitratus  
 ambassadors about peace, Cæsar having thought (that)

id bellum posse confici celeriter, duxit  
 this war to be able [could] (to) be finished quickly, led

exercitum eò: qui cœperunt agere bellum  
 the army thither: who began to conduct the war

ratione longè aliâ ac reliqui Galli:  
 in a manner far otherwise than the remaining Gauls:

nam, quòd intelligebant maximas  
 for, because they were understanding (that) the greatest

nationes, quæ contendissent (pl. perf. subj.) præliò  
 nations, which had contended in battle

pulsas-esse que superatas, que habebant  
 to have [had] been routed and overcome, and they were having

continentes silvas ac paludes, contulerunt eò  
 extended woods and marshes, they bore away thither

se que omnia sua. Ad initium  
 themselves and all their (effects). At the beginning

quarum<sup>64</sup> silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pl.  
 of which woods, when Cæsar had arrived,

perf. subj.), que instituisset (pl. perf. subj.) munire  
 and had resolved to fortify

castra (pl.), nēque interim hostis visus esset  
 the camp, nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen:

(pl. perf. subj.); nostris dispersis in  
 our (men) having been scattered in

opere, evolaverunt subito ex omnibus partibus  
 the work, they flew out suddenly from all parts

silvæ, et fecerunt impetum in nostros.  
 of the wood, and made an attack upon our (men).

Nostri celeriter ceperunt arma, que  
 Our (men) quickly took arms, and

repulerunt eos in silvas; et complur-  
 forced them into the woods; and very

ibus interfectis, secuti longius  
 many having been killed, having followed (them) rather far

impeditioribus      locis,      deperdiderunt      paucos  
in more entangled      places,      they lost      a few

ex      suis.  
from [of]      their own (men).

29. Cæsar      instituit      cedere      silvas      deinceps  
Cæsar      resolved      to cut      the woods      in succession

reliquis      diebus;      et      ne      quis      impetus  
on the remaining      days;      and      lest      any      attack

posset      fieri      ab      latere      militibus  
might be able [could]      (to) be made      from      the flank      on the soldiers

(dat.) inermibus      que      imprudentibus,      collocabat  
unarmed      and      unaware,      he was placing

omnem      eam      materiam,      quæ      cæsa erat,  
all      this      material [timber],      which      had been cut,

conversam      ad      hostem,      que      extruebat      pro  
turned      to      the enemy,      and      was building (it)      for

vallo      ad      utrumque      latus.      Magno      spatio  
a rampart      to [on]      each      flank.      A great      space

confecto      paucis      diebus      incredibili  
having been finished [cleared]      in a few      days      with incredible

celeritate,      quum      pecus      atque      extrema      impeditio  
speed.      when      the cattle      and      the farthest      bag-

imenta (pl.)      tenerentur (imp. subj.)      jam      ab      nostris,  
gage      was possessed      now      by      our (men),

ipsi      peterent (imp. subj.)      densiores      silvas;  
(they) themselves      were seeking      the thicker      woods:

tempestates      ejusmodi      consecutæ sunt,      uti      opus  
storms      of such kind      followed,      that      the work

intermitteretur (imp. subj.)      necessariò;      et      contin-  
was interrupted      necessarily;      and      by the

uatione      inbrium,      milites      possent (imp. subj.)  
continuance      of the rains,      the soldiers      were able

non      contineri      diutius      sub      pellibus.      Itaque,  
not      to be kept      longer      under      hides [tents].      Therefore,

omnibus      eorum      agris      vastatis,<sup>65</sup>      vicis  
all      their      lands      having been ravaged,      the villages

que ædificiis      incensis,      Cæsar reduxit exercitum  
and buildings      having been burned,      Cæsar led back      the army

et collocavit in hibernis in Aulereis  
and placed (it) in winter quarters among the Aulerci  
que Lexovîs, item reliquis civitatibus, quæ  
and the Lexovii, also the remaining states, which  
facerant bellum proximè.  
had made war last.

## FOURTH BOOK

The fourth book contains the description of Cæsar's campaign against the Germans and of his first invasion of Britain, B. C. 55. The German tribes, the Usipetes Germani and the Tencteri, pressed by the Suevi, had crossed the Rhine near its mouth and conquered the Menapii. Cæsar, fearing complications and a possible alliance of the Gauls and Germans, orders the Germans to withdraw from Gaul. He then advances with the army and a protracted parley takes place between him and the Germans. After a treacherous attack by the German cavalry Cæsar assaults the camp of the Germans and puts them to flight. The Rhine is bridged by Cæsar, who invades Germany and after a stay of 18 days returns. He sends a reconnoitering fleet to Britain, and after assembling a large fleet, himself, sails and lands on the British coast. A storm disables the fleet, whereupon the Britons attack him and are defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul. The Morini rebel and are subdued. For that winter the legions are quartered among the Belgæ and the Senate appoints a thanksgiving of 20 days.

1. Eâ hiême quæ secuta est, qui fuit annus,  
 In this winter which followed, which was the year,  
 Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus,  
 (when) Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (were) counsuls,  
 Germani Usipètes, et item Tenctëri transiêrunt  
 the German Usipetes, and also the Tencteri crossed  
 flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudîne hominûm,  
 the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,  
 non longè à mări, quò Rhenus infliit.  
 not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows in.  
 Causa transeundi fuit, quòd exagitati ab  
 The cause of crossing was, because having been harassed by  
 Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,  
 the Suevi many years, they were crushed by war,  
 et prohibebantur agri culturâ. Gens  
 and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxīma et bellicosissīma  
 of the Suevi is by far the greatest and most warlike  
 omnium Germanorum. Hi dicuntur habere  
 of all the Germans. These are said to have  
 centum pagos; ex quibus<sup>1</sup> educunt  
 a hundred cantons; from which they lead forth  
 quotannis singula (pl.) millia armatorum  
 yearly single thousands of armed (men)  
 ex suis finibus, causā bellandi: reliqui  
 from their borders, for the sake of warring: the rest  
 qui manserunt dōmi (gen.), alunt se atque  
 who remained at home, support themselves and  
 illos. Hi rursus sunt in armis invicem  
 those. These again are in arms in turn  
 anno pōst; illi remanent dōmi (gen.).  
 in the year after; they [those] remain at home.  
 Sic nēque agri cultura, nēque ratio atque  
 Thus neither agriculture, nor the theory and  
 usus belli intermittitur. Sed est nīhil  
 practice of war is interrupted. But (there) is nothing  
 privati ac separati agri apud  
 [not any] (of) private and separate land at [among]  
 eos: nēque licet remanere longiūs anno  
 them: neither is it lawful to remain longer (than) a year  
 in uno lōco, causā colendi. Nēque  
 in one place, for the sake of tilling [farming]. Neither  
 vivunt multum frumento, sed maxīmam<sup>2</sup>  
 do they live much by [on] corn, but the greatest  
 partem lacte atque pecōre; que sunt  
 part by [on] milk and cattle; and they are  
 multum in venationibus (pl.); quæ res et  
 much in huntings [in the chase]; which thing both  
 alit vires et efficit homines  
 nourishes the forces [strength] and produces men  
 immani magnitudine corporum et genere  
 with [of] huge size of bodies and by the kind  
 cibi, et quotidianā exercitatione, et libertate  
 of food, and daily exercise. and freedom

vitæ, quòd àssuefacti nullo officio aut  
of life, because having been accustomed to no duty or

disciplinâ à puëris, faciunt (pres. subj.)  
discipline from boys [boyhood], they do

nihil omnino contra voluntatem. Atque  
nothing at all against (their) will. And

adduxerunt se in eam consuetudinem,  
they have brought themselves into this habit,

ut habent (pres. subj.) neque quidquam  
that they have neither any (thing)

vestitus frigidissimis locis, præter pelles;  
(of) clothing in the coldest places, except skins;

propter exiguitatem quarum, magna pars  
on account of the scantiness of which, a great part

corpōris est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.)  
of the body is uncovered; and they are washed [bathe]

in fluminibus.  
in the rivers.

2. Aditus est mercatoribus ad eos, magis  
Access is for merchants to them, more

ẽd, ut habent quibus  
by this [on this account], that they may have (those) to whom

vendant, quæ cepērint bello, quàm  
they may sell, what they may have taken in war, than

quò desiderent ullam rem importari  
that they may desire any thing to be imported

ad se. Quinetiam Germani utuntur non  
to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not

importatis jumentis, quibus Galli maxime  
imported beasts of burden, with which the Gauls especially

delectantur quæ quæ pārant impenso  
are delighted and which they procure at expensive [a high]

pretio; sed efficiunt hæc, quæ sunt nata  
price; but they render these, which are born

prava atque deformia apud eos, quotidianā  
mis-shapen and deformed among them, by daily

exercitatione ut sint summi  
exercise that they may be (capable) of the highest [greatest]

laboris. Equestribus praeliis desiliunt saepe  
 labor. In cavalry fights they leap down often

ex equis, ac praeliantur<sup>3</sup> pedibus; que  
 from the horses, and fight on feet [on foot]; and

assuefaciunt equos remanere eodem vestigio,  
 they accustom the horses to remain in the same footstep [spot],

ad quos recipiunt se celeriter, quum usus  
 to which they betake themselves quickly, when need

poscit: neque quidquam habetur turpius  
 requires: nor is any thing held more shameful

aut inertius eorum moribus quam uti  
 or more lazy by their customs than to use

ephippiais (abl.). Itaque,<sup>4</sup> quamvis pauci audent  
 saddles. Therefore, however few, they dare

adire ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum  
 to approach to any number of saddled

equitum. Non sinunt vinum importari  
 horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported

omnino ad se, quod<sup>5</sup> arbitrantur  
 at all to themselves, because they think (that)

homines remollescere ea re ad ferendum,  
 men (to) become enfeebled by this thing for bearing,

laborem atque effeminari.  
 labor and to be [are] effeminated.

3. Publicè putant esse maximam  
 Publicly [as a nation] they think (it) to be [is] the greatest

laudem, agros vacare quam latis-  
 praise (that), the lands to be [are] vacant as most exten-

sivè à suis finibus.  
 sively [as extensively as possible] from their borders. (That)

Significari hæc re, magnum numerum  
 to be [it is] indicated by this thing (that), a great number

civitatum non potuisse sustinere  
 of states not (to) have been able to [could not] withstand

suum vim. Itaque circiter sexcenta millia  
 their force [power]. Therefore about six hundred thousands

passuum agri dicuntur<sup>6</sup> vacare à  
 (of) paces of land [country] are said to be vacant from

Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubii succedunt  
the Suevi from [on] one part [side]. The Ubii come next

ad altëram partem, quorum civitas fuit  
at the other part [side], whose state has been

ampla atque florens, ut captus Germanorum  
extensive and flourishing, as the nature of the Germans

est; ei sunt paulò humaniores cætëris,  
is; they are a little more civilized than the rest,

quamquam sunt ejusdem genëris: propterëa  
although (they) are of the same race; because

quòd attingunt Rhenum, que mercatores ventitant  
(that) they touch on the Rhine, and merchants travel

multùm ad eos, et ipsi sunt assuefacti  
much to them, and they are accustomed

Gallicis moribus propter propinquitatem. Quum  
to Gallic manners on account of (their) nearness. When

Suevi, experti hos (acc.) sæpè multis  
the Suevi, having made trial of these often in many

bellis, potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) non expellëre  
wars, had been able [could] not (to) expel (them)

finibus, propter amplitudinem que  
from (their) borders, on account of the extent and

gravitatem civitatis, tãmen fecerunt  
weight [influence] of the state, at length they made

vectigales sibi, ac redegerunt multò  
(them) tributary to themselves, and rendered (them) much

humiliores que infirmiores.  
lower [poorer] and weaker.

4. Usipëtes et Tenctëri, quos diximus  
The Usipetes and Tencteri, whom we have said

suprà, fuerunt in eâdem causâ: qui  
above, were in the same cause [condition]: who

sustinuerunt vim Suevorum complures annos:  
withstood the violence of the Suevi many years:

tãmen ad extremum expulsi  
however at last having been driven out from (their)

agris, et vagati multis lócis Germaniæ  
lands, and having wandered in many places of Germany



triennium, pervenerunt<sup>7</sup> ad Rhenum:  
 (during) three years time, they arrived at the Rhine:  
 quas regiones Menapii incolebant, Hi  
 which countries the Menapii were inhabiting, These  
 habebant agros, ædificia, qua vicos ad  
 were holding lands, buildings, and villages at [along]  
 utramque ripam fluminis: sed perterritis  
 each bank of the river: but alarmed  
 adventu tantæ multitudinis, demigraverunt  
 by the arrival of so great a multitude, they emigrated  
 ex his ædificiis, quæ habuerant trans flumen:  
 from these buildings, which they had had beyond the river:  
 et præsidis dispositis cis Rhenum,  
 and garrisons having been posted on this side the Rhine,  
 prohibebant<sup>8</sup> Germanos transire.  
 they were checking the Germans to cross [from crossing] over.  
 Illi experti omnia, quum possent (imp.  
 They, having tried all (things) when they were able  
 subj.) nèque contendere vi, propter  
 neither to contend by force, on account of  
 inopiam navium, nèque transire clam,  
 the want of ships, nor to cross over secretly,  
 propter custodias Menapiorum, simulaverunt<sup>9</sup>  
 on account of the guards of the Menapii, pretended  
 se reverti in suas sedes  
 (that they) themselves (to) return into their seats  
 que regiones; et progressi viam  
 [settlements] and countries; and having advanced a way  
 tridui, reverterunt rursus; atque  
 [distance] of three days, they return again and  
 omni hoc itinere confecto unâ nocte  
 all this march having been finished in one night  
 equitatu, oppresserunt Menapios inscios que  
 by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant and  
 inopinantes; qui<sup>10</sup> facti certiores  
 unaware; who having been made more sure [having been  
 informed] of the departure of the Germans per  
 by

exploratores, spies, remigravērant had moved back sīne without mētū fear in into  
 suos vicos trans Rhenum. His interfectis  
 their villages beyond the Rhine. These having been slain  
 que eorum navibus occupatis, prius-quam<sup>11</sup>  
 and their ships having been seized, before (that)  
 ēa pars Menapiorum, quæ erat citra  
 this part of the Menapii, which was on this side  
 Rhenum, fieret (imp. subj.) certior,  
 the Rhine, was made more sure [was informed],  
 transierunt flumen; atque omnibus eorum  
 they crossed the river; and all their  
 ædificiis occupatis, aluerunt se  
 buildings having been seized, they supported themselves  
 eorum copiis reliquam partem hiemis.  
 with their supplies [stores] the remaining part of the winter.  
 5. Cæsar factus certior de  
 Cæsar being made more sure [having been informed] of  
 his rebus, et veritus infirmitatem Gallorum,  
 these things, both having feared the weakness of the Gauls,  
 quod sunt mobiles in capiendis consiliis, et  
 because they are changeable in taking councils, and  
 plerumque student novis rebus,  
 generally are zealous for new things [a revolution],  
 existimavit nihil committendum his. Autem  
 thought nothing to [should] be entrusted to these. But  
 hoc est Gallicæ consuetudinis; ut et  
 this is (of) the Gallic custom; that both  
 cogant (pres. subj.) viatores, etiam invitos,  
 they compel travellers, even unwilling,  
 consistere; et quærant (pres. subj.) quod quisque  
 to stop; and they inquire what each  
 eorum audiērit aut cognovērit de  
 of them may have heard or may have learned about  
 quæque re: et vulgus circumstat  
 each thing: and the common people stand about  
 (pres. subj.) mercatores in oppidis: cogant  
 the merchants in the towns: they compel

(pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex quibus regionibus  
 (them) to declare from what countries  
 veniant, que quas res cognoverint ibi.  
 they come, and what things they have learned there.  
 Permoti his rumoribus atque auditionibus,  
 Aroused by these reports and hearsays,  
 ineunt consilia sæpè de summis  
 they enter upon plans often concerning the most important  
 rebus: quorum est necesse eos pœnitere  
 things: of which it is necessary (for) them to repent  
 in vestigio, quum serviant (pres. subj.)  
 on the track [spot], since they are slaves  
 incertis rumoribus, et plerique<sup>12</sup> respondēant  
 to uncertain reports, and very many answer  
 (pers. subj.) ficta ad eorum voluntatem.  
 feigned (things) to their wish.

6. Quâ consuetudine cognitâ, Cæsar  
 Which custom having been known, Cæsar  
 proficiscitur ad exercitum maturius quam  
 sets out to the army sooner than  
 consueverat, ne<sup>13</sup> occurreret graviori  
 he had been accustomed, lest he might meet a heavier [more serious]  
 bello (dat.). Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) èd  
 war. When he had come there  
 cognovit<sup>14</sup> hæc facta, quæ  
 he learned (that) these (things) (had been) done, which  
 suspicatus-erat fore: legationes mis-  
 he had suspected to be about to [would] be: embassies to have  
 sas à nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos,  
 [had] been sent by some states to the Germans,  
 que eos invitatos uti discederent  
 and these to have [had] been invited that they should depart  
 ab Rheno: que omnia quæ  
 from the Rhine: and all (things) which  
 postulassent fore parata ab  
 they had demanded to be about to [would] be prepared by  
 se. Quâ<sup>15</sup> spe Germani adducti,  
 themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced [moved],

vagabantur jam latius, et pervenerant  
were wandering now more widely, and had arrived

in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum,  
into [at] the borders of the Eburones and of the Condrusi,

qui sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principibus  
who are dependents of the Treviri. The chiefs

Galliæ evocatis, Cæsar existimavit  
of Gaul having been summoned, Cæsar thought (that)

ëa, quæ cognoverat, dissimulanda  
these (things), which he had learned, to [must] be concealed

sibi (dat.); que eorum animis permulsis  
by himself; and their minds having been soothed

et confirmatis, que equitatu imperato,  
and strengthened, and cavalry having been demanded,

constituit gerere bellum cum Germanis.  
he resolved to carry on war with the Germans.

7. Frumentariâ re comparatâ, que  
The grain supply having been prepared, and

equitibus delectis, cœpit facere iter  
the cavalry having been chosen, he began to make (his) march

in ëa loca, in quibus locis audiebat  
into these places, in which places he was hearing

Germanos esse. A quibus<sup>16</sup> quum  
the Germans to be [were]. From whom [them] when

abesset (imp. subj.) iter paucorum dierum,  
he was distant a journey of a few days,

legati venerunt ab iis, quorum<sup>17</sup> hæc  
ambassadors came from them, of whom this

fuit oratio: "Germanos nèque inferre bellum  
was the speech: "The Germans neither (to) wage war

Romano populo priores, nèque<sup>18</sup> tamen  
to [on] the Roman people the first, nor however

recusare, quin contentant armis, si  
to refuse, but that they may contend in arms, if

laccessantur: quòd hæc consuetudo Germanorum  
they should be attacked: because this custom of the Germans

tradita-sit (perf. subj.) à majoribus, resistere,  
has been delivered by (their) ancestors, to oppose,

nēque deprecari, quicumque infērant  
 nor to beg off [ask quarter of], whosoever may bring on  
 bellum: tamen dicere hoc: venisse  
 war: however to [they] say this: to (that they) have come  
 invitos, ejectos domo: si Romani vellent  
 unwilling, having been driven from home: if the Romans wish  
 suam gratiam, posse esse utiles amicos  
 their favor, to be [they are] able to be useful friends  
 eis: vel attribuant agros sibi, vel  
 to them: either let them assign lands to themselves, or  
 patiantur tenere eos, quos possederint  
 let them permit (them) to hold these, which they have possessed  
 armis: sese concedere Suevis  
 by arms: (that they) themselves (to) yield to the Suevi  
 unis; quibus ne quidem immortales dii  
 one [alone]; to whom not even the immortal gods  
 possint esse pares: neminem reliquum  
 are able to be equal: (that) no one remaining [else]  
 quidem esse in terris, quem  
 indeed to be [is] in the lands [on earth], whom  
 non-possint superare.”  
 they are not able to overcome.”

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc quæ  
 Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)  
 visum-est; sed exitus orationis fuit:  
 seemed (best); but the conclusion of (his) speech was:  
 “Nullam amicitiam posse esse sibi  
 “No friendship to be able [can] (to) be for himself  
 cum his, si remanerent in Gallia: nēque  
 with them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither  
 esse verum occupare alienos, qui  
 to be [is it] true [just] to seize others' (lands), who  
 potuerint non tueri suos fines:  
 may have been able not to defend their own borders:  
 nēque ullos agros vacare in Gallia, qui  
 nor (are) any lands (to be) vacant in Gaul, which  
 possint dari sine injuria, præsertim  
 may be able to be given without injury, especially

tantæ multitudīni: sed licere, si  
 to so great a multitude: but (that) to be [it is] permitted, if  
 vēlint, considere in finibus Ubiorum;  
 they wish, to settle in the territories of the Ubii;  
 legati quorum sint (pres. subj.) apud se,  
 ambassadors of whom are at [with] himself,  
 et querantur (pres. subj.) de injuriis Suevorum,  
 and complain of the injuries of the Suevi,  
 et pētant (pres. subj.) auxilium à se:  
 and ask aid from himself: (he)  
 se impetraturum hoc ab Ubis."  
 himself about to [would] obtain this from the Ubii."

9. Legati dixerunt se rela-  
 The ambassadors said (that they) themselves about to  
 turos hæc ad suos, et  
 [would] carry back these (words) to their own (people), and  
 re deliberatâ, reversuros  
 the thing having been considered, (to be) about to [would] return  
 ad Cæsarem post tertium diem: interea  
 to Cæsar after the third day: meantime  
 petierunt ne moveret castra (pl.) propius  
 they requested (that) he would not move (his) camp nearer  
 se. Cæsar dixit ne id quidem posse  
 themselves. Cæsar said not this even to be able  
 impetrari ab se. Enim cognoverat  
 [could] (to) be obtained from himself. For he had known  
 magnam partem equitatus missam ab  
 a great part of (their) cavalry having [had] been sent by  
 his ad Ambivaritos trans Mösam, aliquot  
 them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some  
 diebus antè, causâ prædandi que frumentandi:  
 days before, for the sake of plundering and of providing corn:  
 arbitrabatur hos equites expectari,  
 he was thinking (that) these horsemen to be [were] awaited,  
 atque moram interponi causâ  
 and the delay to be [was] interposed for the sake  
 ejus rei.  
 of this thing.

10. Mōsa                      profūit      ex      monte      Vōgēsō,  
       The Mosa [Meuse]      flows      from      mount      Vōgesus  
       qui      est      in      finibus      Lingōnum;  
 [Vosges],      which      is      in      the territories      of the Lingones;  
       et quādam parte      ex      Rheni      receptā,  
 and      a certain      part      from [of] the Rhine      having been received,  
       quæ      appellatur      Vahālis,      efficit      insulam  
 which (part)      is called      Vahalīs [Waal],      it forms      the island  
       Batāvorum:      nēque longiūs      ab      ēo  
 of the Batavi:      and not farther      from      this (than)  
       octoginta millibus passūm influit in Oceānum.  
       eighty      thousand      (of) paces      it empties      into      the Ocean.  
       Autem      Rhenus      oritur      ex      Lepontīs,      qui  
       But      the Rhine      rises      from      the Lepontii,      who  
       incōlunt Alpes,      et fertur citatus longo spatio  
       inhabit      the Alps,      and is borne      rapid      in a long      distance  
       per      fines      Nantuatium,      Helvetiorum,  
       through      the territories      of the Nantuates,      of the Helvetii,  
       Sequanorum,      Mediomatricorum,      Tribocorum,      que  
       of the Sequani,      of the Mediomatrici,      of the Triboci,      and  
       Treverorum;      et      ūbi appropinquat      Oceāno,  
       of the Treveri;      and      when      it approaches      (to) the Ocean,  
       diffūit      in      plures      partes;      multis<sup>19</sup>  
       it flows apart      into      more [several]      parts [estuaries]:      many  
       que      ingentibus insulis      effectis;      magna  
       and      great      islands      having been formed;      a large  
       pars quarum incolitur à fēris que barbāris  
       part      of which      is inhabited      by      wild      and      barbarous  
       nationibus;      (ex      quibus      sunt      qui  
       nations;      (from [of]      which      (there) are      (some) who  
       existimantur      vivēre      piscibus atque      ovis  
       are thought      to live      (on) fishes      and      the eggs  
       avium);      que      influit      in      Oceānum      multis  
       of birds);      and      it empties      into      the Ocean      by many  
       capitibus.  
       heads [outlets].

11. Quum      Cæsar      abesset (imp. subj.)      ab  
       When      Cæsar      was distant      from

hoste non amplius duodécim millibus  
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousand

passum, legati revertuntur ad eum,  
(of) paces, the ambassadors returned to him,

ut constitutum-erat: qui congressi in  
as it had been appointed: who having met (him) on

itinere, orabant magnopere, ne progrediretur  
the march, were praying very much, that he would not advance

longius. Quum non impetrassent (pl. perf.  
farther. When they had not obtained

subj.) id, petebant, "ut præmitteret  
this, they were asking, "that he would send before

ad eos equites, qui antecessissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
to these horsemen, who had preceded

agmen, que prohiberet eos pugnâ: que  
the marching line, and would prohibit them from battle: and

uti faceret potestatem sibi mittendi  
that he would make an opportunity to themselves of sending

legatos in Ubios: si quorum principes que  
ambassadors unto Ubii: if their chiefs and

senatus fecissent fidem<sup>20</sup> sibi  
senate would make faith [give pledge] to themselves

jurejurando, ostendebant se  
by oath, they were showing (that they) themselves

usuros eâ conditione, quæ ferretur  
about to use [would accept] this condition, which was offered

à Cæsare; daret sibi spatium tridui  
by Cæsar; let him give to themselves the period of three days

ad conficiendas has res." Cæsar arbitrabatur  
for accomplishing these things." Cæsar was thinking (that)

omnia hæc pertinere eodem-illò, ut,  
all these (things) (to) tend to this same (point), that,

mora tridui interpositâ, eorum  
the delay of three days having been interposed, their

equites qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:  
horsemen who were absent might return:

tamen dixit sese processurum non  
however he said (that he) himself about to [would] advance not



longiùs      quatŭor      millibus      passŭum      ěo      dĩe  
farther      (than) four      thousand      (of) paces      on this      day

causâ      aquationis :      convenirent<sup>21</sup>      huc      quàm  
for the sake      of watering :      let them assemble      hither      as

frequentissĭmi      postĕro      dĩe,  
most numerous [as many as possible]      on the following      day,

ut      cognoscĕret      de      eorum      postulatis.  
that      he might learn      concerning      their      requests.

Intĕrim      mittit      ad      præfectos,      qui  
Meanwhile      he sends (persons)      to      the commander,      who

antecessĕrant      cum      omni      equitatu,      qui  
had advanced      with      all      the cavalry,      who

nuntiarent,      ne lacesĕrent      hostes  
should announce [instruct],      that they should not provoke      the enemy

proelĭo; et, si      ipsi      lacesĕrentur,  
to battle; and, if (they) themselves      should be provoked, [attacked],

sustinerent      quoad      ipse      accessisset  
they should hold out      until      (he) himself      should approach

propiùs      cum      exercĭtu.  
nearer      with      the army.

12. At      hostes,<sup>22</sup>      ŭbi      primŭm      conspexerunt  
But      the enemy,      when      first [as soon as]      they beheld

nostros equĭtes,      numĕrus      quorum      ěrat      quinque  
our      cavalry,      the number      of whom      was      (of) five

millĭum,      quum      ipsi      haberent (imp. subj.)  
thousand,      although (they) themselves      were having

non      amplĭus      octongentos      equĭtes,      quòd  
not      more (than)      eight hundred      cavalry,      because

ĭi, qui      iĕrant      trans      Mōsam      causâ  
those, who      had gone      beyond      the Meuse      for the sake

frumentandi,      nondum      rediĕrant;      nostris  
of foraging,      had not yet      returned;      our (men)

timentĭbus      nĭhil,      quòd      eorum      legati  
fearing      nothing,      because      their      ambassadors

discessĕrant      paulò      antè      à      Cæsāre,      atque      is  
had departed      a little      before      from      Cæsar,      and      this

dĭes      petitus-ĕrat      ab      ĭis      indutĭis (pl.),<sup>23</sup>  
day      had been sought      by      them      for a truce,

impĕtu factō, perturbaverunt celerīte;  
 an attack having been made, confused quickly  
 nostros. Nost̄ris rursus resistantībus, desiliērunt  
 our (men). Our (men) again resisting, they leaped down  
 ad pĕdes, sūā consuetudinē, quē ēquis  
 to feet, [on foot] by their custom, and the horse:  
 suffossis, quē complurībus nostris  
 having been stabbed, and very many (of) our (men)  
 dejectis, conjecerunt reliquos in fūgam.  
 having been cast down, they hurled the rest into flight;  
 atque egerunt ita perterritos, ut desistērent  
 and drove (them) so panicstricken, that they were ceasing.  
 (imp. subj.) non fūgā priūs quā venissent  
 not from flight before that they had come  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in conspectum nostri agmīnis.  
 into sight of our marching line  
 Quatūor et septuaginta ex nostris equitibus  
 Four and seventy out of our cavalry  
 interficiuntur in ēo prœliō; in his Piso.  
 are killed in this battle; among these (was) Piso  
 fortissīmus vir, Aquitanus, natus amplissīmo  
 a most brave man, an Aquitanian, born from [of a] most distin-  
 genēre, cujus āvus obtinuērat regnum  
 guished family, whose grandfather had obtained the sovereignty  
 in sūā civitate, appellatus amicus à nostro  
 in his own state, having been called a friend by our  
 senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.) auxiliū  
 senate. When he was bearing aid  
 fratri intercluso ab hostibus, eripuit  
 to (his) brother cut off by the enemy, he rescued  
 illum ex pericūlo; ipse, ēquo vulnerato,  
 him from danger. (he) himself, (his) horse having been  
 dejectus restitit fortissīme quoad  
 wounded. thrown down, resisted most bravely as long as  
 potuit. Quum circumventus cecidisset  
 he was able. When having been surrounded he had fallen:  
 (pl. perf. subj.); multis vulneribus acceptis,  
 many wounds having been received,

atque frater, qui jam excesserat proelio  
 and (his) brother, who already had departed from the battle  
 animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id procul, equo  
 (had) perceived this afar off, (his) horse  
 incitato obtulit sese hostibus,  
 having been urged on he threw himself to [upon] the enemy,  
 atque interfectus-est.  
 and was slain.

13. Hoc proelio facto, Cæsar jam  
 This battle having been done [fought], Cæsar now  
 arbitrabatur neque legatos audiendos  
 , was thinking (that) neither ambassadors (ought) to be heard  
 sibi (dat.), neque conditiones accipiendas  
 by himself, nor conditions (ought) to be received  
 ab iis, qui, pace petita, intulissent  
 from these, who, peace having been sought, had brought on  
 (pl. perf. subj.) bellum ultrò, per dolum  
 war voluntarily, through deceit  
 atque insidias (pl.). Verò judicabat esse  
 and treachery. But he was judging (that) to be  
 summæ dementiæ expectare, dum  
 [it was] (of) the highest madness to wait, until  
 copiæ hostium augerentur que  
 the forces of the enemy should be increased and (their)  
 equitatus reverteretur et infirmitate Gallorum  
 cavalry should return and the weakness of the Gauls  
 cognita, sentiebat quantum auctoritatis  
 having been known, he was perceiving how much (of) prestige  
 hostes consecuti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) apud eos  
 the enemy had obtained among them  
 uno proelio; quibus existimabat nihil<sup>24</sup>  
 by one battle; to whom he was judging nothing [not any]  
 spatii dandum ad capienda consilia.  
 of space [time] to [must] be given for taking counsels  
 His rebus constitutis, et consilio  
 These things having been determined, and (his) plan  
 communicato cum legatis et  
 having been communicated with [to] the lieutenants and

quæstore, opportunissima res accidit,  
the quæstor, a most advantageous thing [incident] occurred,

ne prætermittëret quem diem pugnæ, quòd  
that he might not omit any day of [for] a battle, because

manè postridie ejus diei, Germani  
in the morning the day after (of) this day, the Germans,

frequentes, usi et eadem perfidîa et  
in numbers, having used both the same treachery and

simulatione, omnibus principibus que  
pretence, all (their) chiefs and (those)

majoribus-natu adhibitis, venerunt ad  
greater by birth [the elders] having been brought, came to

ëum in castra (pl.); simul,<sup>25</sup> ut dicebatur,  
him into the camp; as well, as it was said,

causâ purgandi sibi, quòd commisissent  
for the sake of clearing themselves, because they had joined

(pl. perf. subj.) prælîum pridie, (contrâ<sup>26</sup> atque  
battle the day before, (contrary as

dictum-esset (pl. perf. subj.), et ipsi  
(it) had been said, and (they) themselves

petissent (pl. perf. subj.): simul ut impetrarent  
had requested): as that they might obtain

quid, si possent (imp. subj.), fallendo  
some (thing), if they could, by deceiving

de indutiis (pl.). Quos oblatos  
concerning the truce. (When) whom [they] (were) presented

sibi Cæsar gavisus,<sup>27</sup> jussit illos  
to himself Cæsar, having rejoiced, commanded them

retineri: ipse eduxit omnes copias  
to be detained: he himself led out all (his) forces

castris (pl.); jussit equitatum subsequi  
from the camp; he ordered the cavalry to follow near

agmen, quòd existimabat perterritum-  
the marching line, because he was thinking (it) to have [had]

esse recenti prælîo.  
been alarmed by the late battle.

14. Triplici acie institutâ, et itinere  
A tripple battle line having been arranged, and a march

octo	millium	confecto	celeriter,	pervenit
of eight	miles	having been completed	quickly,	he arrived
ad castra (pl.)	hostium,	prius quam	Germani	
at the camp	of the enemy,	before (that)	the Germans	
possent	sentire	quid	ageretur:	qui <sup>28</sup> per-
were able	to perceive	what	was transpiring:	who having
terrīti	subitō	omnibus	rebus,	et
been panicstricken	suddenly	by all	the things,	both
celeritate	nostri	adventus,	et	discessu
by the quickness	of our	arrival,	and	by the departure
suorum,	nēque	spatio <sup>29</sup>	dāto	
of their own (people),	neither	space [time]	having been given	
habendi,	consilii	nēque	capiendi	arma,
of having [forming].	a plan	nor	of taking	arms,
perturbantur,	ne	præstaret	educere	
are confused (as to)	whether	it would be better	to lead out	
copias	adversus	hostem,	an	defendere
(their) troops	against	the enemy,	or	to defend
castra,	an	peteret	salutem	fugā. Quum
the camp,	or	to seek	safety	by flight. When
quorum	timor <sup>30</sup>	significaretur (imp. subj.)	fremitu	
their	fear	was signified	by the noise	
et concursu,	nostri	milites	incitati	perfidia
and running,	our	soldiers	impelled	by the treachery
pristini	diei,	irruerunt	in castra (pl.):	in
of the former	day,	broke in	upon the camp	in
quo loco,	qui	potuerunt	capere	arma
which place,	(those) who	were able	to take	arms
celeriter,	restiterunt	nostris (dat.)	paulisper,	
quickly,	resisted	our (men)	a little while,	
atque	commiserunt	proelium	inter	
and	joined	battle	between [among]	
carros	que	impedimenta.	At	reliqua
the wagons	and	baggage.	But	the remaining
multitudo	puerorum	que	mulierum	(nam
multitude	of boys	and	(of) women	(for
excesserant	domo	cum	omnibus	suis
they had departed	from home	with	all	their

que transiērant Rhenum,) cœpit fugere  
 (people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee  
 passim, ad consecrandos quos Cæsar misit  
 everywhere, for pursuing whom Cæsar sent  
 equitatum.  
 the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post  
 The Germans, a shout having been heard behind [in]  
 tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) suos  
 the back [the rear], when they were beholding their  
 interfici, armis abjectis  
 (people) (to be) slaughtered, (their) arms having been cast away  
 que militariis signis relictis, ejecerunt  
 and the military standards having been left, hurled  
 se ex castris (pl.); et quum perven-  
 themselves from the camp; and when they had  
 issent (pl. perf. subj.) ad confluentem Mösæ  
 arrived at the junction of the Meuse  
 et Rheni, reliquâ fugâ des-  
 and (of) the Rhine, remaining [further] flight having  
 peratâ, magno numero interfecto,  
 been despaired of, a great number having been killed,  
 reliqui præcipitaverunt se in  
 the rest dashed themselves headlong into  
 flumen, atque oppressi ibi timore  
 the river, and having been overpowered there by fear  
 lassitudine et vi fluminis,  
 by weariness and by the force of the river,  
 periērunt. Omnes nostri incolūmes ad  
 they perished. All our (men) safe to  
 unum, perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt  
 one [to a man], very few having been wounded, betook  
 se in castris (pl.) ex timore  
 themselves into camp (freed) from the fear  
 tanti belli, quum numerus hostium fuisset  
 of so great a war, since the number of the enemy was  
 quadringentorum triginta millium capĭtum.  
 (of) four hundred thirty thousand of heads [souls].

Cæsar fecit potestem discedendi iis,  
 Cæsar made power [an opportunity] of departing to those,  
 quos retinuërat in castris (pl.). Illi ver-  
 whom he had detained in the camp. They having  
 iti supplicia que cruciatus Gallorum,  
 feared the punishments and tortures of the Gauls,  
 quorum agros vexaverant, dixerunt  
 whose lands they had harassed. said (that they)  
 se velle remanere apud eum. Cæsar  
 themselves (to) wish to remain at [with] him. Cæsar  
 concessit libertatem his.  
 granted the liberty [privilege] to them.

16. Germanico bello confecto, Cæsar de  
 The German war having been finished, Cæsar from  
 multis causis statuit Rhenum transeundum-esse  
 many causes resolved (that) the Rhine to [must] be crossed  
 sibi (dat.); quarum illa fuit justissima;<sup>31</sup>  
 by himself of which that [this] was the most just  
 quod, quum videret (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 [strongest] because, when he was seeing (that) the Germans  
 impelli tam facile, ut venirent  
 to be [were] incited [impelled] so easily, that they should come  
 in Galliam, voluit eos timere suis  
 into Gaul, he wished them to fear for their own  
 rebus quodque, quum intelligerent  
 things [possessions] also, when they should understand (that)  
 exercitum Romani populi et posse  
 the army of the Roman people both to be [was] able  
 et audere transire Rhenum. Accessit<sup>32</sup>  
 and to dare [dared] to cross the Rhine. It was added  
 etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum  
 also, that that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes  
 et Tencterorum, quam commemoravi supra  
 and of the Tencteri, which I have mentioned above  
 transisse Mosam causâ prædandi que  
 (to have) crossed the Meuse for the sake of plundering and  
 frumentandi, neque interfuisse prælio,  
 of providing corn, nor (to have) [had] been present to [at] the bat-

receperat se trans Rhenum, post  
 tle, had betaken itself across the Rhine, after  
 fugam suorum in fines Sugambrorum,  
 the flight of their own (people) into the borders of the Sugambri,  
 que conjunxerat se cum iis. Ad quos<sup>33</sup>  
 and had united itself with them. To whom  
 quum Cæsar misisset (pl. perf. subj.) nuncios, qui  
 when Cæsar had sent messengers, who  
 postularent, uti dedèrent sibi eos,  
 should demand, that they should surrender to himself those,  
 qui intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sibi  
 who had borne war to [on] himself  
 que Galliæ, responderunt: "Rhenum finire  
 and to [on] Gaul, they answered: "the Rhine to end [terminates]  
 imperium Romani populi: si existimaret<sup>34</sup>  
 the empire of the Roman people; if he should judge (it)  
 non æquum Germanos transire in Galliam,  
 not just (that) the Germans to [should] cross over into Gaul,  
 se invito, cur postuleret  
 he himself (being) unwilling, why should he require (that)  
 quidquam sui imperii aut potestatis esse  
 any of his empire or power to [should] be  
 trans Rhenum? Autem Ubii, qui uni ex  
 across the Rhine? But the Ubii, who one [alone] from [of]  
 Transrhenanis miserant legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 the Over-Rhine (nations) had sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 fecerant amicitiam, dedérant obsides, orbant  
 had made friendship, had given hostages, were praying  
 magnopere, ut ferret auxilium sibi,  
 very greatly, that he would bear aid to themselves,  
 quod premerentur (imp. subj.) graviter ab Suevis:  
 because they were oppressed grievously by the Suevi:  
 vel, si prohiberetur facere id occupationibus  
 or, if he should be hindered to [from] doing this by the engagements  
 rei publicæ, modò transportaret Rhenum  
 of the state, only (that) he would carry over the Rhine  
 exercitum: id futurum satis sibi  
 (his) army: that about to [would] be enough to themselves



ad auxiliū que spem reliqui temporis:  
for aid and hope of [for] the remaining time:

tantum esse nomen atque opinionem  
so great to be [is] the name and opinion [repute]

Romani exercitūs, Ariovisto pulso,<sup>35</sup>  
of a Roman army, Ariovistus having been routed,

et hoc novissīmo praelio facto,  
and this newest [last] battle having been done [fought],

etiā ad ultimas nationes Germanorum, ūti  
even to the remotest nations of the Germans, that

possint esse tuti opinione et  
they may be able to be safe by the opinion [repute] and

amicitiā Romani populi." Pollicebantur  
friendship of the Roman people." They were promising

magnam copiam navium ad transportandum  
a great supply of ships for transporting

exercitum.  
the army.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,  
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decreverat transire Rhenum: sed arbitrabatur  
had resolved to cross the Rhine: but he was judging (that)

nēque esse satis tutum transire navibus,  
neither (it) to be [was] sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

nēque statuebat esse suū  
nor was he considering (that) to be [it was] (worthy) of his own

dignitatis, nēque Romani populi: itaque,  
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people: therefore,

etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis  
although the highest [greatest] difficulty of making a bridge

proponēbatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem,  
was confronting (him), on account of the breadth, swiftness,

que altitudinem fluminis; tamen existimabat  
and depth of the river: yet he was thinking

id contendendum sibi, aut aliter  
this to [must] be attempted by himself, or otherwise

exercitum non transducendum. Igītur  
the army not to [must not] be led over. Therefore

instituit hanc rationem pontis. Jungebat  
 he formed this plan of the bridge. He was joining  
 bina sesquipedalia tigna, paulum præacuta  
 double [two] foot and half thick beams, a little sharp pointed  
 ab imo, dimensa ad  
 from [at] the lowest (part), measured to [according to]  
 altitudinem fluminis, intervallo duorum pedum  
 the depth of the river, with a distance of two feet  
 inter se: cum defixerat hæc  
 between themselves [them]; when he had fastened these  
 demissa in flumen machinationibus que adegerat  
 let down into the river by machines and had driven  
 fistucis, non directa ad perpendiculum  
 (them) with pile drivers, not straight to a perpendicular  
 modo sublicæ, sed prone ac fastigate,  
 in the manner of a pile, but inclining and sloping,  
 ut procumbèrent secundum naturam  
 that they might lean forward according to the nature [flow]  
 fluminis: statuebat item duo contraria  
 of the river: he was setting up also two (beams) opposite  
 his juncta ad eundem modum intervallo  
 (to) these joined to [after] the same manner with an interval  
 quadragenum pedum ab inferiore parte conversa  
 of forty feet from the lower part turned  
 contra vim atque impetum fluminis: utraque  
 against the force and pressure of the river: both  
 hæc distinebantur binis fibulis utrimque  
 these were separated by two clamps on either side  
 ab extremâ parte, bipedalibus trabibus  
 from [at] the extreme part [the top], two foot wide beams  
 immissis, quantum junctura eorum  
 having been let in (to them), as much as the joint of these  
 tignorum distabat: quibus<sup>36</sup> disclusis,  
 beams was apart: which having been separated,  
 atque revinctis in contrariam partem  
 and having been fastened on the opposite part [side]  
 tanta erat firmitudo operis, atque ea  
 so great was the firmness of the work, and this [such]

natura rerum, ut quò-major vis  
the nature of the things [parts], that the greater the force

āquæ incitavisset se, hōc arctiūs  
of the water roused itself [increased], so much the more closely

tenerentur (imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directa  
they were kept fastened: these laid straight

contexebantur materiā injectā,  
were interwoven with material [timber] thrown on (them),

ac consternebante longuriis que cratibus:  
and were strewed with long poles and hurdles:

ac nihilo seciūs subliçæ adigebantur obliquè  
and in no wise [likewise] piles were driven obliquely

ad inferiorem partem fluminis,<sup>87</sup> quæ sub-  
at the lower part of the river, which having been

jectæ pro pariète, et conjunctæ cum  
put below for [as] a wall, and united with

omni opère, excipèrent vim fluminis:  
all the work, [would] receive the force of the river:

et item aliæ mediocri spatîo supra  
and also other (piles) at a moderate distance above

pontem, ut si trunci arbōrum sive naves  
the bridge, so that if trunks of trees or ships

essent missæ à barbāris, causâ  
should be sent by the barbarians, for the sake

dejiciendi, opëris vis earum rerum  
of casting down, the work the force of these things

minueretur his defensoribus, neu  
would be diminished by these defenses, nor

nocerent ponti (dat).  
would they injure the bridge.

18. Omni opère effecto decem  
All the work having been completed in ten

diebus, quibus materiā coëpta-erat comportari,  
days, in which the material had been begun to be gathered.

exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, firmo præsidio  
the army is led over. Cæsar, a strong guard

relicto ad utramque partem pontis,  
having been left at each part [end] of the bridge.

contendit in fines Sugambrorum. Intērim  
 hastened into the territories of the Sugambri. Meantime  
 legati à compluribus civitatibus veniunt  
 ambassadors from very many states come  
 ad eum, quibus petentibus pacem atque  
 to him, to whom seeking peace and  
 amicitiam respondit liberaliter, que jubet obsides  
 friendship he answered generously, and orders hostages  
 adduci ad se. Sugambri, ex eo  
 to be brought to himself. The Sugambri, from this [that]  
 tempore, quod pons coeptus-est institui,  
 time, in which the bridge was begun to be built,  
 fugā comparatā, iis hortantibus,  
 flight having been prepared, these exhorting (them),  
 quos habebant ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus  
 whom they were having from the Tencteri and Usipetes  
 apud se, excesserant suis finibus,  
 at [among] themselves, had departed from their territories,  
 que exportaverant omnia sua, que  
 and had carried away all their (effects), and  
 abdidērant se in solitudinem ac  
 had concealed themselves in the desert and  
 silvas.  
 woods.

19. Cæsar moratus paucos dies in eorum  
 Cæsar having delayed a few days in their  
 finibus omnibus vicis que ædificiis  
 territories all the villages and buildings  
 incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succisis,  
 having been burned, and the corn (having been) cut down.  
 recepit se in fines Ubiorum; atque  
 betook himself into the territories of the Ubii; and  
 pollicitus suum auxilium his, si preme-  
 having promised his aid to them, if they should  
 rentur à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab  
 be oppressed by the Suevi, he learned these (things) from  
 iis; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pl. perf.  
 them; (that) the Suevi, after (that) they had found

subj.)	per	exploratores	pontem	fieri,
	by	spies (that)	a bridge	to be [was] made,
concilio	habito,	suo	more,	dimisis-
a council	having been held,	in their	manner,	to have [had]
se	nuntios	in	omnes partes,	ut demig-
sent	messengers	into	all parts,	that they might
rarent	de	oppidis,	deponerent	liberos,
emigrate	from	the towns,	might deposit	(their) children,
uxores,	que	omnia	sua	in silvas,
wives,	and	all	their (effects)	into [in] the woods,
atque	omnes,	qui	possent	ferre arma,
and	all,	who	were able	to bear arms
convenirent	in	unum	locum:	hunc
should assemble	into [in]	one	place:	(that) this (place)
delectum-esse		fere	medium	earum
to have [had] been chosen		nearly	the middle	of these
regionum,	quas	Suevi	obtinerent (imp. subj.):	
countries,	which	the Suevi	were possessing:	(that)
expectare	hic	adventum	Romanorum,	atque
to [they] await	here	the approach	of the Romans,	and
constituisse		decertare	ibi.	Quod ubi
to have [had] resolved		to fight	there.	Which when
Cæsar	compertit,	omnibus	his	rebus
Cæsar	discovered,	all	these	things [matters]
confectis,		causa	quarum	rerum con-
having been completed		for the sake	of which	things he had
stituërat	transducere	exercitum,	ut	injeceret
resolved	to lead over	(his) army,	that	he might arouse
metum	Germanis,	ut	ulcisceretur	
fear	to [in] the Germans,	that	he might punish	
Sugambros,	ut	liberaret	Ubios	obsidione,
the Sugambri,	that	he might deliver	the Ubii	from a blockade,
octodécim	diebus	omnino	consumptis	trans
eighteen	days	altogether	being spent	across
Rhenum,	arbitratus		profectum (esse)	
the Rhine,	having thought (that)		to have [he had] accomplished	
satis	et	ad	laudem	et ad
enough	both	to [for]	praise	and to [for]

utilitatem, receipt se in Galliam que  
 advantage [utility], he betook himself into Gaul and  
 rescidit pontem.  
 cut down the bridge.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ,  
 A small part of the summer having been left,  
 Cæsar, etsi hiemes in his locis sunt  
 Cæsar, although the winters in these places are  
 maturæ, (quod omnis Gallia vergit ad  
 early, (because all Gaul lies to  
 Septentrionem), tamen contendit proficisci in  
 the North), yet hastened to set out into

Britanniâ; quod intelligebat auxilia  
 Britain; because he was understanding (that) auxiliaries  
 subministrata (esse) inde nostris hostibus,  
 to have [had] been supplied from there to our enemies,

fere omnibus Gallicis bellis: et, si tempus  
 in nearly all the Gallic wars: and, if the time  
 anni deficeret ad gerendum bellum; tamen  
 of the year should fail to carry on war; yet

arbitrabatur fore magno usui  
 he was thinking (it) to be about to [would] be for [of] great use [ad-  
 vantage] to himself, if only he should visit the island,

perspexisset genus hominum, cognovisset loca,  
 should observe the kind of men, should learn the places,

portus, aditus: quæ fere omnia erant  
 harbors, approaches; which nearly all were

incognita Gallis. Enim neque quisquam adit  
 unknown to the Gauls. For neither any one goes

illò temerè præter mercatores; neque est  
 thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum his ipsis, præter  
 any (thing) known to these themselves, except

maritimam oram, atque eas regiones, quæ  
 the maritime coast, and these countries, which

sunt contra Galliam. Itaque, mercatoribus  
 are opposite Gaul. Therefore, the merchants

convocatis	undique	ad	se,		
having been called together	from every side	to	himself,		
poterat	reperire	nēque	quanta	esset	
he was able	to find	neither	how great	might be	
magnitudo	insulæ,	nēque	quæ	aut	quantæ
the size	of the island,	nor	what	or	how great
nationes	incolērent,	nēque	quem	usum	
nations	might inhabit (it),	nor	what	method	
belli	haberent,	aut	quibus (abl.)	institutis	
of warfare	they might have,	or	what	customs	
uterentur,	nēque	qui	portus	essent	idonēi
they might use,	nor	what	harbors	might be	suitable
ad multitudinem	majorum	navium.			
for a number	of the larger	ships.			
21. Arbitratus	esse	idonēum,	prīus	quām	
Having thought (it)	to be [was]	proper,	before	(that)	
faceret	periculum,	præmittit	Caïum		
he should make	the trial,	he sends before (him)	Caius		
Volusenum	cum	longâ	navi,	ad	
Volusenus	with	a long	ship [war ship],	for	
cognoscenda	hæc.	Mandat	huic (dat.)	ut,	
ascertaining	these (things).	He charges	him	that.	
omnibus	rebus	exploratis,	revertatur		
all	things	having been reconnoitered,	he should return		
ad se	quam	primū.	Ipse	proficiscitur	
to himself	as soon	as possible.	He himself	sets out	
cum omnibus	copiis	in	Morīnos,	quod	
with	all	(his) forces	into the Morini,	because	
trajectus	inde	in Britanniam	erat	brevissimus.	
the passage	from there	into Britain	was	the shortest.	
Jūbet	naves	convenire	huc	undique	ex
He orders	ships	to assemble	hither	from everywhere	from
finitimis	regionibus,	et	classem,	quam	
the neighboring	countries,	and	the fleet,	which	
fecerat	ad	Veneticum	bellum	superiore	
he had made	for	the Venetian	war	in the preceding	
æstate.	Intērim	ejus consilio	cognito,		
summer.	Meantime	his design	having been known [learned].		





non auderet egredi navi, ac  
 might not dare to disembark from the ship, and  
 committere se barbāris, revertitur quinto  
 to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns on the fifth  
 die ad Cæsārem, que renuntiat quæ  
 day to Cæsar, and announces what (things)  
 perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) ibi.  
 he had discovered there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his locis  
 While Cæsar delays in these places  
 causâ parandarum navium, legati venerunt  
 for the sake of preparing ships, ambassadors came  
 ad eum ex magnâ parte Morinorum, que  
 to him from a great part of the Morini, who  
 excusarent se de consilio<sup>39</sup> superioris  
 excused themselves concerning the design of the former  
 temporis; quod barbāri homines que  
 time; because (being) barbarous men and  
 imperiti nostræ consuetudinis (gen.), fecis-  
 unacquainted with our custom, they had  
 sent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum Romano populo;  
 made war [on] the Roman people;  
 que pollicerentur se facturos  
 and promised (that they) themselves about to [would] do  
 ea, quæ imperâset. Cæsar arbitratus  
 these (things), which he commanded. Cæsar having thought  
 hoc accidisse opportunè satis sibi;  
 this to have [had] happened conveniently enough for himself;  
 quod volebat nēque relinquere hostem  
 because he was wishing neither to leave an enemy  
 post tergum, nēque habebat facultatem  
 behind (his) back, nor was he having the means  
 gerendi belli propter tempus anni;  
 of carrying on war on account of the time of the year;  
 nēque judicabat has occupationes tan-  
 nor was he judging (that) these engagements of so  
 tularum rerum anteponendas sibi (dat.)  
 trifling things [matters] to [should] be preferred by himself

Britannîæ: impërat his magnum numërum  
 to Britain: he demands from them a great number  
 obsïdum. Quïbus<sup>40</sup> adductis, recepit ðos  
 of hostages. Whom having been brought, he received them  
 in fidem. Circïter octoginta onerariïis  
 into allegiance. About eighty burden [transport]  
 navïbus coactis que contractis,  
 ships having been collected and brought together,  
 quot existimabat esse sâtis ad  
 as many as he was thinking to be [was] sufficient for  
 transportandas dŭas legiones, distribŭit quæs-  
 transporting two legions, he distributed to the  
 tori, legatis que præfectis quod  
 quæstor, to the lieutenants and perfects what(ever)  
 longarum navïum præterëa habebat: huc  
 (of) long ships [war ships] besides he was having: hither  
 accedebant octodëcim onerariæ naves,  
 [to these] were added eighteen burden [transport] ships,  
 quas tenebantur vento octo millibus  
 which were detained by the wind eight thousand  
 passŭum ex ðo lŏco, quò mīnŭs possent  
 (of) paces from this place, that they were the less [not] able  
 pervenire in eundem portum. distribŭit  
 to arrive into [at] the same harbor: he distributed  
 has equitibus; dedit reliquum exercitum  
 these to the horsemen; he gave the rest of the army  
 Quinto Tituriŏ Sabino, et Lucŏ Aurunculeŏ  
 to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius  
 Cottæ, legatis, deducendum in Menapiŏs  
 Cotta, (his) lieutenants. to be led down into the Menapii  
 atque in ðos pagos Morinorum, ab  
 and into these cantons of the Morini, from;  
 quibus legati non venërant ad ðum;  
 which ambassadors had not come to him;  
 jussit Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum  
 he ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant  
 tenere portum cum ðo præsidŏ,  
 to hold the harbor with this guard,

quod	arbitrabatur	esse	sătis.
which	he was thinking	to be [was]	sufficient.

23. His rebus constitutis, nactus idoneam  
 These things having been arranged, having got suitable

tempestatem	navigandum,	solvit	fērē
weather	for sailing,	he cast loose	nearly

tertîa	vigiliâ,	que	jussit	equites	progrēdi
at the third	watch,	and	commanded	the cavalry	to proceed

in	ulteriorem	portum,	et	conscendēre	naves,
to	the farther	harbor,	and	to board	the ships,

ac	sēqui	se:	ab	quībus <sup>41</sup>	cūm	adminis-
and	to follow	himself:	by	whom	when	it had been

tratum-esset (pl. perf. subj)	paulò	tardīus,
performed	a little	more slowly

ipse	attigit	Britanniā	cum	primis
(he) himself	touched [reached]	Britain	with	the first

navibus	circiter	quartâ	horâ (abl.)	diei:	atque
ships	about	the fourth	hour	of the day:	and

ibi	conspexit	copias	hostium	armatas,
there	he beheld	the forces	of the enemy	armed,

expositas	in	omnibus	collibus.	Cujus	lōci
drawn up	on	all	the hills.	Of which	place

hæc	erat	natura:	māre	continebatur
this	was	the nature:	the sea	was bounded

montibus	ita	anguste,	ut	telum	posset
by heights	so	closely,	that	a weapon	might be able

	adjici	ex	superioribus	lōcis	in
[could]	(to) be cast	from	the higher	places	upon

littus.	Arbitratus	hunc	lōcum	nequaquam
the shore.	Having thought	this	place	by no means

idoneum	ad egrediendum	expectavit	in	anchōri
suitable	for disembarking	he waited	in [at]	anchor

(pl.)	ad	nonam	horam,	dum	reliquæ
	to	the ninth	hour,	until	the remaining

naves	convenirent	ēd.	Intērim	legatis
ships	should assemble	there.	Meantime	the lieutenants

que	tribunis	milītum	convocatis,
and	tribunes	of soldiers	having been called together,

ostendit he showed (them)	et both	quæ what (things)	cognovisset (pl. perf.) he had learned		
subj.)	ex from	Voluseno, Volusenus,	et and	quæ what	vellet he wished
fieri: to be done:	que and	monuit he warned (that)	omnes all	res things	
administrarentur should be managed	ab by	his them	ad at	nutum the nod	et and
tempus time	ut as	ratio <sup>42</sup> the method	militaris of military	rēi (sing), affairs,	ad to [on]
maximè (and) especially	ut as	maritimæ maritime	res affairs	postularent were demanding,	
(imp. subj.),	(ut (as	quæ which [they]	haberent (imp. subj.) were having		
celèrem a quick	atque and	instabilem unsteady	motum.) movement.)	His These	
dimissis, having been dismissed,	et and	nactus having got	et both	secundum a favorable	
ventum wind	et and	æstum tide	uno at one	tempore, time,	signo a signal
dāto, having been given,	et and	anchōris the anchors	sublatis, having been taken up		
[weighed],	progressus having advanced	circiter about	octo eight	millia thousand	
passum (of) paces	ab from	hō loco, this place,	constituit he stood [stationed]	naves the ships	
aperto against an open	ac and	plano level	littore. shore.		
24. At But	barbāri, the barbarians,	consilio the design	Romanorum of the Romans		
cognito, having been known.	equitatu the cavalry	præmisso, having been sent before,	et and		
essedariis; the charioteers;	quo which	genere (abl.) kind [means]	consueverunt they have been accustomed		
plerumque generally	uti to use	in in	prœliis, battles,	subsecuti having followed near	
reliquis with the rest of	copiis, (their) forces,	prohibebant they were hindering	nostros our (men)		

egrēdi                      navibus.                      Erat  
 to come out [from disembarking]      from the ships.      (There) was  
 summa                      difficultas ob has causas, quōd  
 the highest [greatest] difficulty      for these reasons, because  
 naves,                      propter                      magnitudinem non poterant  
 the ships,      on account of      (their) size      were not able  
 constitūti                      nisi in alto:                      autem et erat  
 to be stationed      unless in the deep:      moreover both it was  
                     desiliendum<sup>43</sup>                      simul                      de navibus,  
 to [it must] be leaped down      at the same time      from the ships,  
 et consistendum                      fluctibus, et pugnandum  
 and to [must] be stood      in the waves, and to [must] be fought  
 cum hostibus                      militibus,                      ignotis locis,  
 with the enemy      by the soldiers,      in unknown places,  
 impeditis                      manibus,                      pressis magno et  
 with encumbered      hands,      oppressed with a great and  
 grāvi onēre armorum; quum illi<sup>44</sup>                      conicerent (imp.  
 heavy load of arms: while they were hurling  
 subj.) tela audacter aut ex arido aut  
                     weapons boldly either from dry (ground) or  
 progressi paulum in aquam,                      expediti  
 having advanced a little into the water,      unencumbered  
 omnibus                      membris,                      notissimis locis, et  
 in all (their) limbs,      in very well known places, and  
 incitarent (imp. subj.)                      equos                      insuefactos.  
 were urging on      the horses      accustomed to (it).  
 Quibus rebus nostri                      perterriti,                      atque  
 By which things our (men)      being dismayed,      and  
 imperiti omnino hujus generis pugnae, omnes  
 unskilled altogether of [in] this kind of battle, all  
 nitebantur non eadem alacritate ac studio,  
 were striving not with the same eagerness and zeal,  
 (abl.), quo (abl.)                      consueverant                      uti in  
                     which                      they had been accustomed      to use in  
 pedestribus proelis.  
 infantry battles.  
 25. Quod<sup>45</sup> ubi Cæsar                      animadvertit,                      jussit  
 Which when Cæsar                      perceived,                      he ordered

longas naves species quarum et  
 the long ships [war ships], the appearance of which both  
 erat inusitator barbâris, et motus  
 was more unusual to the barbarians, and the motion  
 expeditior ad usum, removeri paulum ab  
 more easily for use, to be removed a little from  
 onerariis navibus, et incitari  
 the burden [transport] ships, and to be impelled  
 remis, et constitui ad apertum latus  
 with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank  
 hostium, atque hostes propelli ac  
 of the enemy, and the enemy to be repulsed and  
 submoveri inde fundis, tormentis,  
 to be removed from there by slings, shooting engines,  
 sagittis; quæ res fuit magno usui  
 arrows; which thing [means] was for [of] great use  
 nostris. Nam barbâri permoti et  
 to our (men). For the barbarians much alarmed both  
 figurâ navium, et motu remorum,  
 by the shape of the ships, and by the motion of the oars,  
 et inusitato genere tormentorum, constit-  
 and by the unusual kind of the shooting engines, halt-  
 erunt, ac retulerunt pædem paulum. Ac,  
 ed, and retraced (their) foot [steps] a little. And,  
 nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter  
 our soldiers delaying, chiefly on account of  
 altitudinem maris, qui ferebat aquilam  
 the depth of the sea, (he) who was bearing the eagle  
 decimæ legionis, obtestatus deos, ut ea  
 of the tenth legion, having implored the gods, that this  
 res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,  
 thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,  
 "Desilite, commilitones, nisi vultis prodere  
 "Jump down! fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray  
 aquilam hostibus; ego certè præstitero  
 the eagle to the enemy; I certainly shall have performed  
 meum officium rei publicæ atque Imperatori."  
 my duty to the republic and to (my) Commander."

Quum dixisset (pl. perf. subj.) hoc magnâ  
When he had said this with a great [loud]

voce, projecit se ex navi, atque  
voice. he cast himself (forth) from the ship, and

coepit ferre aquilam in hostes. Tum  
began to bear the eagle against the enemy. Then

nostri cohortati inter se,  
our (men) having encouraged among themselves [each other],

universi desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum  
every one leaped down from the ship, lest so great

dedecus admitteretur. Quum alii item ex  
a disgrace should be allowed. When others also from

proximis navibus conspexissent (pl. perf. subj.) hos,  
the nearest ships beheld these,

subsecuti appropinquârunt hostibus (dat.).  
having followed close they approached the enemy.

26. Pugnatum-est<sup>46</sup> acriter ab utrisque (plur.)  
It was fought vigorously by each

Tâmen nostri perturbabantur magnopere, quod  
However our (men) were disordered [confused] very greatly, because

poterant neque servare ordines, neque  
they were able neither to keep (their) ranks, nor

insistere firmiter, neque subsequi signa,  
to stand firmly, nor to follow the standards (closely),

atque alius ex alia navi  
and one from one (another from another) ship

aggregabat se quibuscumque signis occurreret.  
was attaching himself to whatever standards he should meet.

Verò hostes, omnibus vadis notis,  
But the enemy, all the shallows having been [being] known,

ubi conspexerant ex littore aliquos  
when they had beheld from the shore some

egredientes singulares ex navi, equis  
coming out single [singly] from a ship, (their) horses

incitatis, adoriebantur impeditos.  
(having been) urged on, were attacking (them) encumbered.

Plures circumstebant paucos: alii  
More [several] were surrounding a few: others

conjiciebant tela in universos ab aperto  
 were hurling (their) weapons upon the whole [the mass] from the open  
 latère. Quod quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl.  
 flank Which when Cæsar had observed,  
 perf. subj.), jussit scāphas longarum navium,  
 he ordered the skiffs of the long ships,  
 [war ships], item speculatoria-navigia compleri  
 likewise the spy-boats to be filled  
 militibus; et submittebat subsidia his,  
 with soldiers, and he was sending aid to these,  
 quos conspexerat laborantes. Nostri simul-  
 whom he had beheld laboring. Our (men) as soon  
 atque constiterunt in arido, omnibus  
 as they stood on dry (ground), all  
 suis consecutis, fecerunt impetum  
 their (comrades) having followed, made a charge  
 in hostes, atque dederunt eos in  
 upon the enemy, and gave [put] them to  
 fugam: neque potuerunt prossequi longius  
 flight: nor were they able to pursue rather far  
 quod equites non potuerant tenere  
 because the horsemen had not been able to hold  
 cursum, atque capere insulam. Hoc  
 (their) course, and to take [reach] the island. This  
 unum defuit Cæsari ad pristinam  
 one (thing) was wanting to Cæsar for (his) former  
 fortunam.  
 good fortune.

27. Hostes, superati prælio,  
 The enemy, having been overcome in the battle.  
 miserunt statim legatos ad Cæsarem de  
 sent immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about  
 pace, simul-atque receperunt se ex  
 peace, as soon as they recovered themselves from  
 fugâ; polliciti-sunt sese daturos  
 flight; they promised (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, que facturos quæ imperâset.  
 hostages, and about to [would] do what he might command.



Commiſus      Atrēbas      venit      unā      cum      his  
 Commius      the Atrebatian      came      together      with      these  
 legatis, quem demonstravēram suprā præmiss-  
 ambassadors. whom I had shown above to have [had]  
 um (-esse) in Britanniam: illi comprehendērant  
 been sent before into Britain: they had seized  
 hunc egressum è navi, quum deferret  
 him having disembarked from the ships, when he was bearing,  
 (imp. subj.) modo oratoris mandata  
                          in the character of an envoy, the commands  
 Cæsaris ad eos, atque conjecerant in  
 of Cæsar to them, and had thrown (him) into  
 vincula. Tum prœlio facto,  
 chains. Then the battle having been done [fought],  
 remiserunt et in petenda pace contulerunt  
 they sent (him) back and in seeking peace they laid  
 culpam ejus rei in multitudinem, et  
 the blame of this thing upon the multitude, and  
 petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter  
          sought, that it might be pardoned on account of  
 imprudentiam. Cæsar questus quòd quum  
          ignorance. Cæsar, having complained that when  
          petissent (pl. perf. subj.) pacem à se,  
 they had sought peace from himself,  
 legatis missis ultrò in continentem,  
 ambassadors having been sent voluntarily into [to] the continent,  
 intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sine causâ,  
 they had waged war without cause,  
 dixit ignoscere imprudentiâ,<sup>47</sup> que  
          said to [he would] pardon (their) indiscretion, and  
 imperavit obsides: partem quorum illi dederunt  
 demanded hostages: part of whom they gave  
 statim: dixerunt sese daturos  
 immediately: they said (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 paucis diebus partem arcessitam ex longinqui-  
 in a few days a part sent for from more  
 oribus locis. Interëa jusserunt suos  
 distant places. Meantime they ordered their (people)

remigrare in agros; que principes  
to return into [to] the lands [country]; and the chiefs  
cœperunt convenêre undique et commendâre  
began to assemble from every side and to recommend  
se que suas civitates Cæsari.  
themselves and their states to Cæsar.

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus,  
Peace having been established by these things,

octodêcim naves de quibus demonstratum-est  
the eighteen ships concerning which it had been shown

suprà, quæ sustulêrant equites, solverunt  
above, which had taken up [embarked] the cavalry, cast loose

ex superiore portu leni vento, quar-  
from the upper harbor with a gentle wind, the

tum dîem post<sup>48</sup> quàm ventum-est in  
fourth day after that it was come [they came] into

Britanniâ: quum quæ appropinquarent  
Britain: when which [these] were approaching

(imp. subj.) Britannæ (dat), et viderentur (imp.  
Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas  
from the camp, so great a storm

subitò coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp.  
suddenly arose, that no one of them was able

subj.) tenere cursum, sed aliæ referrentur  
to hold the course, but some were carried back

(imp. subj.) eodem unde profectæ érant;  
to the same (place) whence they had set out;

aliæ dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem  
others were cast down [driven] to the lower

partem insulæ, quæ est propius occasum  
part of the island, which is nearer the setting

solis cum suo magno pericûlo quæ<sup>49</sup>  
of the sun [the west] with their great danger which [they]

tâmen, ânchôris jactis, cùm complerentur  
however, anchors having been cast, when they were filled

(imp. subj.) fluctibus, propectæ necessariò  
with the waves, having been borne out necessarily

in altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt  
 into the deep in an unfavorable night, they sought  
 continentem.  
 the continent.

29. Accidit eâdem nocte, ut luna  
 It happened in the same night, that the moon  
 esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dñes con-  
 was full, which day has been

suevit efficere maximos maritimos æstus  
 accustomed to produce the greatest maritime tides

in oceáno; que id erat incognitum nostris.  
 in the ocean; and this was unknown to our

Ita æstus complebat uno tempore  
 (men). Thus the tide was filling at one time

et longas naves, (quibus<sup>50</sup> Cæsar  
 both the long ships [war ships], (in which Cæsar

curaverat exercitum transportandum)  
 had taken care (that) the army to [should] be carried over)

quas Cæsar subduxerat in aridum; et  
 which Cæsar had drawn up on dry (ground); and

tempestas afflictabat onerarias, quæ deligatæ-  
 the storm was shattering the transports, which had been

erant ad anchōras (pl.): nēque ulla facultas  
 fastened at anchor nor any opportunity

aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur  
 either of managing or of aiding was given

nostris. Compluribus navibus fractis,  
 to our (men). Very many ships having been broken

quum reliquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutiles  
 [wrecked], since the rest were useless

ad navigandum, funibus, anchōris, que  
 for sailing, ropes [cables], anchors, and

reliquis armamentis (pl.) amissis, magna  
 the remaining rigging having been lost, a great

perturbatio totius exercitûs facta-est, (id  
 alarm of the whole army was occasioned, (this

quod erat necesse accidere). Enim nēque  
 which was inevitable to happen). For neither

ĕrant            aliæ    naves,    quibus    possent (imp.  
 were (there)   other   ships,   by which   they were able  
 subj.)   reportari;   et   omnia<sup>51</sup>   deĕrant,  
                  to be carried back;   and   all (things)   were wanting,  
 quæ   essent   usui   ad   reficiendas;   naves  
 which   would be   for [of] use   for   repairing;   ships  
 et   quòd   constabat   omnibus   oportere  
 and   because   it was evident   to all   (it) to be [was] expedient  
 hiemare   in   Gallia,   frumentum   non   provisum  
 to winter   in   Gaul,   corn   had not   been  
 ĕrat   in   his   locis   in   hiemem.  
 provided   in   these   places   against   the winter.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britannia,  
       Which things having been known, the chiefs of Britain,  
 qui post proelium convenĕrant ad Cæsarem<sup>52</sup>  
 who after the battle had come together to Cæsar

collocuti inter se; quum intelligĕrent  
 having conferred among themselves; when they were understanding  
 (imp. subj.) ĕquites, et naves et frumentum  
                  (that) horsemen, and ships and corn

deesse            Romanis,    et   cognoscĕrent (imp.  
 to be [were] wanting   to the Romans,   and   were ascertaining

subj.) paucitatem nostrorum militum ex exiguitate  
                  the fewness   of our   soldiers   from the smallness

castrorum (pl.); quæ etiā ĕrant (pl.) angustiora  
 of the camp;   which   also   was   more narrow

hōc,            quòd            Cæsar            transportavĕrat  
 from this fact,   because   Cæsar   had brought over

legiones sĕne impedimentis; duxerunt esse  
 the legions without baggage; considered (this) to be [was]

optĭmum factu, rebellione factā, prohibere  
 best   to be done,   a revolt   having been made,   to prevent

nostros frumento que commeatu, et producĕre  
 our (men)   from corn   and   provisions,   and   to prolong

rem            in   hiemem; quòd his superatis  
 the thing [campaign] into the winter; because these having been

aut interclusis reditu, confidebant  
 overcome, or   intercepted from a return   they were trusting (that)

nemīnem no one	postēa afterwards	transiturum about to [would] cross over	in into	
Britanniām Britain	causā for the sake	inferendi of waging	belli. war.	Itaque, Therefore,
conjuratiōe a conspiracy	factā having been made	rursus, again,	cōeperunt they began	
discedere to depart	paulatim little by little	ex from	castris (pl.), the camp,	ac and
deducere to lead out	clam secretly	sūos their (men)	ex from	agris. the fields.
31. At But	Cæsar, Cæsar,	etsi although	nondum, he had not yet,	cognovērat known
eorum their	consiliā plans	tāmen however	suspiciabatur he was suspecting	id (that) this
fōre, to be about to [would] be,	quod which	accidit, happened,	et both	ex eventu from the fate
suarum of his	navium, ships,	et and	ex from	eo, this (fact),
intermisērunt they had omitted [failed]	dare to give	obsides. hostages.	Itaque Therefore	
comparabat he was preparing	subsidiā (pl.) aid [remedies]	ad for	omnes all	casus: crises:
nam et for both	conferebat he was bringing	frumentum corn	quotidiē daily	ex from
agris the fields	in into	castra; (pl.) the camp;	et and	utebatur was using
materiā the material	(abl.) [timber]	atque and	ære earum copper of these	naves, quæ ships, which
afflictæ had been	erant shattered	gravissimē, most severely [seriously],	ad for	reficiendas repairing
reliquas the rest	et and	jubebat was ordering	comportari to be brought	ex from
continenti, the continent,	quæ what	erant were	usui for [of] use	ad for
res. things.	Itaque, Therefore	et these	res. things.	
quum since	id this	administraretur (imp. subj.) was performed	summo with the highest	
studio [greatest]	à zeal	militibus, the soldiers,	duodecim twelve	navibus ships



se subsēqui confestim. Quum proces-  
to follow himself closely immediately. When he had  
sisset (pl. perf. subj.) paulò longiùs à castris  
advanced a little farther from the camp,

(pl.), animadvertit sūos prēmi  
he perceived (that) his own (men) to be [were] pressed

ab hostībus, atque ægrè sustinere, et  
by the enemy, and hardly (to) withstand, and

legione confertā, tela  
the legion having been crowded together, (that) weapons

conjīci ex omnibus partibus. Nam,  
to be [were] thrown from all parts [sides]. For,

quòd omni frumento demesso ex  
because all the corn having been cut down [reaped] from

reliquis partibus, una pars erat reliqua,  
the remaining parts, one part was left,

hostes, suspicati nostros esse  
the enemy, having suspected (that) our (men) to be [were]

venturos huc, delituērant noctu in silvis.  
about to come hither, had lurked by night in the woods.

Tum subitò adorti dispersos,  
Then suddenly having attacked (them) dispersed,

occupatos in metendo, armis depositis,  
engaged in reaping, (their) arms having been laid aside,

paucis interfectis, perturbavērant reliquos  
a few having been slain, they had disordered the rest

incertis ordinibus; sīmul circum-  
in uncertain [confused] ranks; at the same time they had

dedērant equitatu atque essēdis.  
surrounded (them) with cavalry and with chariots.

33. Hoc est gēnus pugnæ ex essēdis:  
This is the kind of battle from the chariots.

primò, perequitant per omnes partes, et  
first, they ride through all parts, and

conjiçunt tela: atque perturbant<sup>54</sup> ordīnes  
hurl (their) weapons: and they disorder the ranks

plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et  
generally by the terror itself of the horses. and

strepĭtu      rotarum:      et      quum      insinuavĕre  
 rattling      of the wheels:      and      when      they have introduced  
  
         se      inter      turmas      equĭtum,      desiliunt  
 themselves      among      the troops      of the horse-men,      they leap down  
  
 ex      essĕdis      et      praeliantur<sup>55</sup>      pedĭbus.  
 from      the chariots      and      fight      on feet [on foot].  
  
 Intĕrim      aurigæ      excedunt      paulum      ĕ  
 Meantime      the charioters      retire      a little      from  
  
 praelio,      atque      collocant      se      ita,      ut      si  
 the battle,      and      place      themselves      so,      that      if  
  
 illi      premantur      à      multitudĭne      hostĭum,      hab-  
 those      are pressed      by      the multitude      of the enemy,      they  
  
 eant      expeditum      receptum      ad      suos.      Ita  
 may have      an unhindered      retreat      to      their own (men).      Thus  
  
 præstant      mobilitatem      equĭtum,      stabilitem  
 they display      the activity      of cavalry,      the steadiness  
  
 pedĭtum      in      praeliis;      ac      efficiunt      tantum  
 of infantry      in      battles;      and      they accomplish      so much  
  
 quotidiano      usu      et      exercitatione,      ut      con-  
 by daily      practice      and      exercise,      that      they have  
  
 suevĕrint (perf. subj.)      in      declivi      ac      præcipiti  
 been accustomed      in      a sloping      and      steep  
  
 loco,      sustinere      ĕquos      incĭtatos,      et      moderari  
 place,      to rein in      (their) horses      spurred on,      and      to control  
  
 ac      flectĕre      brĕvi,      et      percurrĕre  
 and      (to) turn (them)      shortly [sharply],      and      to run along  
  
 per      temonem,      et      insistĕre      in      iugo,  
 though [on]      the pole,      and      to stand      on      the yoke,  
  
 et      recipĕre      se      inde      citissimè      in  
 and      to betake      themselves      thence      most quickly      into  
  
 currus.  
 the chariots.

34. Nostris      perturbatis      quĭbus  
         To our (men)      having been disordered      by which [these]

rebus,      novitate      pugnae,      Cæsar      tulit  
 things,      by the novelty [strangeness]      of the battle,      Cæsar      brought  
  
 auxilium      opportunissimo      tempore: namque      hostes  
         aid      at a most seasonable      time:      for      the enemy



constiterunt	ejus,	adventu	nostri	receperunt	
halted	on his,	arrival	our (men)	recovered	
se	ex	timore.	Quo	facto,	
themselves	from	fear.	Which	having been done,	
arbitratus <sup>56</sup>	tempus	esse	alienum	ad	
having thought	the time	to be [was]	improper	for	
laceddendum	hostem	et	committendum	prœlium,	
attacking	the enemy	and	for engaging in	battle,	
continuit	se	suo	loco;	et	breui
he kept	himself	in his own	place;	and	a short
tempore	intermisso, <sup>57</sup>	reduxit	legiones		
time	having been passed [spent],	he led back	the legions		
in castra.	Dum hæc	geruntur,	omnibus		
into the camp.	While these (things)	are passing,	all		
nostris	occupatis,	qui erant	in agris		
our (men)	having been engaged,	who were	in the fields		
reliqui <sup>58</sup>	discesserunt.	Tempestates	secutæ-sunt		
the rest	departed.	Storms	followed		
complures	continuos dies,	quæ et	continere		
many	successive days,	which both	were restraining		
(imp. subj.)	nostros	in castris (pl.),	et prohib.		
	our (men) in	camp,	and were.		
erent (imp. subj.)	hostem	à pugnâ.	Intërim		
hindering	the enemy	from battle.	Meantime		
barbãri	dimiserunt	nuncios	in omnes		
the barbarians	dispatched	messengers	into all		
partes,	que	prædicaverunt	suis	pau-	
parts,	and	proclaimed	to their own (people)	the	
citatem	nostrorum militum;	et demonstraverunt			
fewness	of our soldiers;	and showed			
quanta	facultas <sup>59</sup>	daretur (imp. subj.)	faciendæ		
how great	an opportunity	was given	of making		
prædæ	atque	liberandi	sui	in perpetuum,	
plunder	and	of freeing	themselves	forever,	
si	expulissent	Romanos	castris (pl.).	Magnâ	
if	they should drive	the Romans	from the camp.	A great	
multitudine	peditatûs	que	equitatûs	co-	
multitude	of infantry	and	of cavalry	having been	

actâ celeriter his rebus, venerunt  
 assembled quickly with these things [objects], they came

ad castra (pl.).  
 to the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar videbat idem  
 Although Cæsar was seeing (that) the same (things)  
 fore, quod accidērat superioribus  
 to be about to [would] be, which had happened in former

diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,  
 days; that, if the enemy should be routed,

effugērent pericūlum celeritate; tamen  
 they would escape danger by speed; nevertheless

nactus circiter triginta equites, quos Commius  
 having got about thirty horsemen, whom Commius

Atrēbas, (de quo dictum-est antè)  
 the Atrebatian (of whom it has been mentioned before)

transportavērat secum, constituit legiones  
 had brought over with himself, he drew up the legions

in acie pro castris (pl.). Proelio  
 in battle line before the camp. The battle

commisso, hostes potuerunt non ferre  
 having been joined, the enemy were able not to bear

impetum nostrorum militum diutius ac verterunt  
 the charge of our soldiers longer and turned

terga: quos secuti tanto spatio,  
 (their) backs [retreated]: whom having followed for so great a distance,

quantum potuerunt efficere cursu et  
 as they were able to accomplish by running and

viribus (pl.), occiderunt complures ex iis:  
 by exertion, they killed many from [of] them:

deinde omnibus ædificiis incensis longè  
 then all the buildings having been burned far

que latè, receperunt se in castra (pl.).  
 and wide, they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem die legati missi ab  
 On the same day ambassadors (having been) sent by

hostibus venerunt ad Cæsarem de pace.  
 the enemy came to Cæsar concerning peace.

Cæsar duplicavit his numĕrum obsĭdum,  
Cæsar doubled for these [them] the number of hostages

quem imperavĕrat antĕa; que jussit ĕos  
which he had ordered before; and commanded them

adduci in continentem; quòd, dĭe  
to be conducted to the continent; because, the day

æquinocĭi propinquâ, existimabat navigationem<sup>60</sup>  
of the equinox (being) near, he was thinking the voyage

non subjiĕndam hiĕmĭ infirmis navibus:  
not to [would not] be exposed to winter with weak ships:

ipse nactus idoneam tempestatem solvit  
he himself having gained suitable weather cast loose

naves paulò post mediàm noctem; omnes  
the ships a little after mid night; all

quæ pervenerunt incolūmes ad continentem.  
which [these] passed safe to the continent.

Ex his, dŭæ onerariæ potuerunt  
From [of] these, two burden [transport ships] were able

non capĕre eosdem portus, quos  
not to take [reach] the same harbors, which [as]

reliquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paulò infrà.  
the rest; but were carried down a little below.

37. Ex quĭbus<sup>61</sup> navĭbus, quum circĭter  
From which ships, when about

trecenti milĭtes exposĭti-essent (pl. perf. subj.),  
three hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contendĕrent (imp. subj.) in castra (pl.),  
and were hastening into camp,

Morĭni, quos Cæsar reliquĕrat pacatos  
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britannĭam, adducti spe  
setting out into Britain, induced by hope

prædæ, primò circumsteterunt numĕro  
of plunder, first surrounded (them) with a number

suorum non ĭta magno, ac jusserunt  
of their own (men), not so large, and ordered

ponĕre arma, si nollent<sup>62</sup>  
(them) to lay down (their) arms, if they were unwilling

sese interfici. Quum illi,  
 (that they) themselves to [should] be slain. When they,  
 orbe facto, defendērent (imp. subj.)  
 a circle having been formed, were defending  
 sese, circiter sex millia celeriter convenerunt  
 themselves, about six thousand quickly assembled  
 ad clamorem hominum. Quā re nun-  
 at the shout of the men. Which thing having been  
 tiatā, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum ex  
 announced, Cæsar sent all the cavalry from  
 suis castris (pl.) auxilio suis. Intērim nostri  
 his camp for aid to his (men). Meantime our  
 milites sustinuerunt impetum hostium, atque  
 soldiers bore the attack of the enemy, and  
 pugnauerunt fortissimè ampliùs quatuor horis;  
 fought most bravely more (than) four hours;  
 et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, occiderunt  
 and, a few wounds having been received, killed  
 complures ex iis. Verò posteaquàm noster  
 many from them. But after (that) our  
 equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,  
 cavalry came into sight, the enemy, (their)  
 armis abjectis, verterunt terga,  
 arms having been thrown away, turned (their) backs,  
 que magnus numerus eorum occisus-est.  
 [retreated] and a great number of them was killed.  
 38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum  
 Cæsar sent (his) lieutenant Titus Labienus  
 postēro dīe, cum iis legionibus, quas  
 the following day, with these legions, which  
 reduxerat ex Britannā, in Morinos,  
 he had brought back from Britain, into the Morini,  
 qui fecerant rebellionem. Qui, quum habe-  
 who had made a rebellion. Who, when they were  
 rent (imp. subj.) non quò recipērent  
 having not [no] where they might betake  
 se propter siccitates (pl.) paludum,  
 themselves on account of the dryness of the marshes,

quo perſugio (abl.) uſi-ſuērunt ſuperiore anno,  
 which refuge they had uſed in the former year,  
 fēre omnes prevenerunt in poteſtatem Labieni.  
 nearlv all came into the power of Labienus.  
 At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati,  
 But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants,  
 qui duxerant legiones in fines Me-  
 who had led the legions into the territories of the  
 napiorum, omnibus eorum agris vaſtatis,  
 Menapii, all their lands having been devaſtated,  
 frumentis (pl.) ſuccis, que ædificiis  
 the corn having been cut down, and the buildings  
 incenſis, quod omnes Menapii abdidērunt  
 having been fired, becauſe all the Menapii had hid  
 ſe in denſiſſimas ſilvas, receperunt  
 themſelves among the thickeſt woods, betook  
 ſe ad Cæſarem. Cæſar conſtituit hi-  
 themſelves to Cæſar. Cæſar eſtabliſhed the winter  
 berna omnium legionum in Belgis. Eò  
 quarters of all the legions among the Belgæ. There  
 duæ civitates omnino ex Britannia miſerunt  
 two ſtates altogeth'er from Britain ſent  
 obſides: reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus  
 hoſtages: the reſt neglected (it). Theſe things  
 geſtis, ſupplicatio viginti  
 having been accompliſhed, a general thankſgiving of twenty  
 dierum decreta-eſt à ſenatu, ex  
 days was decreed by the ſenate, from [becauſe of]  
 litēris (abl.) Cæſaris.  
 the letters of Cæſar.

## FIFTH BOOK

The fifth book includes the description of Cæsar's second campaign against the Britons and an account of certain internal trouble and revolts which endangered several Roman encampments. Cæsar in preparing to leave his winter quarters ordered a huge fleet of specially constructed ships to be made ready. A second expedition against Britain is undertaken, and boldly resisted by the tribesmen of the island. The Roman fleet suffers severe losses through storms. The Britons throw a fresh offensive against the Romans, but they are defeated. Cæsar with hostages returns to Gaul. There the tribes are involved in an internal war, and a revolution under Indutiomarus and Ambiorix is attempted. Contrary to his custom, Cæsar quarters his army in divisions and Gaul is finally brought again to a peaceful state.

1. Lucio Lucius	Domitio, Domitius.	Appio Appius	Claudio Claudius	(being)
Consulibus, Consuls.	Cæsar Cæsar	discendens departing	ab from	hibernis winter quarters
in into	Italian, Italy,	ut as	consuerat he had been accustomed	facere to do
quotannis, yearly [every year],	impërat orders	legatis (dat.), the lieutenants,	quos whom	
præfecerat he had appointed over		legionibus (dat.), the legions,	uti that	
curent they should take care	quam plurimas <sup>1</sup> (that) as many	naves ships		
possent as might be possible	ædificandas to [should] be built	hieme, in the winter,	que and	
vetëres the old (ships) to	reficiendas. [should] be repaired.	Demonstrat eorum modum He shows their size		
que formam; and form;	facit he makes (them)	paulò humiliores a little lower	quam than	
quibus (abl.) (those) which	consuevimus we have been accustomed	uti to use	in in	

nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que  
our sea, for quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id măgis   ,  
of drawing up [beaching]; and this the more for this reason,

qu  d cognov  rat m  n  s magnos  
because he had learned (that) less [not so] great

fluctus<sup>2</sup> fi  ri   bi propter crebras  
waves to be [are] found there on account of the frequent

commutationes   stuum; paul   latiores qu  m  
changes of the tides. a little wider than

qu  bus (abl.) ut  mur in reliquis mar  bus, ad  
what we use in the other seas, for

on  ra<sup>3</sup> et ad transportandum multitud  nem  
loads and for transferring a multitude

jumentorum. Imp  rat omnes has fi  ri  
of beasts of burden. He commands all these to be made

actuar  as: ad quam<sup>4</sup> rem humilitas adj  vat  
fast sailing for which thing [object] the lowness aids

mult  m. J  bet ea, qu  e sunt us  i ad  
much He orders these things, which are for use for

armandas<sup>5</sup> naves apportari ex Hispani  .  
rigging ships to be brought from Spain.

Iipse, convent  bus citerioris Galli  e peractis,  
He himself, the assemblies of nearer Gaul having been finished,

proficisc  tur in Illyricum; qu  d audiebat  
sets out into Illyricum; because he was hearing (that)

finit  mam partem Provinci  e vastari  
the neighboring part of the Province to be [was] ravaged

incursion  ibus    Pirustis. Quum venisset  
with incursions by the Pirust  e. When he had come

(pl. perf. subj.)    , imp  rat<sup>6</sup> civitat  bus (dat.)  
there. he demands (of) the states

mil  tes, que j  bet convenire in certum l  c  m.  
soldiers, and orders (them) to assemble to [into] a certain place.

Qu   re nuntiata, Pirust  e  
Which [This] thing having been announced, the Pirust  e

mittunt legatos ad   um, qui doc  ant nih  l  
send ambassadors to him, who may show that nothing

earum rerum factum (-esse) publico  
of these things [acts] to have [had] been done by public

concilio: que demonstrant sese esse  
council and they show (that they) themselves to be

paratos satisfacere omnibus rationibus de  
[are] prepared to satisfy by all means regarding

injuris. Eorum oratione acceptâ,  
the injuries Their speech having been received [heard].

Cæsar impërat obsides, que jûbet eos adduci  
Cæsar demands hostages, and orders them to be brought

ad certam diem: nisi fecerant ita,  
to [on] a certain day: unless they should do so,

demonstrat<sup>7</sup> sese persecuturum  
he shows (that he) himself about to [would] pursue

civitatem bello. Is adductis ad  
the state by war These having been brought on the

diem, ut imperaverat, dat arbitros  
day. as he had commanded, he gives [appoints] arbitrators

inter civitates, qui æstiment litem  
among the states, who may value the suit [the damage]

que constituant pœnam.  
and may determine the penalty

2. His rebus confectis, que  
These things having been accomplished, and

conventibus peractis, revertitur in  
the assemblies having been concluded, he returns into

citeriorem Galliam, atque inde proficiscitur ad  
hither Gaul, and thence sets out to

exercitum. Quum venisset (pl. perf subj.) èd,  
the army. When he had come there,

omnibus hibernis circuitis, invenit  
all the winter quarters having been visited, he found

circiter sexcentas naves ejus generis, cujus  
about six hundred ships of this kind, (of) which

demonstravimus supra, et viginti octo longas  
we have shown above, and twenty eight long

constructas, singulari studio militum,  
[war ships] built, by the singular zeal of the soldiers,



in summâ inopîâ omnium rerum, neque multum  
in the highest want of all things, nor much

abesse<sup>8</sup> ab eo, quin  
to be [was] wanting from this (condition), but that

possent deduci paucis diebus.  
they might be able [could] (to) be launched in a few days.

Militibus collaudatis, atque iis, qui  
The soldiers having been commended and to those, who

præfuerant negotiis, ostendit quid  
had presided in the business [undertaking], he shows what

velit fieri; atque jubet omnes convenire  
he wishes to be done: and orders all to assemble

ad portum Itium: ex quo portu  
to[at] the port Itius [Boulogne]: from which port

cognoverat trajectum in Britanniam esse  
he had learned the passage into Britain to be [was]

commodissimum, circiter triginta millium  
the most convenient, about thirty (of) thousand

passum à continenti. Relinquit quod  
paces from the continent. He leaves what

visum-est esse satis militum huic rei:  
seemed to be enough (of) soldiers for this thing

ipse proficiscitur cum quatuor  
[expedition]: (he) himself sets out with four

expeditis legionibus, et octingentis equitibus,  
light-armed legions, and eight hundred cavalry,

in fines Trevirorum; quod hi neque  
into the territories of the Treviri: because these neither

veniebant ad concilia, neque parebant  
were coming to the councils, nor were obeying

imperio (dat.), que dicebantur sollicitare  
(his) command, and were said to be inciting

Germanos transrhenanos.  
the Germans beyond the Rhine.

3. Hæc civitas valet<sup>9</sup> longè plurimum  
This state prevails by far the most

totius Galliæ equitatu, que habet magnas  
of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copias peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut  
 forces of infantry, and borders the Rhine, as

demonstravimus suprâ. In eâ civitate duo,  
 we have shown above In this state two (men),

Indutiomârus et Cingetorix, contendebant<sup>10</sup> inter  
 Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, were striving among

se de principatu: alter ex  
 [between] themselves about the supreme authority: one from [of]

quibus, simul atque cognitum-est de adventu  
 whom, as soon as it was known concerning the approach

Cæsaris que legionum, venit ad eum; confirmavit  
 of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he declared

se que omnes suos futuros  
 (that he) himself and all his (people) about to [would] be

in officio, neque defecturos ab  
 in duty [allegiance], nor about to [would] revolt from

amicitiâ Romani populi; que ostendit,  
 the friendship of the Roman people, and he shows,

quæ gererentur (imp. subj.) in Treviris.  
 what (things) were transpiring among the Treviri.

At Indutiomârus instituit cogere equitatum que  
 But Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and

peditatum; que his, qui per ætatem poterant  
 infantry; and those, who through age were able

non esse in armis, abditis in silvam  
 not to be in arms, having been hid within the forest

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudine  
 of Arduenna [Ardennes], (which of great extent

pertinet à flumine Rheno ad initium  
 reaches from the river Rhine [to] the beginning

Rhemorum per medios fines Trevirorum)  
 of the Rhemi through the central territories of the Treviri)

parare<sup>11</sup> bellum. Sed posteaquàm nonnulli  
 [to] prepare [prepares] war. But after (that) some

principes ex eâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate  
 chiefs from this state, both induced by the intimacy

Cingetorigis, et perterriti adventu nostri  
 of Cingetorix, and alarmed by the approach of our

exercitūs, venerunt ad Cæsārem, et cœperunt petere  
 army, came to Cæsar and began to seek

ab eo de suis privatis rebus, quoniam  
 from him about their own private affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulere civitati:  
 they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomārus veritus ne desereretur  
 Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnibus, mittit legatos ad Cæsārem;  
 by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar: (to say)

se<sup>12</sup> discedere idcirco à  
 (that he) himself to withdraw [withdraws] for this reason from

suis, atque noluisse venire ad  
 his own (people), and to have [had] been unwilling to come to

ëum, quod contineret civitatem facilius  
 him, in order that he might restrain the state more easily

in officio; ne discessu omnis  
 in duty [allegiance]: lest by the departure of all

nobilitatis, plebs laberetur propter  
 the nobility, the common people might slip through (their)

imprudentiam: itaque civitatem esse in sua  
 indiscretion: therefore the state to be [was] in his

potestate; que se venturum  
 power; and (that he) himself (to be) about to [would] come

ad ëum in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permitteret;  
 to him into the camp, if Cæsar would permit

et permissurum suas fortunas que  
 and (to be) about to [would] consign his own fortunes and

civitatis ejus fidei.  
 (those) of the state to his faith.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de qua causa<sup>13</sup>  
 Although Cæsar was understanding from what cause

ëa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res  
 these things were said, and what thing

detereret (imp. subj.) ëum ab instituto  
 was deterring him from (his) determined

consilio; tamen, ne cogeretur consumere  
 purpose: however, lest he might be compelled to waste

æstatem in Treviris, omnibus rebus  
the summer among the Treviri. all things

comparatis ad Britannicum bellum, jussit  
having been prepared for the Britannie war, he ordered

Indutiomærum venire ad se cum ducentis  
Indutiomarus to come to himself with two hundred

obsidibus. His adductis, et filio  
hostages. These having been brought, and (his) son

in his, que omnibus ejus propinquis, quos  
among them, and all his relations, whom

evocaverat nominatim, consolatus est que  
he had called out by name, he consoled and

hortatus (est) Indutiomærum, uti permaneret  
encouraged Indutiomarus, that he might continue

in officio. Tamen, nihilo secius principibus  
in duty [allegiance] Yet, nevertheless the chiefs

Trevirorum convocatis ad se,  
of the Treviri having been called together to himself,

conciliavit eos singulatim Cingetorigi: quod<sup>14</sup>  
he reconciled them individually to Cingetorix. which

intelligebat cum fieri à se  
(thing) he was understanding not only to be [was] done by himself

ejus merito (sing.) tum arbitrabatur interesse  
by his deserts but also he was judging to concern

magni, ejus auctoritatem  
[it concerned] (him) of great [greatly] (that) his authority

valere quam plurimum inter suos,  
to [should] prevail as much as possible among his own (people),

cujus voluntatem perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
whose (good) will he had perceived (was)

tam egregiam in se. Indutiomærus tulit  
so excellent toward himself Indutiomarus bore

id factum graviter, suam gratiam  
this act heavily [bitterly]. his own favor

minui inter suos: et qui  
to be [was] diminished among his own (people): and (he) who

fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) inimico animo antè  
had been in [cf.] unfriendly spirit before

in nos exarsit multò graviùs hoc  
toward us blazed forth [raged] much more violently by this  
dolore.  
vexation.

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit  
Those things having been settled, Cæsar arrived  
ad portum Itium cum legionibus. Cognoscit  
at the harbor Itus with the legions. He learns  
ibi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ erant  
there, (that) forty ships, which had been made  
in Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non  
among the Meldi, thrown back by a storm. not  
potuisse<sup>15</sup> tenere cursum, atque  
to have [had not] been able to hold (their) course. and  
relatas eodem, unde profectæ erant:  
(were) carried back to the same (place) whence they had set out:  
invēnit reliquas paratas ad navigandum, atque  
he finds the rest prepared for sailing, and  
instructas omnibus rebus. Equitatus totius  
furnished with all things The cavalry of the whole  
Galliæ convenit eodem, número quattuor  
of Gaul assembled in the same (place) to the number of four  
millium, que principes ex omnibus civitatibus;  
thousand, and the chiefs from [of] all the states,  
perpaucos ex quibus, quorum fidem in  
a very few from [of] whom whose fidelity toward  
se perspexerat, decreverat relinquere in  
himself he had clearly seen, he had resolved to leave in  
Galliā; ducere reliquos secum loco  
Gaul. (and) to lead [take] the rest with him in the place  
obsidum; quod verebatur motum Galliæ,  
of hostages; because he was fearing a disturbance of Gaul,  
quum ipse abesset.  
when (he) himself was absent.

6. Dumnōrix Ædūus erat una cum  
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with  
cætēris de quo dictum est  
the rest concerning whom it has been spoken

[mention was made]	à by	nobis us	antëa. before	Constituërat He had resolved
ducëre to conduct	hunc him	secum with him	inprimis, in particular,	quòd because
cognovërat he had known	ëum him	cupïdum desirous	novarum of new	rerum, things
[revolution]	cupïdum desirous	imperii, of power	magni anïmi, of high spirit,	magnæ of great
auctoritatis authority	inter among	Gallos. the Gauls.	Accedebat It was added	huc, <sup>16</sup> to this,
quòd that	Dumnorix Dumnorix	dixërat had said	jam already	in in
				concilio a council
Æduorum, of the Ædui.	(that)	regnum the government		civitatis of the state
deferri to be [was] conferred	sibi to [on] himself	à by	Cæsäre. Cæsar	Quod Which
dictum saying	Ædúi the Ædui	ferebant were bearing	gravïter, heavily [ill].	nëque nor
audebant were they daring	mittëre to send	legatos ambassadors	ad to	Cæsàrem Cæsar
causâ for the sake	recusandi of objecting	nëque nor	deprecandi. of protesting.	Cæsàr. Cæsar
cognovërat had known	id (that) this	factum (esse) to have been [was] done		ex from
suis <sup>17</sup> his	hospitibus. guests.	Ille He	primò at first	contendit strove
				petëre to seek
omnibus by all	precibus, entreaties,	ut that	relinqueretur he might be left	in in
				Galliâ; Gaul;
partim partly	quòd because	insuetus unused	navigandi of [to] voyaging	timeret (imp. he was fearing
subj.)	măria; the sea;	partim partly	quòd because	dicëret (imp. subj.) he was saying
	sese (that he) himself	impediri to be [was] hindered		religionibus. by religious scruples.
Posteăquam After (that)	vidit he saw	id this	negari <sup>18</sup> to be [was] denied	obstinatè obstinately
	sibi, to himself,	omni all	spe impetrandi hope of obtaining (it)	ademptâ, having been taken away

cœpit            sollicitare            princîpes            Gallîæ,            sevocare  
he began            to instigate            the chiefs            of Gaul,            to call apart  
singûlos            que            hortari,            ut            remanerent            in  
individuals            and            to exhort,            that            they should remain            on  
continenti;            territare<sup>19</sup>            mētu  
the continent, (saying) he to be [was] alarmed with the fear (that this)

          fieri            non            sine            causâ,            ut            Gallia  
to be [was] done            not            without            reason,            that            Gaul

          spoliaretur            omni            nobilitate.            Id            esse  
might be stripped            from [of] all            the nobility. (That) this            to be [was]

consilium            Cæsâris,            ut            necaret            omnes  
the plan            of Cæsar,            that            he might destroy            all

hos            transductos            in            Britanniam,            quos  
these            conveyed over            into            Britain,            whom

          vereretur (imp. subj.)            interficere            in            conspectu  
he was fearing            to slay            in            the sight

Gallîæ.            Interponere<sup>20</sup>            fidem            reliquis;  
of Gaul.            To suggest [He suggests]            a pledge            to the rest;

poscere            iusjurandum,            ut            administrarent  
to demand [he demands]            an oath,            that            they would perform

          communi            consilio,            quod            intellexissent            esse  
with common            design,            what            they should understand            to be

          ex            usu            Gallîæ.  
[was]            from [for]            the use [advantage]            of Gaul.

7. Hæc            deferebantur            ad            Cæsarem            à  
These (matters)            were reported            to            Cæsar            by

compluribus. Quâ            re            cognîtâ,            Cæsar, quòd  
very many.            Which thing            having been known, Cæsar, because

tribuebat            tantum            dignitatis            Ædûæ            civitati,  
he was granting            so much            (of) honor            to the Æduan            state,

statuebat            Dumnorigem            coercendum  
was determining            (that)            Dumnorix            to [should] be restrained

atque            deterrendum            quibuscunque            rebus  
and            to [should] be checked            by whatever            things [means]

posset;            quòd            videbat            ejus            amentiam  
he might be able;            because            he was seeing            his            madness

          progrèdi            longius,            prospiciendum,<sup>21</sup>            ne  
to [would] proceed            further,            (it was) to be provided,            lest

posset	nocere	sibi (dat.)	ac
he might be able [should]	(to) injure	himself	and
rei publicæ (dat.).	Itaque	commoratus	in
the republic.	Therefore	having delayed	in
lōco	circiter viginti quinque	dies, quòd	ventus
place	about twenty five	days, because	the wind
Corus	impediebat	navigationem,	qui
Corus (North West wind)	was hindering	the passage,	which
consuevit	flare	in his lōcis	magnam partem
is accustomed	to blow	in these places	a great part
omnis temporis,	dābat	opēram, <sup>22</sup>	ut
of every season.	he was giving	work [attention].	that
contineret	Dumnorigem	in officio;	tāmen
he might keep	Dumnorix	in (his) duty.	yet (that)
cognoscēret	nihilò-secius	omnia ejus	consilia.
he should learn	nevertheless	all his	designs.
Tandem	nactus	idoneam tempestatem,	jūbet
At length	having got	favorable weather,	he orders
milites	que equites	conscendere in	naves. At
the soldiers	and cavalry	to embark on	the ships. But
animis	omnium	impeditis,	Dumnorix cum
the minds	of all	having been occupied,	Dumnorix with
equitibus	Æduorum,	Cæsare	insciente, cœpit
the cavalry	of the Ædui,	Cæsar	not knowing, began
discedere	dōmum	à castris (pl.).	Quâ re
to depart	home	from the camp.	Which [This] thing
nuntiata,	Cæsar,	profectione	inter-
having been announced.	Cæsar	the departure	having been
missâ	atque omnibus	rebus	postpositis,
discontinued	and all	things	having been postponed,
mittit	magnam partem	equitatus	ad insequendum
sends	a large part	of the cavalry	to pursue
ẽum,	que impērat	retrāhi:	si faciāt <sup>23</sup>
him,	and orders (him)	to be dragged back:	if he may do
vim,	nēque	parēat,	jūbet
violence,	nor	may obey,	he commands (him)
arbitratus	hunc	facturum	nihil
having considered	him (that he)	about to [would] do	nothing



pro sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)  
for [as] a sound [sane] (man), who had disregarded

imperium præsentis. Enim ille revocatus  
the command of (him) present. For he having been summoned

cœpit resistere, ac defendere se manu,  
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand [force].

que implorare fidem suorum;  
and to entreat the faith [support] of his own (people);

clamitans sæpè, se esse liberum,  
crying out often, (that he) himself to be [was] a free (man),

que liberæ civitatis. Isti circumstant  
and of a free state. They surround

que interficiunt hominem, ut imperatum erat:  
and slay the man, as it had been ordered:

at omnes Ædui equites revertuntur ad  
but all the Æduan horsemen return to

Cæsarem.

Cæsar.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno  
These things having been performed, Labienus

relicto in continente cum tribus legionibus  
having been left on the continent with three legions

et duobus millibus equitum, ut tueretur  
and two thousand (of) cavalry, that he might defend

portus, et provideret frumentariæ rei, que  
the harbors, and might provide for the grain supply, and

cognosceret quæ gererentur in Galliâ, et  
might ascertain what might be transpiring in Gaul, and

caperet consilium pro<sup>24</sup> tempore et pro  
might take counsel for [according to] time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionibus et  
the affair: (he) himself with five legions and

pâri número equitum, quem relinquerat in  
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum  
the continent, cast loose the ships at [about] the setting

solis; et proventus leni  
of the sun; and having been carried forward by a gentle

Afrīco,                      vento                      intermisso                      circiter  
 South West wind.      the wind      having discontinued      about  
 mediâ      nocte,                      tenūit                      non                      cursum:                      et  
 mid                      night.                      he held                      not                      the course:                      and  
                     delatus                      longiūs                      æstu,                      luce  
 being carried away                      farther                      by the tide,                      the light [day]  
 ortâ,                      conspexit Britanniam relictam                      sub  
 having risen.                      he beheld                      Britain                      left [lying] under [on]  
 sinistrâ.      Tum      rursus                      secutus                      commutationem  
 the left.      Then                      again                      having followed                      the change  
                     æstus,                      contendit      remis,                      ut                      caperet  
 of the tide,                      he strove                      with oars,                      that                      he might take [reach]  
 eam      partem                      insulæ,                      quâ                      cognoverat  
 this                      part                      of the island.                      on which                      he had known  
                     superiore æstate esse                      optimum egressum.      In  
 in the former                      summer                      to be [was]                      the best                      landing.                      In  
                     quâ                      re                      virtus                      militum                      fuit  
 which [this]                      thing [attempt]                      the merit                      of the soldiers                      was  
 admōdum      laudanda,      qui,      labore      remigandi non  
 very much                      to be praised,                      who,                      the labor                      of rowing                      not  
                     intermisso,                      adæquaverunt      cursum      longarum  
 having been interrupted.                      equalled                      the course                      of the long  
 navium,                      vectoris                      que      gravibus navigiis.  
 ships [war-ships],                      with transports                      and                      heavy                      vessels.  
 Accessum est<sup>25</sup>      ad Britanniam omnibus navibus  
 It was [They] approached to                      Britain                      with all                      the ships  
 fere      meridiano tempore. Neque<sup>26</sup>      hostis      visus est  
 nearly                      at noon                      time.                      Nor                      an enemy                      was seen  
 in      eo      loco. Sed, ut      Cæsar      postea      compērit  
 in      this                      place. But, as                      Cæsar                      afterwards                      discovered  
                     ex      captivis,      quum      magnæ manus convenissent  
 from                      the prisoners,                      when                      a great band                      had assembled  
 (pl. perf. subj.)      eò,                      perterritæ                      multitudine  
                     there,                      having been alarmed                      by the multitude  
 navium,      quæ      amplius                      octingentæ      visæ erant  
 of ships,                      which                      more                      (than) eight-hundred                      had been seen  
                     unâ                      cum      annotinis                      que                      privatis,  
 together                      with                      last year's (ships)                      and                      the private (ones).

quas            quisque            fecerat            causâ            sũ  
which            each            had made            for the sake            of his own

commōdi,      discesserant      timore      à      littore,  
convenience,      they had departed      in fear      from      the shore,

ac      abdidērant      se      in      superiora      lōca.  
and      had concealed      themselves      in      the higher      places.

9. Cæsar,      exercitu                      exposito,                      ac  
Cæsar,      the army                      having been disembarked,                      and

lōco      idoneo      castris (pl.)                      capto,                      ubi  
a place      suitable      for a camp                      having been taken,                      when

cognovit      ex      captivis,      in      quo      lōco      copiæ  
he learned      from      the prisoners,      in      what      place      the forces

hostium                      consedisent (pl. perf. subj.),                      decem  
of the enemy                      had encamped.                      ten

cohortibus      relictis      ad                      mære, et      trecentis  
cohorts      having been left      at [near]      the sea, and      three-hundred

equitibus,      qui      essent                      præsidiō                      navibus,  
horsemen,      who      were                      (for) a guard                      to the ships,

contendit      ad      hostes      de      tertiâ      vigiliâ;  
hastened      to      the enemy      on      the third      watch;

veritus                      èd                      minùs      navibus,      quod  
having feared      for this reason      the less      for the ships,      because

relinquebat                      deligatas ad anchōras (pl.) in molli  
he was leaving (them)      fastened      at      anchor                      on a soft

atque aperto littore; et                      præfecit                      Quintum  
and      open      shore; and                      he put in command      Quintus

Atrium      præsidiō      navibus.      Ipse      progressus  
Altrius      for protection      to the ships.      He himself      having advanced

noctu      circiter      duodēcim      millia      passum  
by night      about      twelve      thousand      (of) paces

conspicatus est                      copias                      hostium.                      Illi  
discovered                      the forces                      of the enemy.                      They

progressi      ad      flumen      equitatu      atque  
having advanced      to      the river      with the cavalry      and

essēdis,      cœperunt      prohibere      nostros                      ex  
chariots,      began      to check      our (men)                      from

superiore      lōco      et      committere      prœlium.  
the higher      place      and      to engage      battle.

Repulsi ab equitatu, nacti locum  
 Having been repulsed by the cavalry, having got a place  
 egregiè munitum et naturâ et opère,  
 excellently fortified both by nature and by work [art],  
 quem, (ut videbantur,) præparverant jam  
 which, (as it was seeming,) they had prepared already  
 antè, causâ domestici belli, abdiderunt  
 before, for the sake of domestic war they hid  
 se in silvas: nam crebris arboribus  
 themselves in the woods: for the thick trees  
 succisis, omnes introitus præclusi-erant.  
 having been cut down, all the entrances had been shut up.  
 Ipsi rari propugnabant ex  
 They themselves, few [in squads], were charging from  
 silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingredi<sup>27</sup>  
 the woods, and were preventing our (men) to enter  
 [from entering] intra munitiones. At milites  
 within the fortifications. But the soldiers  
 septimæ legionis, testudinæ factâ, et  
 of the seventh legion, a testudo having been made, and  
 aggere adjecto ad munitiones,  
 a mound having been thrown up against the fortifications,  
 ceperunt locum, que expulerunt eos ex silvis,  
 took the place, and drove them from the woods,  
 paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed Cæsar  
 a few wounds having been received But Cæsar  
 vetuit persëqui eos fugientes longius, et quòd  
 forbade to pursue them fleeing farther, both because  
 ignorabat naturam loci, et quòd  
 he was not knowing the nature of the place, and because  
 magnâ parte diei consumptâ, volebat  
 a great part of the day having been spent, he was wishing  
 tempus relinquere munitioni  
 (that) time to [should] be left for the fortification  
 castrorum (pl.).  
 of the camp

10. Postridiè ejus diei, misit manè  
 The day after this day he sent in the morning

milītes the soldiers	que and	equītes cavalry	tripartitō in three divisions	in on
expeditionem, an expedition,	ut that	persequerentur they might pursue	ēos, these,	qui who
fugērāt. had fled.	Iis These	progressi having advanced	aliquantum a considerable part	
itinēris, of the march,	quum when	jam already	extremi the last [the rear]	essent were
(imp. subj.)	in in	conspectu, in sight,	equītes horsemen	venerunt à came from
Quinto Quintus	Atrio Atrius	ad to	Cæsārem, Cæsar,	qui nuntiarent who announced (that)
maximā a very great	tempestate storm	coortā having arisen	superiori on the former	nocte, night,
omnes all	naves the ships	propē nearly	afflictas-esse to have [had] been dashed	atque and
ejectas thrown up	in on	litōre; the shore;	quōd because	neque neither
				anchōræ the anchors
que and	funes cables	subsistērent (imp. subj.), were holding,	neque nor	nautæ the sailors
que and	gubernatores pilots	possent (imp. subj.) were able		pāti to endure
vim the violence	tempestatis. of the storm.		Itāque Therefore	magnum great
incommōdum damage		acceptum esse to have [had] been received	ex from	ēo this
concurso collision	navium. of the ships.			
11. His These	rebus things	cognitis, having been known,	Cæsar Cæsar	jūbet orders
legiones the legions	que and	equitatum the cavalry	revocari, to be recalled,	atque and
desistēre to halt	itinēre, from the march,	ipse he himself	revertitur returns	ad to
naves: the ships	perspicit he observes	coram when present	fere nearly	eadem, the same (things),
quæ which	cognoverat he had known	ex from	nuntiiis the messengers	(litēris <sup>28</sup> (pl.)); (the letters);

sic ut, circiter quadraginta navibus amissis,  
 so that, about forty ships having been lost,  
 tamen reliquæ viderentur (imp. subj.) posse  
 however the rest were seeming to be able  
 refici magno negotio. Itaque deligit  
 to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore he selects  
 fabros ex legionibus, et jubet alios  
 mechanics from the legions, and orders others  
 arcessi ex continenti: scribit Labieno,  
 to be summoned from the continent: he writes to Labienus,  
 ut instituat quàm plurimas naves (acc.)  
 that he construct the greatest number (of) ships  
 posset his legionibus, quæ sunt apud  
 he may be able with those legions, which are with  
 eum. Ipse, etsi res erat multæ  
 him. He himself, although the thing was (of) much  
 operæ ac laboris, tamen statuit esse  
 trouble and labor. however determined (that) to be  
 commodissimum, omnes naves  
 [it was] most convenient, (that) all the ships  
 subduci, et conjungi unâ munitione  
 (to) be drawn up, and (to) be united in one fortification  
 cum castris (pl.). Consumit circiter decem dies  
 with the camp. He spends about ten days  
 in his rebus, ne nocturnis<sup>29</sup> temporibus  
 in these things [matters], not the night time  
 (pl.) quidem intermissis ad laborem  
 even having been intermitted [lost] for the labor  
 militum. Navibus subductis que  
 of the soldiers. The ships having been drawn up and  
 castris (pl.) egregiè munitis, relinquit easdem  
 the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same  
 copias quas antè, præsidio navibus:  
 forces which [as] before, for a guard to the ships:  
 ipse proficiscitur eodem, unde  
 (he) himself sets out to the same (place), whence  
 redierat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) èd,  
 he had returned. When he had come there,

majores copiae Britannorum jam convenērant  
 greater forces of the Britons now had assembled  
 undique in eum locum. Summa<sup>30</sup>  
 from every side into this place. The supreme authority  
 imperii que administrandi belli permissa-est,  
 of command and of managing the war was assigned,  
 communi consilio, Cassivellauno, fines  
 by a common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories  
 cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamēsis,  
 of whom a river, which is called Tamesis [Thames],  
 dividit à maritimis civitatibus, circiter octoginta  
 divides from the maritime states, about eighty  
 millia passum à mari. Continentia bella  
 thousand (of) paces from the sea. Continual wars  
 intercesserant huic (dat.) cum reliquis civitatibus,  
 had involved him with the rest of the states,  
 superiori tempore; sed Britanni, permoti  
 in former times; but the Britons, alarmed  
 nostro adventu, praefecerant hunc toti bello  
 by our arrival, had appointed him over the whole war  
 que imperio (dat.).  
 and command.

12. Interior pars Britanniae incolitur ab iis,  
 The interior part of Britain is inhabited by those,  
 quos dicunt proditum<sup>31</sup> memoriā  
 whom they say (to have [it has] been) handed down by memory  
 natos in insula ipsa; maritima pars  
 (to) have been born in the island itself; the maritime part  
 ab iis, qui transierant ex  
 (is inhabited) by those, who had crossed over from  
 Belgis causā praedae ac inferendi, belli  
 the Belgae for the sake of plunder and of waging, war  
 qui omnes fere appellantur iis nominibus  
 who all nearly are called by those names  
 civitatum, ex quibus civitatibus orti  
 of states, from which states having sprung  
 pervenerunt èd, ex bello illato  
 they arrived there, and war having been waged

remanserunt ibi, atque cæperunt colere agros.  
 remained there, and began to till the lands.

Multitudo hominum est infinita, que  
 The multitude of men [inhabitants] is boundless, and

ædificia creberrima fere consimilia Gallicis :  
 the buildings most numerous nearly similar to the Gallic :

numerus pecoris magnus. Utuntur aut  
 the number of the cattle (is) great. They use either

ære (abl.), aut æreo nummio aut ferris taleis  
 brass, or brass coin or iron bars

(abl.) examinatis<sup>32</sup> ad certum pondus, pro nummo.  
 regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascitur idi in mediterraneis  
 White lead [tin] is procured there in the midland

regionibus; ferrum in maritimis; sed  
 countries, iron in the maritime (parts), but

copia ejus est exigua: utuntur importato  
 the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materia cujusque generis, ut in  
 brass (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Galliâ, præter fagum atque abietem. Putant  
 Gaul, except the beech and the fir tree They think (it)

non fas gustare leporem et gallinam et  
 not right to taste the hare and the hen and

ansærem: tamen alunt hæc causâ  
 the goose: however they breed these for the sake

animi que voluptatis. Loca sunt  
 of mind [the interest] and of pleasure The places are

temperatiora quam in Galliâ, frigoribus (pl.)  
 more temperate than in Gaul, the cold

remissioribus.

(being) more mild.

13. Insula naturâ triquetra, unum latus  
 The island (is) by nature triangular one side

cujus est contra Galliam. Alter angulus  
 of which is opposite Gaul. The one angle

hujus lateris, qui est ad Cantium,  
 of this side, which is near Cantium [Kent]



quò naves ex Galliâ fère appelluntur,  
 where ships from Gaul generally are landed,  
 ad orientem solem; inferior  
 (is) toward the rising sun [the East]; the lower (angle)  
 spectat ad meridiem. Hoc latus tēnet  
 looks [is directed] to the south This side holds [extends]  
 circiter quingenta millia passum. Alterum  
 about five hundred thousand (of) paces The other (side)  
 vergit ad Hispaniam, atque occidentem solem:  
 inclines toward Spain, and the setting sun:  
 ex quâ parte est Hibernia, minor  
 from [on] which side is Hibernia [Ireland], less  
 dimidio quàm Britannia, ut existimatur; sed  
 by half than Britain, as it is thought, but  
 transmissus est pari spatio atque ex  
 the passage across is with [of an] equal distance as from  
 Galliâ in Britanniam. In medio hoc cursu  
 Gaul to Britain. In the middle of this course  
 est insula, quæ appellatur Mōna. Complures  
 is an island which is called Mona [Man]. Several  
 minores insulæ præterea existimantur objectæ,  
 lesser [smaller] islands besides are thought (to be) interposed.  
 de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem  
 of which islands some have written, (that) the night  
 esse triginta continuos dies sub bruma.  
 to be [is] thirty successive days under [during] winter.  
 Nos reperiebamus nihil de eo  
 We were discovering nothing concerning this  
 percuntationibus, nisi videbamus certis  
 by inquiries except we were seeing by certain  
 mensuris ex aquâ, noctes esse  
 measures of water. (that) the nights to be [were]  
 breviores quàm in continente. Longitudo hujus  
 shorter than on the continent The length of this  
 latēris est septingentorum millium passum,  
 side is (of) seven hundred thousand (of) paces,  
 ut opinio illorum fert. Tertium  
 as the opinion of them [their opinion] reports The third (side)

est contra Septentrionem; cui parti nulla  
 is opposite the North, to which part no

terra est objecta, sed angulus ejus latëris  
 land is opposed, but the angle of that side

spectat maximè ad Germaniã.  
 looks [is directed] chiefly toward Germany.

Existimatur octingenta millia passuum  
 It is thought (that) eight hundred thousand (of) paces

in longitudinẽ esse huic. Ita  
 in length to be [is] to [on] this (side). Thus

omnis insula est vicies centena millia  
 all the island is twenty times a hundred thousand

passuum in circuitu.<sup>33</sup>  
 (of) paces in compass

14. Ex omnibus his, qui incolunt  
 From [Of] all these, (those) who inhabit

Cantium, sunt longè humanissimi; omnis  
 Cantium [Kent], are by far the most civilized; all

quæ regio est maritima, nèque differunt multum  
 which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much

à Gallicâ consuetudine. Plerique interiores  
 from the Gallic custom. Most of the interior

sèrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt  
 (inhabitants) sow [plant] not corn, but live

lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellibus.  
 on milk and flesh [meat], and are clad with skins

Verò omnes Britanni inficiunt se vitro,  
 But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,

quod efficit cærulẽum colorem, atque hõc  
 which forms a bluish color, and by this

sunt horribiliores adspectu in pugna:  
 they are more frightful in appearance in battle:

que sunt<sup>34</sup> promisso capillo, atque omni parte  
 and they are with long hair, and every part

corpõris rasâ, præter caput et superius  
 of the body shaved, except the head and upper

labrum. Denique duodeni habent uxores  
 lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives

communes inter se, et maxīmè fratres  
common among themselves. and chiefly brothers

cum fratribus, et parentes cum libēris. Sed si  
with brothers. and parents with children But if

qui sunt nati ex his, habentur  
any are born from [of] these they are considered

libēri eorum, quo quæque virgo primum  
the children of those. to whom each virgin first

deducta est.

was married.

15. Equītes que essedarīi hostium  
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemy

confluxerunt acriter prœlio cum nostro equitatu  
engaged sharply in battle with our cavalry

in itinēre, ita tamen, ut nostri fuērint  
on the march. so. nevertheless, that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnibus partibus, atque  
superior in [on] all parts [sides]. and

compulserint (perf. subj.) eos in silvas que  
drove them into the woods and

colles; sed, compluribus interfectis, insecuti  
hills. but. very many having been killed. having pursued

cupidius, amiserunt nonnullos ex  
(them) rather eagerly. they lost some from [of]

suis. At illi, spatio intermisso,  
their own. But they, an interval having been interposed

subito ejecerunt se ex silvis, nostris  
suddenly cast themselves from the woods, our

imprudētibz atque occupatis in  
(men) (being) unaware and engaged in

munitione castrorum (pl.); que impetu  
the fortification of the camp; and an attack

facto in eos, qui collocati erant  
having been made upon these, who had been stationed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnauerunt acriter:  
on picket before the camp. they fought sharply:

que duabus cohortibus missis subsidio à  
and two cohorts having been sent for aid by

Cæsäre, atque his primis duarum legionum,  
Cæsar, and these the first of two legions,

quum hæ constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo  
when these had taken stand, a very small

spatio loci intermisso inter se,  
space of ground having been left between themselves,

nostris perterritis novo genere pugnæ,  
our (men) having been alarmed by the new kind of battle,

proruperunt audacissimè per medios  
they burst most daringly through the midst (of our men)

que receperunt se inde incolūmes.  
and betook themselves from there safe [safely].

Eo diè Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus  
On this day Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune

militum interficitur: illi repelluntur, pluribus  
of soldiers is slain: they are repulsed, more

cohortibus submissis.  
cohorts having been sent up.

16. In hoc toto genere pugnæ, quum  
In this whole kind of battle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub oculis omnium ac  
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum est, nostros  
before the camp, it was understood. (that) our (men)

esse minùs aptos ad hostem hujus generis,  
to be [were] less adapted to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent  
on account of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) nèque insèqui cedentes, nèque  
neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedere ab signis;  
(did) they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equites dimicare prælio cum magno  
but the cavalry (to) contend in battle with great

periculo, propterèa quòd illi etiā cedèrent (imp.  
danger, because (that) they also were giving way

subj.) plerumque consultò; et quum removissent  
very often [purposely]; and when they had removed

(pluperf. subj.) nostros paulum ab legionibus,  
our (men) a little from the legions.

desilirent ex essedis et contendèrent  
they would leap down from the chariots and would contend

pedibus dispāri praelio. (Autem ratio  
with feet [on foot] in an equal fight. (But the method

equestris praelii, et cedentibus et  
of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and

insequentibus, inferebat par atque idem  
pursuing, was offering an equal and the same

periculum.) Accedebat huc,<sup>36</sup> ut  
[a like] danger ) It was added to this, that

praeliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed  
they were fighting never in close order, but

rari que magnis intervallis, que  
few [in open ranks] and at great distances, and

haberent (imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alii<sup>36</sup>  
were having pickets posted; and some

excipèrent (imp. subj.) alios deinceps, que  
were relieving others in succession, and

integri et recentes succedèrent (imp. subj.)  
fresh and new (men) were replacing

defatigatis.  
the exhausted

17 Postero die hostes constiterunt  
On the following day the enemy took stand

procul à castris (pl.) in collibus; que rari  
far from the camp on the hills, and squads

cœperunt ostendere se, et lacescere nostros  
began to show themselves, and to provoke our

equites praelio lentius, quam pridie.  
cavalry to battle more slowly, than the day before.

Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)  
But at noon, when Cæsar had sent

tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio  
three legions and all the cavalry with Caius

Trebonio legato causâ pabulandi,  
Trebonius the lieutenant for the sake of foraging.

advolaverunt they flew	repentè suddenly	ad to	pabulatores the foragers	ex from
omnibus all	partibus, parts [sides],	sic so	ut that	non they were not
absisterent <sup>37</sup> keeping apart	(imp. subj.)	ab from	signis the standards	que and
legionibus. the legions	Nostri, Our (men)	impetu an attack	facto having been made	acriter sharply
in upon	eos, repulerunt, them, repulsed (them)	nèque nor	fecerunt did they make	finem an end
insequendi, of pursuing.	quod while	equites, the cavalry.	confisi relying	subsidio, on aid.
quum since	viderent (imp subj.) they were seeing	legiones the legions	post behind	
se, themselves.	egerunt drove	hostes the enemy	præcipites: headlong.	que magno and a great
numero number	eorum of them	interfecto, having been killed	nèque neither	dederunt they gave
facultatem <sup>38</sup> the power [the chance]	colligendi of collecting	sui themselves	nèque nor	
consistendi, of halting,	aut or [nor]	desiliendi of leaping down	ex from	essedis. the chariots.
Auxilia, The auxiliaries	quæ which	convenérant had assembled	undique, from every side.	
discesserunt departed	protinus immediately	ex after	hâc this	fûgâ; nèque flight. nor
post id tempus after this time	(did)	hostes the enemy	unquam ever	contenderunt contended
[contend]	nobiscum with us	summis with (their) highest	copiis [entire] forces.	
18. Cæsar, Cæsar,	eorum their	consilio design	cognito, having been known.	duxit led
exercitum the army	ad to	flumen the river	Tamēsin Tamesis [Thames]	in into
fines the territories	Cassivellauni: of Cassivellaunus	quod which	flumen river	pōtest is able
transiri to be crossed	pedibus (pl.) on foot	omnino only	uno in one	lōco, atque place, and

hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)  
 in this with difficulty When he had come  
 ðð, animadvertit magnas copias hostium  
 there. he perceived (that) great forces of the enemy  
 esse instructas ad altèram ripam fluminis.  
 to be [were] drawn up at [near] the other bank of the river.  
 Autem ripa erat munita acutis sudibus  
 But the bank was fortified with sharp stakes  
 præfixis, que sudes ejusdem generis defixæ  
 fixed in front, and stakes of the same kind driven  
 sub aquâ tegebantur flumine. Iis rebus  
 under water were covered by the river These things  
 cognitis à captivis que perfugis,  
 having been learned from the prisoners and deserters,  
 Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, jussit  
 Cæsar the cavalry having been sent before, ordered  
 legiones subséquì confestim. Sed milites  
 the legions to follow immediately But the soldiers  
 ierunt eâ celeritate atque eo  
 went with this [such] speed and with this [such]  
 impetu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex  
 force, when they were standing out from  
 aquâ capite solo, ut hostes possent  
 the water with the head alone, that the enemy were able  
 (imp. subj.) non sustinere impetum legionum  
 not to withstand the attack of the legions  
 que equitum, que dimitterent (imp. subj.)  
 and of the cavalry and were abandoning  
 ripas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se  
 the banks and were consigning themselves  
 fugæ.  
 to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-  
 Cassivellaunus all hope of a contest having been  
 posita, ut demonstravimus supra, amplioribus  
 abandoned. as we have shown above (his) larger  
 copiis dimissis, circiter quatuor millibus  
 forces having been dismissed, about four thousand

essedariorum      relicitis,      servabat      nostra  
 (of) charioteers      having been left      was watching      our  
 itinēra, que      excedebat      paulum      ex      viā,  
 marches, and      was withdrawing      a little      from      the way,  
 que      occultabat      sese      impeditis      atque  
 and      was concealing      himself      in entangled      and  
 silvestribus      locis,      atque      compellebat      pecora (pl.)  
     woody      places      and      was driving      the cattle  
 atque homines      ex      agris      in      silvas      iis  
     and      men      from      the fields      into      the woods      from these  
 regionibus,      quibus      cognovērat      nos      fac-  
     regions,      in which      he had known      us [we]      about to [would]  
 turos      iter:      et      quum      noster      equitatus      ejecerat  
 make      the march      and      when      our      cavalry      cast  
     se      liberius      in      agros      causā      vastandi  
     itself      more freely      into      the fields      for the sake      of ravaging  
 que      prædandi,      mittebat      essedarios      ex  
 and      of plundering.      he was dispatching      the charioteers      from  
     silvis      omnibus      viis      que      semitis; et      configebat  
     the woods      by all      ways      and      paths      and      was combatting  
 cum      iis      cum      magno      periculo      nostrorum      equitum;  
 with      them      with      great      danger      of [to] our      horsemen,  
 atque      hoc      metu      prohibebat      vagari  
     and      by this      fear      was hindering (them)      to rove [from roving]  
     latius      Relinquebatur,      ut      Cæsar      neque  
     more widely.      It was left.      that      Cæsar      neither  
     pateretur      discedi<sup>39</sup>      longius      ab  
     would allow      (it) to be departed [them to depart]      farther      from  
     agmine      legionum;      et      noceretur  
     the marching-line      of the legions:      and      it might be injured [they  
     hostibus      in      vastandis      agris,      que  
     might injure]      (to) the enemy      in      ravaging      the fields,      and  
 faciendis      incendiis      tantum      quantum      legionarii  
     in making      burnings [fires]      as much      as      the legionary  
 milites      poterant      efficere      labore      atque      itinere.  
 soldiers      were able      to effect      by labor      and      on the march  
 20. Intērim      Trinobantes,      propè      firmissima  
     Meanwhile      the Trinobantes,      nearly      the strongest



civitas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubracius  
 state of these countries. from which Mandubracius  
 adolescens, secutus fidem Cæsaris,  
 a youth, having secured the good faith of Cæsar,  
 venerat ad eum in continentem (Galliam), (cujus  
 had come to him to the continent (Gaul), (whose  
 pater obtinuerat regnum in eâ  
 father had obtained the kingdom [the throne] in this  
 civitate, que interfectus erat à Cassivellauno.  
 state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus;  
 ipse vitaverat mortem fugâ,) mittunt  
 he himself had avoided death by flight,) send  
 legatos ad Cæsarem, que pollicentur dedit-  
 ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise (that) to be about to  
 uros (esse) sese ei et facturos  
 [they would] surrender themselves to him and about to [would] do  
 imperata Petunt ut defendat  
 (his) commands They request that he may defend  
 Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni, atque  
 Mandubracius from the injustice of Cassivellaunus. and  
 mittat in civitatem, qui præsit  
 may send (him) into (their) state. who may preside [be over it]  
 que obtineat imperium. Cæsar imperat his(dat.)  
 and may obtain the authority Cæsar orders these  
 quadraginta obsides que frumentum  
 (to furnish) forty hostages and corn  
 exercitui; que mittit Mandubratium ad eos.  
 for the army. and sends Mandubracius to them.  
 Illi fecerunt imperata celeriter; miserunt  
 They did (his) commands quickly, they sent  
 obsides ad numerum, que frumentum.  
 hostages to the number (stated), and corn.

21. Trinobantibus defensis, atque  
 The Trinobantes having been protected, and

prohibitis ab omni injuriâ militum,  
 having been kept from all injury of the soldiers.

Cenimagni, Segontiâci, Ancalites, Bibrôci, Cassi,  
 the Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi,

legationibus missis, dederunt sese  
 embassies having been sent, surrendered themselves

Cæsari. Cognoscit ab his, oppidum  
 to Cæsar. He understands from these, (that) the town

Cassivellauni abesse non longè ex eo  
 of Cassivellaunus to be [is] distant not far from this

lòco, munitum silvis que paludibus, quò  
 place, fortified by woods and by marshes, whither

numërus satis magnus hominum que pecoris  
 a number sufficiently great of men and of cattle

convenërit (perf. subj.). Autem Britanni vocant  
 has assembled. But the Britons call

oppidum, quò consueverunt convenire,  
 (that) a town, where they have been accustomed to assemble.

causâ vitandæ incursionis hostium, quum  
 for the sake of avoiding an invasion of the enemy, when

muniërent impeditas silvas vallo  
 they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart

atque fossâ. Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus:  
 and a trench. Thither he sets out with the legions:

repërit locum egregiè munitum naturâ atque  
 he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and

opère; tamen contendit oppugnare hunc  
 by work [art]: however he endeavors to storm this

ex duabus partibus. Hostes morati  
 from [on] two sides. The enemy having delayed

paulisper, non tulerunt impetum nostrorum  
 a little while, did not bear the attack of our

militum, que ejecerunt sese ex aliâ parte  
 soldiers, and cast out themselves from another part

oppidi. Magnus numërus pecoris repertus (est)  
 of the town. A great number of cattle was found

ibi; que multi<sup>40</sup> comprehensi sunt atque interfecti  
 there; and many were seized and killed

in fugâ.  
 in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his  
 While these (things) are transpiring in these

lōcis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntios ad Cantium,  
 places. Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium

[Kent], quod demonstravimus suprā esse ad  
 which we have shown above to be [is] at [near]

mare, quibus regionibus quatuor reges præerant,  
 the sea, which countries four kings ruled.

Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax; atque  
 Cingetorix, Carvilius. Taximagulus Segonax: and

impērat his, ut omnibus copiis  
 he commands these. that all (their) forces

coactis, adorianatur navalia castra (pl.)  
 having been collected, they attack the naval camp

de improvise, atque oppugnent. Quum hi  
 unexpectedly, and storm (it). When these

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,  
 had come to the camp, our (men).

eruptione factā, multis eorum inter-  
 a sally having been made many of these having been

fectis, etiā nobili dūce Lugotorige  
 killed, also (their) noble leader Lugotorix

capto, reduxerunt suos incolūmes.  
 having been taken (they) led back their (men) safe.

Cassivellaunus, hoc prœlio nuntiatio, tot  
 Cassivellaunus, this battle having been announced so many

detrimentis acceptis, finibus  
 reverses having been received. (his) territories (having been)

vastatis, etiā maxime permotus defectione  
 ravaged also chiefly alarmed by the revolt

civitatum, mittit legatos ad Cæsarem per  
 of the states. sends ambassadors to Caesar through

Commium Atrebatem de deditione. Quum  
 Commius the Atrebatian about a surrender. Since

Cæsar statuisset (pl. perf. subj.) agere hiemem  
 Caesar had resolved to spend the winter

in continente propter repentinos motus  
 on the continent on account of the sudden commotions

Galliæ; neque multum æstatis superesset;  
 of Gaul; nor much of the summer was remaining;

(imp. subj.); atque intelligēret (imp. subj.), id  
 and he was understanding (that), this  
 posse extrāhi facīlè, impērat  
 to be able [could] (to) be protracted easily, he demands  
 obsīdes; et constitūit quid vectigalis Britannīa  
 hostages; and decreed what (of) tribute Britain  
 pendēret Romano popūlo in singūlos annos  
 should pay to the Roman people (on) each year.  
 (pl.). Interdicit<sup>41</sup> atque impērat Cassivellauno  
 He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus,  
 (dat.), ne nocēat Mandubracio (dat.), neu  
 (that) he may not injure Mandubracius, nor

Trinobantibus.

the Trinobantes.

### 23. Obsidibus

The hostages

acceptis,

having been received.

reducit

he leads back

exercitum ad mǎre: invenit naves repectas.  
 the army to the sea: he finds the ships repaired.

His deductis, constitūit reportare  
 These having been launched he resolved to carry back

exercitum duobus commeatibus, et quōd  
 the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numērum captivorum, et  
 he was having a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperiērant tempestate. Ac  
 some ships had perished by the storm. And

accidit sic, ut ex tanto numēro navium  
 it happened so, that from so great a number of ships

tot navigationibus, nēque hoc nēque  
 in so many voyages, neither in this nor

superiore anno, ulla navis omnino, quæ  
 in the foregoing year, any ship at all which

portaret (imp. subj.) milītes, desideraretur (imp.  
 was carrying the soldiers, was missing

subj.), at ex iis, quæ remitterentur  
 but from [of] these, which were sent back

(imp. subj.) inanes ad eum ex continente, et<sup>42</sup>  
 empty to him from the continent, (and)

militibus prioris com meatûs expositis,  
the soldiers of the former [first] passage having been landed.

et quas<sup>43</sup> Labienus postea curaverat  
and which Labienus afterwards had taken care

faciendas, numero sexaginta, perpaucae  
to [should] be made, in number sixty, very few

caperent (imp. subj.) locum, fere omnes  
were taking [reaching] the place, nearly all

reliquae rejicerentur (imp. subj.). Quas<sup>44</sup> quum  
the rest were thrown back. Which when

Cæsar expectasset (pl. perf. subj.) aliquandiu frustra,  
Cæsar had awaited some time in vain,

ne excluderetur navigatione tempore  
lest he might be prevented from the voyage by the time

anni, quod æquinoctium suberat, necessario  
of the year, because the equinox was near (he) necessarily

collocavit milites angustius. Ac consecutus  
stowed the soldiers more closely. And having secured

summam tranquillitatem quum solvisset  
the utmost calm when he had cast loose.

(pl. perf. subj.), secundâ vigiliâ inîta,  
the second watch having been begun.

attigit terram primâ luce, que  
he touched land in the first light [early dawn] and

perduxit omnes naves incolûmes.  
brought in all the ships safe

24. Navibus subductis, que concilio  
The ships having been drawn up and a council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractò,  
of the Gauls at Samarobriva having been completed.

coactus est collocare exercitum in hibernis  
he was compelled to place the army in winter quarters

aliter ac superioribus annis, que distribuere  
otherwise than in former years and distribute

legiones in plures civitates, quod èo anno  
the legions into more states because in this year

frumentum provenerat angustius in  
the corn had yielded more narrowly [scantily] in

Galliā, propter siccitates: ex quibus<sup>45</sup>  
 Gaul, on account of the droughts: from [of] which  
 dedit unam Caio Fabio legato ducendam  
 he gave one to Caius Fabius the lieutenant to be led  
 in Morinos, alteram Quinto Ciceroni in  
 among the Morini. another to Quintus Cicero among  
 Nervios, tertiam Lucio Roscio in Esvios;  
 the Nervii, the third to Lucius Roscius among the Esvii;  
 jussit quartam hiemare in confinio Trevirorum,  
 he ordered the fourth to winter on the border of the Treviri,  
 in Remis cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres  
 among the Remi with Titus Labienus: he placed three  
 in Belgio: præfecit his Marcum Crassum  
 in Belgium: he appointed over these Marcus Crassus  
 quæstorem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum, et  
 (as) quæstor and Lucius Munatius Plancus and  
 Caium Trebonium legatos. Misit unam  
 Caius Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one  
 legionem, quam conscripsêrat proximè trans Padum,  
 legion. which he had levied very lately across the Po,  
 et quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxima  
 and five cohorts, into the Eburones, the greatest  
 pars quorum est inter Mosam et Rhenum,  
 part of whom is between the Mense and the Rhine  
 qui erant sub imperio Ambiorigis et  
 who were under the authority of Ambiorix and  
 Catuvolci. Jussit legatos Quintum Titurium  
 of Catuvolcus. He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius  
 Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam  
 Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta  
 præesse his militibus (dat.). Legionibus distri-  
 to command these soldiers The legions having been  
 butis ad hunc modum, existimavit  
 distributed according to this manner, he thought (that he)  
 sese posse mederi facillimè frumentariæ  
 himself to be able [could] (to) relieve most easily (to) the corn  
 inopiæ: atque tamen hiberna omnium  
 scarcity: and moreover the winter quarters of all

harum legionum continebantur centum millibus  
of these legions were contained in a hundred thousand

passuum (præter eam, quam dederat Lucio  
(of) paces (except this (one), which he had given to Lucius

Roscio ducendam in pacatissimam et  
Roscius to be led into the most peaceful and

quietissimam partem). Inter ea ipse constituit  
calmest portion). Meanwhile (he) himself resolved

morari in Galliâ, quoad cognovisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
to tarry in Gaul, until he had known

legiones collocatas, que hiberna  
(that) the legions being [were] settled, and the winter quarters

munita.  
fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutibus Tasgetius natus  
There was among the Carnutes Tasgetius born

summo loco; cujus majores obtinuérant  
in the highest place [rank], whose ancestors had obtained

regnum in sua civitate. Cæsar  
the kingdom [sovereignty] in their own state. Cæsar

restituérat locum majorum huic pro  
had restored the position of (his) ancestors to him for

ejus virtute atque benevolentia in se,  
his valor and (his) good will toward himself,

quod usus fuerat ejus singulari (abl.) operâ  
because he had used his remarkable works

in omnibus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt  
[efforts] in all the wars. (His) enemies slew

hunc palam, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis  
him openly, reigning now the third year, many

etiam ex civitate auctoribus. Ea  
also from [of] the state (being) authors (of the deed). This

res defertur ad Cæsarem. Ille veritus,  
matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,

ne civitas deficeret impulsu eorum,  
lest the state might revolt by the instigation of these,

quod res pertinebat ad plures, celeriter  
because the affair was relating to several, quickly

jūbet Lucium Plancum proficisci in Carnutes  
orders Lucius Plancus to set out among the Carnutes  
cum legione ex Belgio, que hiemare ibi;  
with a legion from Belgium, and to winter there;  
que mittere hos comprehensos ad se,  
and to send those arrested to himself,  
opĕrā<sup>46</sup> quorum cognovĕrit Tasgetium  
by the work of whom he may have learned Tasgetius  
interfectum. Intĕrim factus est certior  
(to have [had] been) killed Meantime he was made more sure  
ab omnibus legatis que  
[was informed] by all the lieutenants and  
quæstoribus, quibus tradidĕrat legiones,  
quæstors, to whom he had delivered the legions.  
perventum esse in hiberna, que  
to have been [that they had] arrived into winter quarters, and  
lōcum munitum hibernis.  
the place (to have [had] been) fortified for winter quarters  
26. Quindĕcim diebus circĭter quibus  
In fifteen days about in which [since]  
ventum est in hiberna, initium  
it was come [they came] into winter quarters, the beginning  
repentini tumultūs ac defectionis ortum est ab  
of a sudden tumult and revolt arose by  
Ambiorĭge et Catuvolco: qui quum fuissent  
Ambiorix and Catuvolcus: who although they had been  
(pl. perf subj.) præstō Sabino que Cottæ  
near (to) Sabinus and (to) Cotta  
ad fines sūi regni, que comportavissent  
at the borders of their kingdom and had carried  
(plup. subj.) frumentum in hiberna, impul-  
corn into winter quarters, having been  
si nuntĭis Indutiomāri Treviri,  
instigated by the messengers of Indutiomarus the Treviri,  
concitaverunt sūos que lignatoribus  
incited their own (people); and the wood cutters  
oppressis subitō, venerunt magnā  
having been overwhelmed suddenly, they came with a great



mānu oppugnatum castra (pl.). Quum nostri  
 band to assault the camp. When our (men)  
 cepissent (pl. perf. subj.) arma celeriter, que  
 had taken arms quickly, and  
 adscendissent (pl. perf. subj.) vallum, atque  
 had ascended the rampart, and  
 Hispanis equitibus emissis ex unā  
 the Spanish cavalry having been sent out from one  
 parte, fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) superiores  
 part [side] had been superior  
 equestri praelio, re desperatā,  
 in the cavalry fight. the thing [action] having been despaired of,  
 hostes reduxerunt suos ab oppugnatione.  
 the enemy led back their (men) from the assault.  
 Tum conclamaverunt suo more, uti aliqui  
 Then they cried out in their manner, that some  
 ex nostris prodirent ad colloquium;  
 from [of] our (people) should come forth to a conference;  
 sese habere, quæ vellent  
 (that they) themselves (to) have (things). which they wish  
 (imp. subj.) dicere de communi re, quibus  
 to say about a common matter, by which  
 sperarent (imp. subj.) controversias posse  
 they were hoping (that) the disputes to be able [could]  
 minui.  
 (to) be diminished

27. Caius Arpineius, Romanus eques, familiaris  
 Caius Arpineius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance

Quinti Titurū mittitur ad eos causā  
 of Quintus Titurius is sent to them for the sake  
 colloquendi; que Quintus Junius, quidam ex  
 of conferring; and Quintus Junius, a certain (one) from  
 Hispaniā, qui jam antè consueverat  
 Spain, who already before had been accustomed  
 ventitare ad Ambiorigem, missu Cæsaris.  
 to come often to Ambiorix, on the mission of Cæsar.  
 Apud quos Ambiorix locutus est in hunc  
 Before whom Ambiorix spoke after this

mōdum : "Sese confiteri debere  
 manner : "He himself to confess [confesses] to owe [that he owed]  
 plurimum ei, pro beneficiis Cæsaris in  
 very much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar toward  
 se, quod ejus opēra liberatus esset (pl. perf.  
 himself, because by his efforts he had been freed  
 subj.) stipendio, quod consuēset (pl. perf.  
 from the tribute, which he had been accustomed  
 subj.) pendere suis finitimis Aduatucis; que  
 to pay to his neighbors the Aduatuci; and  
 quod et filius et filius fratris,  
 because both (his) son and the son of (his) brother,  
 quos Aduatuci tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 whom the Aduatuci had held in  
 servitute et catenis apud se, missos  
 slavery and chains among themselves, having been sent  
 numero obsidum, remissi essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 in the number of hostages, had been returned  
 ab Cæsare: neque fecisse id,  
 by Cæsar: nor (that he) to have [had] done this.  
 quod fecerit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione  
 which he had done in the storming  
 castrorum (pl.), aut judicio aut  
 of the camp, either by (his own) judgment or  
 sua voluntate, sed coactu civitatis: que  
 his own will, but by compulsion of the state: and  
 sua imperia (pl.) esse ejusmodi, ut  
 his own authority to be [was] of this sort, that  
 multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non minus  
 the multitude were having not less  
 juris in se, quam ipse in  
 (of) jurisdiction towards himself than (he) himself towards  
 multitudinem. Porro hanc fuisse causam  
 the multitude. Moreover this to have [had] been the cause  
 belli civitati: quod potuerit (perf. subj.)  
 of war for the state: because he was able  
 non resistere repentinæ conjurationi Gallorum;  
 not to withstand (to) the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls;

se posse probare id facîle ex  
 he himself to be [was] able to prove this easily from

sua humilitate; quòd sit non adèd  
 his own humbleness [weakness]: because he is not so

imperitus rerum (gen.), ut confidat  
 unacquainted with things, that he may trust (that he)

se posse superare Romanum populum  
 himself to be able [can] (to) overcome the Roman people

suis copiis; sed esse commune consilium  
 with his forces; but to be [it is] the common design

Galliæ. Hunc esse dictum diem omnibus  
 of Gaul. This to be [is] the said [appointed] day of all

hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis, ne qua  
 the winter quarters of Cæsar to be assaulted lest any

legio posset venire subsidio alteri  
 legion might be able [should] (to) come for aid to another

legioni: Gallos<sup>47</sup> non facîle potuisse negare  
 legion Gauls not easily to have been [are] able to refuse

Gallis (dat.); præsertim quum consilium videretur  
 Gauls; especially when a design was seeming

(imp. subj.) initum de recuperandâ  
 entered into concerning regaining

communi libertate. Quibus quoniam satisfacèrit  
 'the) common liberty. Whom since he has satisfied

(perf. subj.) pro pietate, se  
 for [as regarded] patriotism, (he) himself

habere nunc rationem officii; monere<sup>48</sup>  
 to have [had] now a regard of moral duty; to advise

Cæsarem pro beneficiis, orare Titurium pro  
 Cæsar for (his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for

hospitio, ut consulat suæ saluti  
 (his) hospitality, that he may consult for his own safety

ac militum: magnam manum Germanorum  
 and (that) of the soldiers: a great band of Germans

conductam transisse Rhenum; hanc  
 having been hired (to) have crossed the Rhine; this

affore biduo: esse<sup>49</sup> ipsorum  
 to be about to [would] be in two days: to be [it is] their

consilium vēlint ne deducere milites eductos  
counsel whether they wish to conduct the soldiers led out

ex hibernis aut ad Ciceronem aut ad  
from winter quarters either to Cicero or to

Labienum, prius quàm finitimi sentiant;  
Labienus, before (that) (their) neighbors may perceive (it):

alter quorum absit (pres. subj.) circiter quinquaginta  
the one of whom is distant about fifty

millia passuum, alter paulò amplius:  
thousand (of) paces, the other a little more:

se polliceri illud et  
(that he) himself to promise [promises] that [this] and

confirmare jurejurando, se dat-  
to affirm [affirms] by oath, (that he) himself about to

urum tutum iter per suos fines:  
[would] give a safe journey through his territories:

quod<sup>50</sup> quum faciat sese et consulere  
which when he does (he) himself both to consult

civitati, quòd levetur  
[consults] for the state, because it may be relieved

hibernis, et referre gratiam Cæsari  
from winter quarters, and to return [returns] a favor to Cæsar

pro ejus meritis." Hæc oratione habita,  
for his services." This speech having been delivered,

Ambiorix discedit.  
Ambiorix departs.

28. Caius Arpineius et Junius defērunt ad  
Caius Arpineius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audiērant. Illi perturbati  
the lieutenants what they had heard. They, much disturbed

repentinâ re, etsi hæc  
by the sudden affair [condition], although these (things)

dicebantur ab hoste, tamen existimabant  
were said by an enemy. however were thinking (that

non negligenda: que maxime  
they) not to [must not] be neglected: and especially

permovebantur hæc re, quòd erat  
were much alarmed by this affair [condition], because it was

vix	credendum	ignobilem	atque	humilem
hardly	to be believed (that)	the mean	and	humble
civitatem	Eburonum	ausam (esse)	facere	
state	of the Eburones	to [would] have dared	to make	
bellum	sua	sponte	Romano	populo.
war	by [of] its own	accord	on the Roman	people
Itaque	deferunt	rem	ad concilium, que	
Therefore	they report	the matter	to a council and	
magna	controversia	existit	inter eos	Lucius
a great	controversy	arises	among them.	Lucius
Aurunculeius	que complures	tribuni	militum et	
Aurunculeius	and very many	tribunes	of soldiers and	
centuriones	primorum ordinum	existinabant	"nihil" <sup>51</sup>	
centurions	of the first ranks	were thinking	"nothing	
agendum	temere, neque	discedendum		
to [must] be acted	rashly nor	to be departed [must they		
ex	hibernis	injussu	Cæsaris.	
depart] from	winter quarters	without the command	of Cæsar	
Docebant	quantavis	magnas	copias	
They were showing	(that) howsoever	great	the forces	
etiam	Germanorum	posse	sustineri,	
even	of the Germans	to be able [they could]	(to) be withstood.	
hibernis	munitis.	Rem <sup>52</sup>		
the winter quarters	having been fortified	The thing [fact]		
esse	testimonio,	quod	sustinuerint (perf.	
to be [is]	for a testimony	that	they have withstood	
subj.)	fortissimè	primum	impetum	hostium,
	most bravely	the first	attack	of the enemy.
multis	vulneribus	illatis	ultrò.	Non
many	wounds	having been inflicted	besides.	Not
premi	frumentaria	re.	Interè <sup>53</sup>	
to be [They are not] pressed	by the corn	supply	Meantime	
subsidia	conventura	et ex	proximis	
aids	(to be) [are] about to assemble	both from	the nearest	
hibernis	et à	Cæsare.	Postremò, quid	
winter quarters	and from	Cæsar	Lastly what	
esse	levius	aut	turpius,	quam capere
to be [is]	lighter	or	more base	than to take

consilium de summis rebus, hoste  
counsel about the most important matters, an enemy

auctore?

(being) the adviser?

29. Contra ęa Titurius clamitabat,  
Against those (reasonings) Titurius was exclaiming.

"facturos serò, quum majores mǎnus  
"about to [they would] act late, when greater bands

hostium, Germanis adjunctis, conven-  
of the enemy. the Germans having been united, should have

issent; aut quum aliquid (neuter) calamitatis  
assembled; or when some (of) calamity

acceptum essent in proximis hibernis.  
might have [had] been received in the nearest winter quarters.

Occasionem consulendi esse brevem Arbitrari  
The opportunity of consulting to be [was] short To believe

Cæsarem profectum (esse) in Italiam:  
[He believes] Cæsar to have [had] set out into Italy:

nęque<sup>54</sup> Carnutes aliter fuisse  
neither the Carnutes otherwise to have been [would have]

capturos consilium interficiendi Tasgeti;  
about to form [formed] the design of slaying Tasgetius;

nęque Eburones esse venturos ad castra  
nor the Eburones to be about to [would] come to the camp

(pl.) cum tantâ contemptione nostri, si ille  
with so great contempt of [for] us. if he

adesset (imp. subj.). Non spectare hostem  
were near. He does not (to) regard the enemy

auctorem sed rem Rhenum subesse:  
(as) an adviser but the fact The Rhine to be [is] near:

mortem Ariovisti et nostras superiores victorias,  
the death of Ariovistus and our former victories,

esse magno dolori Germanis: Galliam  
to be [are] a (for) great grief to the Germans. Gaul

ardere tot contumeliis acceptis, reductam  
is aflame so many insults having been received, reduced

sub imperium Romani populi, superiore  
under the authority of the Roman people. the former

gloriâ militaris rēi (sing.) extinctâ.  
 glory of (its) military affairs having been extinguished

Postremò, quis persuaderet<sup>55</sup> hoc sibi,  
 Lastly who should persuade this to himself, (that)

Ambiorigem descendisse ad consilium  
 Ambiorix to have [had] descended to advice

ejusmodi sine certâ re? Sūam  
 of this kind without a sure thing [reason]? His

sententiâ esse tutam in utramque  
 opinion to be [was] safe for either

partem: si sit nil durius,  
 part [case]. if there may be nothing harder [worse].

perventuros (esse) ad proximam legionem  
 to be about to [they would] arrive at the nearest legion

cum nullo pericûlo; si omnis Gallia conseniât  
 with no danger if all Gaul conspires

cum Germanis, unam salutem esse positam  
 with the Germans the one safety to be [is] placed

in celeritate Quîdem quem exitum consilium  
 in speed Indeed what result [would] the advice

Cottæ atque eorum, qui dissentirent, haberet?  
 of Cotta and of those who might disagree, have?

In quo<sup>56</sup> si non præsens pericûlum, at certè  
 In which if not present danger, still certainly

fâmes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."  
 famine would be to [must] be dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habîtâ in utramque  
 This dispute having been kept up on both

partem (sing.) quum resisteretur (imp subj.) acriter  
 sides since it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordinibus; Sabinus inquit,  
 by Cotta and the first ranks. Sabinus says,

"Vincite, si vultis ita," et id clariore  
 "Conquer if ye wish so" and this with a louder

voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret:  
 voice that a great part of the soldiers might hear

"nèque sum is," inquit, "ex vobis.  
 "neither am I this (man)" says he "from [of] you

qui terrëar gravissimè periculò mortis.  
 who is frightened most severely by the danger of death

Hi sapiënt; et, si quid gravius  
 These (men) will know; and. if any (thing) more severe

accidërit, reposcent rationem abs te:  
 shall have happened they will demand an account from thee;

qui, si licëat per te, conjuncti cum  
 who, if it were allowed by thee, being united with

proximis hibernis dië perendino,  
 the nearest winter quarters on the day after to-morrow.

sustinëant communem casum cum reliquis; nec  
 would endure a common chance with the rest nor

rejecti et relegati longè ab cætëris,  
 driven back and separated far from the rest.

intereant aut ferro aut fãme."  
 would perish either by iron [the sword] or by famine "

Consurgitur ex concilio: comprehendunt  
 It is risen [They rise] from the council they seize

utrumque et orant; "ne deducant rem  
 both and beseech, "they may not bring the thing

in summum periculum suã dissensione  
 [situation] into the highest danger by their dissension

et pertinaciã: rem esse facilem, seu  
 and obstinacy the matter to be [is] easy, whether

manëant seu proficiscantur, si modò omnes  
 they remain or set out. if only all

sentiant ac pröbent unum Contrà,  
 may think and may approve one (thing) On the other hand.

se perspicere nullam salutem in  
 (they) themselves (to) perceive no safety in

dissensione." Res perducitur disputatione ad  
 dissension." The matter is protracted in dispute to

mediam noctem.  
 mid night

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat manus:  
 At length Cotta having been moved gives hands

sententiã Sabini supërat. Pronuntiatur  
 [yields]: the opinion of Sabinus prevails It is announced



ituros                      primâ                      luce.  
about to (that they) [would] go      at the first      light [day-break]

Reliqua      pars      noctis      consumitur      vigiliis (pl.);  
The remaining      part      of the night      is spent      in sleeplessness :

quum      quisque      miles      circumspiceret (imp. subj.)  
since      each      soldier      was examining

sua,                      quid                      posset                      portare      cum  
his own (things)      what      he might be able      to carry      with

se,      quid                      cogere                      relinquere      ex  
himself.      what      he might be compelled      to leave      from

instrumento                      hibernorum.                      Omnia<sup>57</sup>  
the equipment                      of the winter quarters                      All (things)

excogitantur,      quare                      maneat  
are devised      wherefore      it may be remained [they may remain]

ne      sine      periculo,      et      periculum      augeatur  
not      without      danger      and      the danger      may be increased

languore                      et                      vigiliis (pl)                      militum.  
by the weariness      and      by the sleeplessness      of the soldiers.

Proficiscuntur<sup>58</sup>                      primâ                      luce                      ex  
They set out                      at the first                      light [early dawn]                      from

castris (pl)      sic,                      ut                      quibus      esset (imp.  
the camp                      so [just].                      as (they)                      to whom      it was

subj.) persuasum                      consilium                      datum esse  
persuaded      (that)      the advice      to have [had] been given

non      ab      hoste,      sed<sup>59</sup>      ab      amicissimo      homine  
not      by      an enemy      but      by      a most friendly      man

Ambiorge,      longissimo                      agmine      que      magnis  
Ambiorix      in a very long      marching line      and      with great

impedimentis (pl.).  
baggage

32 At      posteaquam                      hostes                      senserunt                      de  
But      after (that)      the enemy      learned      about

eorum      profectio                      ex                      nocturno                      fremitu      que  
their      departure                      from      the night      din      and

vigiliis,                      insidiis                      collocatis                      bipartito  
sleeplessness.      ambushes      having been placed      in two divisions

in      silvis,                      opportuno                      atque                      occulto      loco,  
in      the woods.      in a convenient      and      secret      place

expectabant adventum Romanorum à circiter  
they were waiting the approach of the Romans at about

duobus millibus passuum: et quum major  
two thousand (of) paces: and when the greater

pars agminis demisisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
part of the marching-line had sent down

se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt  
itself [descended] into a great valley, they showed

sese subito ex utraque parte ejus vallis;  
themselves suddenly on each side of this valley,

que cœperunt premere novissimos et prohibere  
and began to press the newest [rear] and to hinder

primos adscensu, atque committere prœlium  
the first [van] from the ascent, and to engage battle

loco iniquissimo nostris.  
in a place most unfavorable to our (men).

33. Tum demum Titurius trepidare,  
Then at last Titurius to bustle [bustled],

concursare que disponere cohortes, uti  
to run [ran] about and to arrange [arranged] the cohorts, as

qui providisset (pl. perf. subj.) nihil antè,  
(one) who had foreseen nothing before,

tamen, hæc ipsa timide, atque  
however, (he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and

ut omnia viderentur (imp. subj.) deficere  
as (if) all (things) were seeming to fail (him)

quod plerumque consuevit accidere iis qui  
which usually is accustomed to happen to those who

coguntur capere consilium in negotio ipso.  
are forced to take counsel in the business itself.

At Cotta, qui cogitasset (pl. perf. subj.) hæc  
But Cotta, who had thought these

posse accidere in itinere, atque  
(things) to be able to [could] happen on the march, and

ob eam causam non fuisset (pl. perf.  
on account of this reason had not been

subj.) auctor profectionis, deerat communi  
the adviser of the departure, was failing for the common

salutē in nullā re; et præstabat<sup>60</sup> officiā  
 safety in no thing; and was performing the duties  
 imperatoris in appellandis que cohortandis militibus  
 of a general in addressing and exhorting the soldiers  
 et militis in pugnâ. Que quum propter  
 and of a soldier in the battle. And when on account of  
 longitudinē agminis, possent (imp. subj.)  
 the length of the marching-line, they were able  
 minùs facîle obire omniā per se,  
 less easily to perform all (things) by themselves,  
 et providere, quid esset faciendum quoque  
 and to provide, what might be to [must] be done in every  
 loco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut relinquērent  
 place: they ordered (it) to be proclaimed that they should leave  
 impedimenta atque consistērent in orbem.  
 the baggage and should take stand in a circle.  
 Quod consiliū, etsi est non  
 Which [This] plan although it is not  
 reprehendendum in casu ejusmodi, tamen  
 to be blamed in a case of this kind however  
 accidit incommodè nam minuit spem nostris  
 happened badly: for it diminished hope to [in] our  
 militibus, et effecit hostes alacriores  
 soldiers and rendered the enemy more eager  
 ad pugnandum; quòd id videbatur<sup>61</sup> factum (esse)  
 for fighting because this was seeming to have been done  
 non sine summo timore et  
 not without the highest [utmost] fear and  
 desperatione. Præterea accidit, quod erat  
 despair Besides it happened, what was  
 necesse fieri, ut milites  
 necessary to be done [to occur] that the soldiers  
 discedērent (imp subj) volgò ab signis;  
 were withdrawing generally from the standards:  
 que quisque eorum properaret (imp subj) petere  
 and every one of them was hastening to seek  
 atque arripere ab impedimentis, quæ  
 and to seize from the baggage, what

habēret carissīma; et omnia complerentur  
 he might hold most dear; and all (places) were filled  
 (imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.  
 with noise and with bewailing [lamentation]

34. At consilium defuit non barbāris.  
 But prudence was wanting not to the barbarians

Nam dūces eorum jusserunt  
 For the leaders of them [their leaders] commanded (it)

pronuntiari totā acie, ne quis  
 to be announced in the whole battle-line, that not any (one)

discederet ab lōco: quæcunque Romani  
 should depart from (his) place: whatsoever the Romans

reliquissent, esse illorum prædam, atque  
 might have left. to be [was] their plunder, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent  
 to be [was] reserved for them: wherefore they should think

omnia posita in victoriā. Nostri  
 (that) all (things) (were) placed [hung] on victory. Our (men)

erant pāres pugnando et virtute et numēro:  
 were equal in fighting both in valor and in number

tametsi deserebantur ē dūce et  
 although they were deserted by (their) general and by

fortunā, tamen ponebant omnem spem salutis  
 fortune, however they were putting all hope of safety

in virtute; et quoties quæque cōhōrs  
 in valor; and as often as every cohort

procurreret (imp. subj.), magnus numērus hostium  
 was charging, a great number of the enemy

cadebat ab eā parte. Quā re  
 were falling on that side. Which thing

animadversā, Ambiōrix jussit pronuntiari,  
 having been observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced.

ut conjiciant tela procul neu  
 that they cast (their) weapons from a distance. nor

accedant propius; et in quam partem  
 approach nearer: and on what (-ever) side

Romani fecerint impetum, cedant:  
 the Romans made an attack. (that) they give way;

nihil<sup>62</sup> posse noceri iis  
nothing to be able [could] (to) be injured [injure] to them [them]

levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:  
by the lightness of (their) arms and by daily exercise:

insequantur recipientes se rursus  
(that) they pursue (them) betaking themselves again

ad signa  
to the standards.

35 Quo præcepto observato diligentissimè  
Which direction having been observed most carefully

ab iis, quum quæpiam cōhors excesserat ex  
by them, when any cohort had gone out from

orbe, atque fecerat impetum, hostes  
the circle and had made an attack, the enemy

refugiebant velocissimè; intèrim erat necesse  
were retiring most swiftly meantime it was necessary

nudari eâ parte, et tela  
to be exposed on this side and (that) weapons

recipi ab aperto latère. Rursus, quum  
to [would] be received on the open flank Again, when

cœperant adverti in eum locum, unde  
they had begun to return into this place, whence

egressi erant, circumveniebantur et ab iis,  
they had gone out, they were surrounded both by those,

qui cesserant et ab iis, qui steterant  
who had given way and by those, who had stood

proximi; autem sin vellent (imp. subj.) tenere  
nearest but if they wished to hold

locum, nèque locus relinquebatur  
(their) place [ground] neither a place [opportunity] was left

virtuti, nèque conferti poterant vitare tela  
for valor nor crowded were they able to avoid the weapons

conjecta à tantâ multitudīne. Tāmen conflictati  
hurled by so great a multitude However having struggled

tam multis incommōdis, multis vulneribus  
with so many disadvantages, many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ  
having been received, they were withstanding; and a great

parte diei consumptâ, committebant nihil,  
part of the day having been spent. they were doing nothing.

quod esset indignum ipsis (abl), quum  
which would be unworthy themselves, although

pugnaretur (imp subj.) à primâ luce  
it was fought [they fought] from the first light [early dawn]

ad octavam horam. Tum<sup>63</sup> utrumque femur  
to the eighth hour [two o'clock] Then each thigh

transjicitur tragulâ Tito Balventio, forti  
is pierced with a javelin to [of] Titus Balventius, a brave

viro, et magnæ auctoritatis, qui<sup>64</sup> duxerat primum  
man and of great authority. who had led the first

pilum superiore anno. Quintus Lucanius  
century in the former year. Quintus Lucanius

ejusdem ordinis pugnans fortissimè interficitur,  
of the same rank fighting most bravely is slain,

dum subvenit filio (dat.) circumvento.  
while he aids (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucius Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes  
Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordines, vulneratur fundâ in  
the cohorts and ranks is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.  
the front face [squarely in the face]

36 Quintus Titurius permotus his rebus,  
Quintus Titurius much alarmed by these things

quum conspexisset (pl perf subj) Ambiorigem  
when he had beheld Ambiorix

prœcul cohortantem suos, mittit sũum  
at a distance exhorting his (men) sends his

interprætẽ, Cnæium Pompeium ad eũ, rogatum,  
interpreter Cnæius Pompey to him. to beseech.

ut parcat sibi (dat) que militibus (dat). Ille  
that he may spare himself and the soldiers He

appellatus respondit, "licere  
having been addressed answered "to be [it is] allowed

collôqui secum, si velt; sperare  
to confer with himself, if he wishes to hope [he hopes it]

posse                      impetrari                      à                      multitudīne,  
 to be able [can]                      (to) be obtained                      from                      the multitude,  
 quod    pertinēat    ad    salutem    militū :    verò  
 what    may relate    to    the safety    of the soldiers :    but  
 nihil                      nocitū iri                      ipsi :    que  
 nothing    to be about to be hurt [should harm]    (to) himself :    and  
                     se    interponere    suam    fidem    in    eam  
 (he) himself    to put [puts]    his own    good faith    on    this  
 rem "    Ille    communicat    cum    saucio    Cottā ;  
 thing."    He    communicates    with    the wounded    Cotta :  
 "si    videatur,                      ut    excedant    pugnā,  
 "if    it may seem (best),                      that    they retire    from the battle,  
 et    colloquantur    unā    cum    Ambiorige ;    se  
 and    confer    together    with    Ambiorix ;    (he) himself  
 sperare                      posse                      impetrari                      ab    eo  
 to hope [hopes]    to be able    to [that it can] be obtained    from    him  
 de    suā    salute    ac                      militū."    Cotta  
 about    his own    [safety    and    (that) of the soldiers."    Cotta  
 negat                      se                      iturum    ad    armatum  
 refuses    (that he) himself    (about) to [should] go    to    an armed  
 hostem atque perseverat in    eo. (37.) Sabinus jubet  
 enemy    and    persists    in this.                      Sabinus orders  
 tribuno    militū,    quos    habebat    circum  
 the tribunes    of soldiers,    whom    he was having    about  
                     se    in præsentiā,    et    centuriones    primorum  
 himself    at present,    and    the centurions    of the first  
 ordinum,    sequi    se ;    et    quum    accessisset  
 ranks,    to follow    himself ;    and    when    he had approached  
 (pl. perf. subj.) propius Ambiorigem,    jussus  
                     nearer    Ambiorix,    having been ordered  
 abicere                      arma,    facit    imperatum,    que  
 to throw aside    (his) arms,    he performs    the command.    and  
 imperat suis (dat.),    ut    faciant    idem.    Intērim,  
 commands    his (men),    that    they do    the same.    Meantime.  
 dum    agunt    inter    se    de    conditionibus,  
 while    they treat    between    themselves    about    conditions,  
 que    longior    sermo    instituītur    consultō    ab  
 and    a rather long    speech    is undertaken    designedly    by

Ambiorige, circumventus paulatim, interficitur.  
 Ambiorix. having been surrounded gradually he is killed

Tum verò conclamant victoriâ et tollunt  
 Then indeed they shout victory and raise

ululatum sùo more que impetu facto  
 a whoop in their manner and an attack having been made

in nostros, perturbant ordines. Ibi  
 upon our (men) they disorder the ranks There

Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur, cum maximâ  
 Lucius Cotta fighting is killed with the greatest

parte militum: reliqui recipiunt se in  
 part of the soldiers: the rest betake themselves into

castra (pl), unde egressi erant. Ex  
 the camp. whence they had gone out From [Of]

quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquifer projecit  
 whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle bearer [ensign] cast

aquilam intra vallum, cum premeretur (imp  
 the eagle within the rampart when he was pressed

subj) magnâ multitudîne hostium; ipse  
 by a great multitude of the enemy. (he) himself

pugnans fortissimè pro castris (pl) occiditur.  
 fighting most bravely before the camp is slain

Alii ægrè sustinent oppugnationem ad  
 The others hardly [barely] support the assault until

noctem; ipsi omnes ad unum, salute  
 night (they) themselves all to one [to a man] safety

desperatâ, interficiunt se noctu  
 having been despaired of. kill themselves by night.

Pauci elapsi ex prælio perveniunt  
 A few having escaped from the battle arrive

incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum  
 by uncertain routes through the woods to Titus

Labienum legatum in hiberna; et  
 Labienus the lieutenant into winter quarters and

faciunt eum certiore de rebus  
 make him more sure [inform him] of the things

gestis.  
 carried on.



38. Ambiorix sublatus hâc victoriâ, stâtim  
 Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately  
 proficiscitur cum equitatu in Aduatucos,  
 sets out with (his) cavalry unto the Aduatuci.  
 qui erant finitimi ejus regno; nêque  
 who were neighbors to his kingdom; neither  
 intermittit diem nêque noctem; que jûbet  
 does he pause day nor night, and he orders  
 peditatum subsequi se. Re demonstratâ,  
 the infantry to follow himself. The affair having been explained,  
 que Aduatucis concitatis, pervenit postero  
 and the Aduatuci having been incited he arrives on the following  
 die in Nervios, que hortatur  
 day among the Nervii. and exhorts (them) "(that)  
 "ne dimittant occasionem liberandi sui  
 they may not let slip [lose] the opportunity of freeing themselves  
 in perpetuum, atque ulciscendi Romanos pro  
 forever and of punishing the Romans for  
 his injuriis, quas acceperint (perf. subj.);  
 those injuries, which they have received  
 demonstrat duos legatos interfectos esse,  
 he shows (that) two lieutenants (to) have been killed,  
 que magnam partem exercitus interisse: esse,  
 and a great part of the army (to) have perished. to be  
 nihil<sup>65</sup> negotii legionem  
 [that there is] nothing of business [no trouble] the legion  
 subito oppressam, quæ hiemet (pres subj.)  
 suddenly having been overwhelmed, which winters  
 cum Cicerone interfici: profitetur se  
 with Cicero (that it) to [should] be slain: he declares himself  
 adiutorem ad eam rem.  
 a helper for this thing.

39 Persuadet Nerviiis (dat.) facîle hâc oratione.  
 He persuades the Nervii easily by this speech.

Itaque nunciis dimissis confestim ad  
 Therefore messengers having been dispatched immediately to  
 Centrones, Grudios Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos,  
 the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni.

qui omnes sunt sub eorum imperiō, cogunt  
 who all are under their authority, they collect  
 mānus quām maxīmas<sup>66</sup> possunt; et  
 bands as greatest [great as] they can, and  
 advōlant de improvīso ad hiberna Ciceronis,  
 fly unexpectedly to the winter quarters of Cicero.  
 famā de morte Titurīi nondum  
 the report about the death of Titurius not yet  
 perlatā ad eum. Accīdit quōque huic,  
 having been brought to him. It happened also to him.  
 quod fuit necesse,<sup>67</sup> ut nonnulli milītes,  
 which [as] was necessary, that some soldiers,  
 qui discessissent (pl. perf. subj.) in silvas  
 who had departed into the woods  
 causā lignationis que munitionis  
 for the sake of wood cutting and of fortification  
 interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu  
 were cut off by the sudden arrival  
 equitum. His circumventis, Eburones,  
 of the cavalry. These having been surrounded, the Eburones,  
 Aduatuci, Nervī, atque socii et clientes  
 Aduatuci, Nervii, and the allies and dependents  
 omnium horum, incipiunt oppugnare legionem  
 of all these, begin to assault the legion  
 magnā mānu. Nostri celeriter concurrunt  
 with a great throng. Our (men) quickly run together  
 ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dies  
 to arms; they mount the rampart. This day  
 sustentatur ægrē, quōd hostes  
 is supported hardly [with difficulty]. because the enemy  
 ponebant omnem spem in celeritate, atque  
 were placing all hope in haste, and  
 adepti hanc victoriā, confidebant  
 having obtained this victory, they were trusting  
 se fore victores  
 (that they) themselves to be about to [would] be conquerors  
 in perpetuum.  
 forever.

40. Lit̃eræ (pl.) mittuntur (pl) confestim ad  
A letter is sent immediately to

Cæsārem à Cicerone, magnis præmiis pro-  
Cæsar by Cicero. great rewards having been

positis, si pertulissent. Omnibus viis  
offered, if they should carry (it). All the ways

obsessis, missi intercipiuntur. Centum  
having been blockaded, (those) sent are intercepted. A hundred

et viginti turres excitantur incredibili celeritate  
and twenty towers are raised with incredible speed

noctu ex eā materiā, quam comportaverant<sup>68</sup>  
by night from this material, which they had brought together

causā munitionis. Quæ videbantur  
for the sake of fortification. What (things) were appearing

desse op̃eri perficiuntur. Hostes, multò  
to be wanting to the work are completed. The enemy, much

majoribus copiis coactis, oppugnant  
greater forces having been collected, assault

castra (pl.) post̃ero diē, complent fossam.  
the camp on the following day. they fill up the trench.

Resistitur à nostris eādem ratione,  
It is withstood by our (men) in the same manner,

quā prid̃e: hoc idem fit  
in which [as] the day before: this same (thing) is done

deinceps reliquis diebus. Nulla pars  
afterwards on the remaining days. No part

nocturni temporis intermittitur ad laborem:  
of the night time is discontinued for the labor:

facultas quietis datur non ægris, non  
an opportunity of [for] rest is given not to the sick, nor

vulneratis Quæcunque sunt opus  
to the wounded Whatever (things) are necessary

ad oppugnationem proximi diei, comparantur  
for the assault of the next day are prepared

noctu. Multæ sudes præustæ, magnus  
by night. Many stakes burnt at the point, a great

num̃erus muralium pilorum instituitor; turres  
number of mural [wall-] javelins is prepared. towers

contabulantur;<sup>69</sup> pinnae que loricae attexuntur  
are built up; battlements and parapets are woven

ex cratibus. Cicero ispe, quum esset  
from [of] hurdles. Cicero himself, although he was

(imp. subj.) tenuissimâ valetudine, relinquebat  
in very delicate health, was leaving

ne nocturnum<sup>70</sup> tempus quidem sibi ad  
not the night time even to himself for

quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcere  
rest; so that he was compelled to spare

sibi (dat.) ultrò concursu  
himself beyond [contrary to] (his wishes) by the running

ac vocibus militum.  
[thronging] (to him) and voices [words] of the soldiers.

41. Tunc dūces que principes Nerviorum,  
Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,

qui habebant aliquem aditum sermonis que  
who were having some access of speech and

causam amicitiae cum Cicerone, dicunt  
cause of friendship with Cicero, say

sese velle collōqui. Potestate  
(that they) themselves (to) wish to parley. The opportunity

factâ, commemorant eādem, quæ  
having been made, they relate the same (things), which.

Ambiorix egērat cum Titurio: "Omnem  
Ambiorix had treated with Titurius: "All

Galliam esse in armis: Germanos transisse  
Gaul to be [is] in arms: the Germans (to) have crossed

Rhenum: hiberna Cæsaris que reliquorum  
the Rhine: the winter quarters of Cæsar and of the rest

oppugnari." Addunt etiam de morte  
to be [are] stormed." They add also about the death

Sabini. Ostentant<sup>71</sup> Ambiorigem causâ  
of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix for the sake

faciundæ fidēi. Dicunt eos  
of making faith [credit]. They say (that) these

errare, si sperent quidquam præsidii ab  
(to) mistake, if they hope any (of) protection from

his, qui diffidant (pres. subj) suis rebus:  
those, who distrust (to) their own affairs.

tamen sese esse hoc animo  
however (they) themselves to be [are] with [of] this mind

in Ciceronem que Romanum populum, ut  
towards Cicero and the Roman people, that

recusent nihil, nisi hiberna, atque  
they may refuse nothing, except the winter quarters, and

nolint hanc consuetudinem inveter-  
are unwilling (that) this custom to [should] be

ascere;<sup>72</sup> licere per se illis  
established; (it) to be [is] allowed by themselves to them

discedere incolumibus ex hibernis, et  
to depart safe from the winter quarters, and

proficisci sine metu in quascunque partes  
to set out without fear into whatever parts

velint. Cicero respondit modo unum  
they may wish. Cicero answered only one (thing)

ad hæc: "Non esse consuetudinem  
to these: "Not to be [It is not] the custom

Romani populi accipere ullam conditionem ab  
of the Roman people to receive any condition from

armato hoste: si velint discedere ab  
an armed enemy if they wish to withdraw from

armis, utantur se adjutore, que  
arms, they may use himself (as) a helper, and

mittant legatos ad Cæsarem: se  
may send ambassadors to Caesar. (he) himself

sperare impetraturos, quæ  
to hope [hopes] them (to be) about to [they may] obtain, what

petierint, pro<sup>73</sup> ejus justitiâ."  
they may have sought, on account of his justice."

42. Nervii repulsi ab hac spe,  
The Nervii having been repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undecim  
surround the winter quarters with a rampart of eleven

pedum et fossâ quindecim pedum. Cognoverant  
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had learned

hæc et à nostris consuetudine  
these (things) also from our (men) by the custom

superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam  
of former years and having got some

captivos de exercitu, docebantur ab his.  
prisoners of (our) army. they were taught by these.

Sed nulla copia ferramentorum his,  
But (there was) no supply of iron tools for them,

quæ esset idonea ad hunc usum.  
which might be suitable for this use.

Cogebantur circumcidere cæspitem gladiis,  
They were forced to cut round the sod with swords,

exhaurire terram manibus que  
to draw out the earth with (their) hands and (carry it)

sagulis. Ex quâ re quidem, multitudo  
in cloaks. From which thing indeed, the multitude

hominum potuit cognosci. Nam minus  
of men was able to be known For in less (than)

tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem quindécim  
three hours they finished a fortification of fifteen

millium passuum in circuitu. Que cœperunt  
thousand (of) paces in compass. And they began

parare ac facere turres reliquis diebus  
to prepare and to make towers on the remaining days

ad altitudinem valli, falces que  
to the height of the rampart, wall hooks and

testudines, quas iidem captivi docuerant.  
shelters, which the same prisoners had taught (them).

43. Septimo die oppugnationis, maximo  
On the seventh day of the siege, a very great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacere fundis  
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ, et fervefacta  
hot balls of fusible clay and heated

jacula in cāsas, quæ tectæ erant stramentis  
javelins on the cottages, which had been covered with straw

(pl.) Gallico more. Hæ comprehenderunt  
in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celeriter, et magnitudine venti,  
 fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,

distulerunt<sup>74</sup> in omnem locum castrorum (pl.).  
 spread (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maximo clamore,  
 The enemy having followed with a very great shout,

quasi victoriam partam atque exploratam  
 as if the victory (had) been obtained and assured

jam, coeperunt agere turres que  
 already, began to drive the towers and

testudines et ascendere vallum scalis.  
 shelters and to mount the rampart with ladders.

At tanta fuit virtus atque praesentia animi  
 But so great was the valor and the presence of mind

militem, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)  
 of the soldiers, that, although they were scorched

flamma undisque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)  
 by the flame on every side. and were pressed

maxima multitudine telorum, que  
 with a very great multitude of weapons, and

intelligerent (imp. subj.) omnia sua impedimenta  
 were understanding (that) all their baggage

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non  
 and all (their) fortunes to be [were] on fire, not

modo nemo decederet (imp. subj.) de vallo  
 only no one was withdrawing from the rampart

causa demigrandi, sed<sup>75</sup> ne quisquam paene  
 for the sake of going away, but not any one hardly

respiceret (imp. subj.) quidem; ac tum  
 was looking back even; and besides

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrime que  
 all were fighting most vigorously and

fortissime. Hic dies fuit longe gravissimus  
 most bravely This day was by far the most severe

nostris; sed tamen habuit hunc eventum, ut  
 for our (men). but however it had this issue, that

eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur  
 on this day the greatest number of the enemy was wounded

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut  
and was killed. as

constipaverant se sub vallo ipso,  
they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself

que ultimi dabant non recessum  
[the very rampart] and the last were giving no retreat

primis. Quidem flammâ intermissâ paulum,  
to the first. Indeed the flame [fire] having ceased a little,

et turri adactâ quodam loco, et  
and a tower having been forced up in a certain place. and

contingente vallum, centuriones tertię  
touching the rampart the centurions of the third

cohortis recesserunt ex eo loco, quo  
cohort retired from this place. in which

stabant, que removerunt omnes suos;  
they were standing. and removed all their (men):

coeperunt vocare hostes nutu que vocibus,  
they began to call the enemy by nod [sign] and by voices

si vellent introire, nemo quorum  
[words]. if they wished to enter no one of whom

ausus est progredi. Tum deturbati (sunt)  
dared to advance Then they were beaten off

lapidibus coniectis ex omni parte, que turris  
by stones thrown from every side. and the tower

succensa est.  
was set on fire.

44. Erant in eâ legione fortissimi  
(There) were in this legion (two) very brave

viri, centuriones, Titus Pullo et Lucius Varenus,  
men. centurions, Titus Pullo and Lucius Varenus,

qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis  
who now were approaching (to) the first

ordinibus. Hi habebant perpetuas  
ranks (of centurions) These were having constant

controversias inter se, ūter  
controversies between themselves. (as to) which of the two

anteferretur altēri; que contendebant  
should be preferred to the other; and they were striving



summis                      simultatibus    de    loco  
 with the highest [greatest]    bickerings    about    place [precedence]  
 omnibus    annis.                      Ex            his    Pullo    inquit,  
     in all            the years.    (One) from [of]    these.    Pullo            says,  
 quum                      pugnaretur<sup>76</sup>    (imp. subj.—pass. sing.)  
     when                      they were fighting  
     acerrimè    ad    munitones,            "Quid    dubitas,  
     most vigorously    at    the fortifications,    "Why    dost thou hesitate,  
     Varene?    aut    quem    locum<sup>77</sup>    probandæ    tuæ    virtutis  
     O Varenus?    or    what    place            of proving    thy    valor  
     expactas?            Hic    dies,    hic    dies    judicabit  
     dost thou wait for?    This    day,    this    day    shall decide  
     de    nostris    controversiis."    Quum    dixisset (pl. perf.  
     about    our            disputes "            When    he had said  
 subj.)    hæc,                      procedit    extra    munitiones,    et  
                     these (words). he advances    outside    the fortifications,    and  
     quæ    pars    hostium    visa    est    confertissima,  
     what    part    of the enemy    seems            most dense [most crowded]  
     irrumpit    in    eam.    Nec    Varenus    quidem    tum  
     he dashes    upon    this    Nor    Varenus    indeed    then  
     continet    sese            vallo;            sed            veritus  
     restrains    himself    on the rampart.    but            having feared  
     existimationem    omnium,            subsequitur    mediocri  
           the opinion            of all.            he follows closely,    a moderate  
     spatio    relicto.    Pullo    mittit            pilum    in  
     distance    being left    Pullo    sends            (his) javelin    against  
     hostes,    atque    transjicit    unum    ex    multitudīne  
     the enemy,    and    transfixes    one    from [of]    the multitude  
     procurentem:    quo    percusso    et    exanimato,  
     running forward    who    having been struck    and    laid senseless,  
     hostes    protēgunt    hunc            secutis,            et  
     the enemy            protect    him            with (their) shields,    and  
     universi    conjiciunt            tela    in    illum,  
           all            hurl            (their) weapons    upon    him [Pullo].  
     neque            dant                      facultatem    regrediendi.  
           nor            do they give (him)            a chance            of returning.  
     Scutum<sup>78</sup>            Pulloni            transfigitur    et    verutum  
     The shield            for [of] Pullo            is pierced            and            a javelin

defigitur	in	baltæo.	Hic	casus	avertit
is fixed	in	(his) belt.	This	mishap	turns away
vaginam	et	moratur	dextram	mānum	
the scabbard	and	retards	(his) right	hand	
conantis	educere	gladium,	que	hostes	
endeavoring	to draw out	(his) sword.	and	the enemy	
circumsistunt	impeditum	Varenus	inimicus		
surround	(him) entangled.	Varenus	(his) rival		
succurrit	illi (dat.), et	subvenit			
succours [runs to help]	him,	and comes up [brings aid]	(to him)		
laboranti.	Omnis	multitudo	fontestim	convertit	
laboring	All	the multitude	immediately	turns	
se	à	Pullone	ad hunc.	Arbitrantur	illum
itself	from	Pullo	to him.	They think	him
	transfixum	verūto.	Illic	verò	
[Pullo]	run through [pierced]	with the javelin.	There.	however	
Varenus	occursat	ocūis	gladio	que	
Varenus	runs up	very quickly	with (his) sword	and	
gërit	rem	cominūs;	atque	uno	
carries on	the affair	hand to hand.	and	one	
interfecto,	propellit	reliquos	paullum.	Dum	
having been killed.	he repulses	the rest	a little	While	
instat	cupidiūs	dejectus	concidit		
he presses on	more eagerly.	having been thrown down	he fell		
in	inferiorem	locum.	Pullo	rursus	fert
upon	a lower	place	Pullo	again	brings
subsidiūm	huic	circumvento;	atque	ambo	incolūmes,
aid	to him	surrounded.	and	both	safe.
compluribus	interfectis,	recipiunt	sese		
several	having been killed	betake	themselves.		
cum	summā	laude	intra		
with	the highest [greatest]	praise [applause]	within		
munitiones.	Sic	fortuna	versavit	utrumque	
the fortifications.	Thus	fortune	turned [treated]	each	
in	contentione	et	certamine,	ut	alter
in	(their) strife	and	contest,	(so) that	the one
inimicus	esset (imp. subj.)	auxilio	que	saluti	
rival	was	(for) an aid	and	safety	

altēri;      nēque      posset (imp. subj.)      dijudicari,  
to the other,      nor      was it possible      to be decided,

ūter      videretur      antefendus      ūtri  
which of the two      should seem      to be preferred      to the other

virtute.  
in valor.

45. Quāto      gravior      atque      asperior  
As much      more severe      and      more arduous

oppugnatō      erat      indies,      et      maxime      quod,  
the siege      was      daily,      and      chiefly      because,

magnā      parte      militum      confectā      vulneribus,  
a great      part      of the soldiers      having been spent      with wounds

res      pervenerat      ad      paucitatem  
the case      had come      to      a fewness [scarcity]

defensorum;      tantō      crebriores      literæ      que  
of defenders,      so much      more frequent      letters      and

nuncii      mittebantur      ad      Cæsarem;      pars      quorum  
messengers      were sent      to      Cæsar:      a part      of whom

deprehensa      necabatur      cum      cruciatu      in  
having been caught      was put to death      with      torture      in

conspectu      nostrorum      militum.      Erat      unus  
sight      of our      soldiers.      There was      one

Nervius      intus,      nomine      Vertico,      natus      honesto  
Nervian      within,      by name      Vertico,      born      in an honorable

loco,      qui      profugerat      ad      Ciceronem      à  
place [rank],      who      had fled      to      Cicero      from

primā      obsidione,      que      præstiterat      suam      fidem  
the first      siege,      and      had exhibited      his      fidelity

ei.      Hic      persuadet servo (dat.),      spe  
to him.      This (man)      persuades      a slave,      with the hope

libertatis      que      magnis      præmiis,      ut      deferat  
of liberty      and      by great      rewards,      that      he carry

litteras (pl.)      ad      Cæsarem.      Ille      affert      has (pl.)  
a letter      to      Cæsar.      He      bears      this

illigatas      in      jaculo;      et      Gallus      versatus  
tied up      in      a javelin;      and      the Gaul      having mingled

inter      Gallos      sine      ullū      suspitione,      pervenit  
among      the Gauls      without      any      suspicion,      comes

ad Cæsārem. Cognoscit ab eo de periculō  
to Cæsar He learns from him of the danger

Ciceronis que legionis.  
of Cicero and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, lītēris (pl) acceptis circiter  
Cæsar, the letter having been received about

undecimā horā diei, mittit nunciūm  
the eleventh hour of the day. sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in  
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor among

Bellovācos, cujus hiberna abērant ab  
the Bellovaci, whose winter quarters were distant from

eo viginti quinque millia passūm. Jūbet  
him twenty five thousand (of) paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediā nocte, que venire  
the legion to set out at mid-night, and to come

celeriter ad se. Crassus exiit cum  
speedily [quickly] to himself. Crassus came out with

nunciō. Mittit altērum ad Caiūm  
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabium legatūm, ut adducat legionem  
Fabius the lieutenant, that he lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatium, quā sciebat  
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he was knowing

iter faciendum sibi (dat.). Scribit  
the march to [would] be made by himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facere commōdo  
to Labienus, if he might be able to do (it) with the advantage

rei publicæ, veniat cum legione ad  
of the state, (that) he come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pūtat reliquam  
the territories of the Nervii He thinks the remaining

partem exercītūs non expectandam,  
part of the army (must) not (to) be waited for,

quōd abērat paulō longiūs: cogit circiter  
because it was distant a little farther, he collects about

quadringentos equites ex proximis hibernis.  
four hundred cavalry from the nearest winter quarters-

47. Factus est certior de adventu  
 He was made more sure [was informed] of the arrival

Crassi ab antecursoribus circiter tertiâ horâ  
 of Crassus by scouts about the third hour.

(abl.): progreditur viginti millia passuum  
 he advances twenty thousand (of) paces

eo die. Præficit Cassum Samarobrivæ,  
 on this day. He appoints Crassus to Samarobriua,

que attribuit legionem ei; quod relinquebat  
 and assigns a legion to him; because he was leaving

ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum,  
 there the baggage of the army, the hostages of the states,

publicas litteras, que omne frumentum, quod  
 the public letters, and all the corn, which

devexerat ed causâ<sup>79</sup> tolerandæ  
 he had conveyed down there for the sake of enduring

hiemis. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, moratus  
 the winter. Fabius, as it had been commanded, having delayed

non ita multum, occurrit cum legione in  
 not so (very) much, meets (him) with a legion on

itinere. Labienus, interitu Sabini, et  
 the march. Labienus, the destruction of Sacinus, and

cæde cohortium cognitâ, quum omnes  
 the slaughter of the cohorts having been known, when all

copiæ Trevirorum venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 the forces of the Treviri had come to

eam, veritus ne, si fecisset  
 [against] him, having feared lest, if he should make

profectionem ex hibernis similem fugæ,  
 the departure from winter quarters like (to) a flight,

ut posset non sustinere impetum  
 that he might be able not to support the attack

hostium, præsertim quos sciret (imp. subj.)  
 of the enemy. especially whom he was knowing

efferrî recenti victoriâ, dimittit litteras  
 to be [were] elated by the late victory, despatches a letter

(pl.) Cæsari, cum quanto periculo esset  
 to Cæsar. (to say) with how great danger he was



tragūlam cum epistolā deligatā ad amentum  
a javelin with the letter tied to the thong

intra munitiones castrorum (pl.). Scribit  
within the fortifications of the camp He writes

in litēris (pl.), se profectum  
in the letter, (that he) himself having set out to be about

affōre celerīter cum legionibus,  
to [would] be present speedily [quickly] with the legions,

hortatur ut retinēat pristīnam virtutem.  
he encourages (him) that he retain (his) ancient valor.

Gallus veritus pericūlum, mittit  
The Gaul having feared danger, sends [throws]

tragūlam, ut praeceptum erat. Hæc adhæsit  
the javelin, as it had been ordered. This stuck

ad turrim casu, nēque animadversa (est)  
to a tower by chance, nor was perceived

bidūo ab nostris; tertio die  
for two days by our (men), on the third day

conspicitur à quodam milite; dempta  
it is seen by a certain soldier, having been taken down

defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille recitat per-  
it is carried to Cicero. He reads aloud, (it) having

lectam in conventu militum, que  
been read through, in an assembly of the soldiers, and

afficit omnes maxīmā lætitiā. Tum  
affects all with the greatest gladness. Then

fumi (pl.) incendiorum videbantur (pl.) prōcul,  
the smoke of the fires was seen afar off,

quæ res expulit omnem dubitationem adventūs  
which thing banished all doubt of the approach

legionum.  
of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognitā per  
The Gauls, the fact having been learned by  
exploratores, relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt  
spies, leave [raise] the siege; they set out

ad Cæsārem omnibus copiis: hæc erant  
to Cæsar with all (their) forces; these were

circiter sexaginta millia armatorum. Cicerō,  
 about sixty thousand (of) armed (men) Cicero,  
 facultate datā, repēit Gallum ab  
 the opportunity having been given, requests the Gaul from  
 eodem Verticone, quem demonstravimus suprā,  
 the same Vertico, whom we have pointed out above,  
 qui defērat litēras (pl.) ad Cæsārem. Admōnet  
 who carried a letter to Cæsar He admonishes  
 hunc, faciāt iter cautē que  
 him, (that) he make the journey cautiously and  
 diligenter. Perscribit in litēris (pl.),  
 carefully He writes in the letter, (that)  
 hostes discessisse ab se, que omnem  
 the enemy (to) have departed from himself and all  
 multitudīnem convertisse ad eum. Quibus  
 the multitude (to) have turned to him. Which  
 litēris (pl.) allatis Cæsāri circiter mediā  
 letter having been brought to Cæsar about mid  
 nocte, facit certiores suos que  
 night, he makes more sure [informs] his (men) and  
 confirmat eos animo ad dimicandum. Postēro  
 strengthens them in mind for fighting On the following  
 diē movet castra (pl.) primā luce,  
 day he moves the camp at the first light [early dawn],  
 et progressus circiter quatuor millia  
 and having advanced about four thousand  
 passum, conspicatur multitudīnem hostium  
 (of) paces. he discovers the multitude of the enemy  
 trans magnam vallem et rivum. Erat res  
 beyond a great valley and rivulet It was a matter  
 magni periculi dimicare cum tantulis copiis  
 of great danger to contend with such small forces  
 iniquo loco. Tamen quoniam sciebat  
 in an unfavorable place However since he was knowing  
 Ciceronem liberatum (fuisse) obsidione,  
 (that) Cicero to have [had] been delivered from the siege  
 que ideo existimabat remittendum<sup>81</sup>  
 and therefore was thinking (it) to be [he must relax] relaxed



æquō animō de celeritate, consedit, et  
with an easy mind from speed, he halted, and

communit castra (pl.) lōco quā æquissimō  
fortifies the camp in a place as (most) favorable

pōtest: atque etsi hæc erant (pl.)  
(as) he is able [possible]. and although this was

exiguā per se (pl.), vis septem  
small by itself, scarcely (of) [for] seven

milliū hominū, præsertim cum nullis  
thousand men, especially with no

impedimentis, tamen contrahit quā maximē  
baggage; yet he contracts (it) as much as

pōtest, angustis viarum eo consilio, ut  
he is able, by narrow passages, with this design, that

veniat in summam contemptionem  
he may come into the highest contempt

hostibus. Intērim speculatoribus dimissis  
to [with] the enemy. Meantime scouts having been sent

in omnes partes, explorat quo itinēre  
into all parts, he examines by what route

posset transire vallem commodissimē.  
he may be able to cross the valley most conveniently.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus præliis  
On this day, trifling cavalry battles

factis ad aquam, utrique continent  
having been made at the water, each [both] keep

sese sūo lōco. Galli, quod expectabant  
themselves in their place. The Gauls, because they were awaiting

ampliores copias, quæ nondum convenērant:  
more extensive forces, which had not yet assembled:

Cæsar, si fortè posset elicere hostes  
Cæsar. if perhaps he might be able to entice the enemy

in sūum lōcum citra vallem  
into his own place on this side the valley

simulatione timoris, ut contendēret  
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend

prælio pro castris (pl.): si posset non  
in battle before the camp: if he would be able not

efficere to effect	id, thus,	ut, that	itineribus the routes	exploratis, having been examined,		
transiret he might cross	vallem the valley	que and	rivum rivulet	cum with	minore less	
periculo. danger.	Primâ At the first	luce, light [early dawn],		equitatus the cavalry		
hostium of the enemy	accedit approaches	ad to	castra (pl.), the camp,	que and		
committit joins	proelium battle	cum with	nostris our	equitibus. cavalry.	Cæsar Cæsar	
consultò designedly	jūbet orders	equites the horse men	cedere to yield	que and	recipere to betake	
se themselves	in into	castra (pl.), the camp.	sīmul at the same time	jūbet he orders		
castra (pl.) the camp	muniri to be fortified	altiore with a higher	vallo rampart	ex from [on]		
omnibus all	partibus, parts [sides],	que and	portas the gates	obstrui, (to be) barricaded.		
atque and	concursari <sup>82</sup> to be hurried [to hurry]		quàm maximâ as much as possible	in in		
administrandis performing	his these	rebus, things,	et and	âgi to be acted [to act]		
cum with	simulatione a pretence	timoris. of fear.				

51. Omnibus quibus rebus hostes invitati  
By all which things the enemy having been induced

transducunt lead over	copias, (their) forces,	que and	constitunt station	aciem the battle-line		
iniquo in an unfavorable	loco. place.	Verò But	nostris our (men)	etiam also		
deductis having been led down	de from	vallo, the rampart.	accedunt <sup>83</sup> they approach			
propius; nearer;	et and	conjiçunt throw	tela (their) weapons	ex from	omnibus all	
partibus sides	intra within	munitionem: the fortification:	que and	præconibus criers		
circummissis, having been sent about,	jūbent they order (it)	pronuntiarî; to be declared.	seu whethe			

quis Gallus seu Romanus vēlit transire ad  
 anyone. Gaul or Roman, may wish to pass over to  
 se ante tertiam horam, licere  
 themselves before the third hour, to be [it, is] allowed  
 sine pericūlo: post<sup>84</sup> id tempus, potestatem  
 without danger. after this time, the opportunity  
 non fore: ac contempserunt  
 not to be about to [will not] be. and they despised  
 nostros sic, ut, portis obstructis  
 our (men) so. that. the gates having been barricaded  
 in speciem singulis ordinibus cæspitum,  
 in [for] appearance with single rows of sods,  
 quòd videbantur non posse introrumpere  
 because they were seeming not to be ab'le to burst in  
 eā, alii incipērent (imp. subj.) scandere  
 by that (way). some were beginning to climb  
 vallum mānu, alii complere fossas.  
 the rampart by hand, others to fill up the trenches.  
 Tunc Cæsar, eruptione factā omnibus  
 Then Cæsar, a sally having been made from all  
 portis que equitatu emissio, dat  
 the gates and the cavalry having been sent out, gives [puts]  
 hostes celeriter in fugam; sic ut nemo  
 the enemy quickly to flight, so that no one  
 omnino resistēret (imp. subj.) causā pugnandi,  
 of all was withstanding for the sake of fighting,  
 que occidit magnum numerum ex his,  
 and he slew a great number from [of] these,  
 atque exiit omnes armis (abl.).  
 and stripped off all (their) arms.  
 52. Veritus prosēqui longius, quòd  
 Having feared to pursue (them) farther. because  
 silvæ que paludes intercedebant; (nēque<sup>85</sup>  
 woods and marshes were intervening; (nor,  
 videbat locum relinqui parvūlo  
 (was) he was seeing the place (to be) left with trifling  
 detrimento illorum); omnibus suis copiis  
 loss of them [on their part]), all his forces

incolumibus, pervēnit eodem die ad Ciceronem.  
safe, he comes on the same day to Cicero.

Admiratur turres, testudines, que munitiones  
He admires the towers, shelters, and the fortifications

hostium, institutas Legione  
of the enemy, (which they) prepared. The legion

productâ, cognoscit quemque decimum  
having been drawn out, he learns (that) every tenth

militem non relictum esse sine  
soldier (was) not (to have been) left without

vulnere. Ex omnibus his rebus, judicat,  
a wound. From [Of] all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quantâ virtute,  
with how great danger, and with how great valor,

res administratæ sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat  
affairs were managed. He commends

Ciceronem pro ejus merito (sing.), que  
Cicero according to his deserts, and

legionem: appellat sigillatim centuriones que  
the legion: he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognoverat  
tribunes of the soldiers whose valor he had known

fuisse egregiam testimonio Ciceronis.  
to have [had] been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certius de casu Sabini  
He learns more surely of the calamity of Sabinus

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postero die,  
and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habîtâ, proponit rem  
an assembly having been held, he sets before (them) the affair

gestam: consolatur et confirmat  
(as it) transpired: he consoles and encourages

milites: docet detrimentum, quod  
the soldiers: he shows (that) the loss, which

acceptum sit (perf. subj.) culpâ et temeritate  
has been received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore animo  
of the lieutenant, to [must] be borne with more even mind

hoc ;			quòd		beneficio
from this [on this account] ;			because		by the kindness
immortalium	deorum,	et	eorum	virtute,	
of the immortal	gods.	and	by their	valor,	
incommòdo	expiato,		nēque	diutīna	
the disadvantage	having been atoned for,		neither	a lasting	
lætatiō	relinquatur (pres. subj.)		hostibus,	nēque	
rejoicing	is left		to the enemy,	nor	
longior	dōlor	ipsis.			
longer	grief	to themselves.			
53. Intērim	fama	de	victoriā	Cæsar	
Meantime	the report	of	the victory	of Cæsar	
perfertur	ad	Labienum	per	Remos	incredibīli
is carried	to	Labienus	by	the Remi	with incredible
celeritate ;	ut,	quum	abesset (imp. subj.)		
expedition .	(so) that,	though	he was distant		
quinquaginta	millia	passum	ab	hibernis	
fifty	thousand	(of) paces	from	the winter quarters	
Ciceronis,	que	Cæsar	pervenisset (pl. subj.)	ed	
of Cicero.	and	Cæsar	had arrived	there	
post	nonam	horam	diei,	clamor	oriretur
after	the ninth	hour	of the day	a shout	was rising
(imp. subj.)	ante	mediam	noctem	ad	portas
	before	mid	night	at	the gates
castrorum (pl.) ;	quo	clamore	significatiō		
of the camp ;	by which	shout	an indication		
victoriæ	que	gratulatiō	fiēret (imp. subj.)		
of victory	and	congratulation	was made		
Labieno	ab	Remis.	Hæc	famâ	perlatâ
to Labienus	by	the Remi.	This	report	having been carried
ad	Treviros,	Indutiomærus,	qui	decreverat	
to	the Treviri,	Indutiomarus.	who	had resolved	
oppugnare	castra (pl.)	Labieni	postero		
to assault	the camp	of Labienus	on the following		
die,	profūgit	noctu	que	reducit	omnes
day,	flees	by night	and	leads back	all
copias	in	Treviros.	Cæsar	remittit	
(his) forces	among	the Treviri.	Cæsar	sends back	

Fabium cum legione in sua hiberna.  
 Fabius with the legion into their winter quarters.

Ipsē constituit hiemare trinis hibernis  
 He himself resolved to winter in triple winter quarters

cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam: et  
 with three legions about Samarobriua; and

quod tanti motus Galliae existerant  
 because so great disturbances of Gaul had arisen

ipse decrevit manere totam hiemem  
 (he) himself determined to remain the whole winter

ad exercitum. Nam, illo incommodo de  
 at [with] the army. For. that calamity from

morte Sabini perlato, fere  
 the death of Sabinus having been carried through (them), nearly

omnes civitates Galliae consultabant de  
 all the states of Gaul were deliberating about

bello: dimittebant nuntios que legationes  
 war: they were dispatching messengers and embassies

in omnes partes; et explorabant, quid  
 into all parts, and were searching out. what

consilii reliqui caperent, atque unde initium  
 (of) counsel the rest might take, and whence a beginning

belli fieret; que habebant nocturna  
 of war might be made, and they were holding night

concilia in desertis locis: neque ullum  
 assemblies in desert places: nor (did) any

tempus fere totius hiemis intercessit sine  
 time nearly of the whole winter pass without

sollicitudine Cæsaris,<sup>86</sup> quin acciperet (imp.  
 the anxiety of Cæsar, but that he was receiving

subj.) aliquem nuntium de conciliis  
 some messenger concerning the assemblies

et motu Gallorum. In his factus est  
 and disturbance of the Gauls. Among these he was made

certior ab Lucio Roscio legato,  
 more sure [was informed] by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant,

quem præfecerat decimæ tertię legioni,  
 whom he had appointed to the thirteenth legion, (that)

magnas copias Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ  
great forces of the Gauls of these states, which

appellantur Armoricæ, convenisse causâ  
are called Armoricæ, to have [had] assembled for the sake

oppugnandi sui; neque abfuisse  
of assaulting himself; nor to have [had] been distant

longius octo millia passuum ab suis  
farther (than) eight thousand (of) paces from his

hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de  
winter quarters; but, a message having been brought about

victoriâ Cæsaris, discessisse, adde  
the victory of Cæsar, to have (that they) departed, so

ut discessus videretur (imp. subj.) similis  
that (their) departure was seeming like

fugæ.  
(to) a flight.

24. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis  
But Cæsar, the chiefs of each state

vocatis ad se, tenuit magnam partem  
having been called to himself, kept a great part

Galliæ in officio, aliàs territando, quum  
of Gaul in duty, at one time by alarming, when

denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire  
he was announcing, (that he) himself to know

quæ fierent (imp. subj.), aliàs  
[knew] what (things) were done, at another time

cohortando. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas  
by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state

in primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter  
particularly strong, and of great authority among

Gallos, conati (sunt) interficere publico consilio  
the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel

Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituërat regem  
Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king

apud eos, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu  
among them, (whose brother Moritasgus, at the coming

Cæsaris in Galliam, que cujus majores  
of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose ancestors

obtinuērunt regnum); quum ille præsensisset  
 had held the sovereignty, when he had foreknown  
 (pl. perf. subj.) ac profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
 and had escaped.  
 insecuti usque ad fines, expulerunt  
 having pursued (him) even to the borders, they expelled  
 (him) domo que regno; et legatis  
 from home and the kingdom; and ambassadors  
 missis ad Cæsarem causâ satis-  
 having been sent to Cæsar for the sake of making  
 faciendâ, quum is iussisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnem  
 satisfaction, when he had ordered all  
 senatum venire ad se, fuerunt non  
 (their) senate to come to himself, they were not  
 audientes<sup>87</sup> dicto (dat.), Valuit tantum  
 hearing [obedient] to the word It availed so much  
 apud barbaros homines, aliquos  
 among barbarian men, (that) some  
 repertos esse principes inferendi belli,  
 to have been [were] found leaders of [in] waging war,  
 que attulit tantam commutationem voluntatum  
 and it brought so great a change of wills  
 omnibus, ut fere nulla civitas fuisset  
 [heart] to all that scarcely no [any] state was  
 non suspecta nobis, præter Æduos et  
 not suspected by us, except the Ædui and  
 Remos, quos Cæsar semper habuit præcipuo  
 Remi, whom Cæsar always had in particular  
 honore, alios pro vetere ac perpetuâ fide  
 honor, the former for ancient and constant faith  
 erga Romanum populum; alios pro recentibus  
 toward the Roman people: the latter for the recent  
 officiis Galli bellum: que scio haud, ne  
 duties of the Gallic war and I know not, whether  
 id sit mirandum admodum, cum  
 this may be (to be) wondered at so not only from  
 compluribus aliis causis, tum maximè quod  
 many other causes, but also chiefly because



qui præferebantur omnibus gentibus (dat.)  
(those) who were surpassing all nations

virtute belli, dolebant gravissimè,  
in bravery in war, were grieving most severely. (that they)

se deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,  
themselves to have [had] lost so much of the reputation of it,

ut perferrent imperia Romani  
that they should endure the commands of the Roman

populi.  
people.

55. Verò Treviri atque Indutiomārus  
But the Treviri and Indutiomarus

intermiserunt<sup>88</sup> nullum tempus totius hiemis,  
omitted no time of the whole winter,

quin mitterent legatos trans Rhenum;  
but that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;

solicitarent civitates; pollicerentur  
(that) they might solicit the states; (that) they might promise

pecunias (pl.): dicērent, magnā  
money: (that) they might say. (that) a great

parte nostri exercitūs interfectā, multò  
part of our army having been slain. by far

minorem partem superesse. Nēque tamen  
the lesser part to remain [remains]. Nor yet

potuit persuaderi<sup>89</sup> ulli  
was it possible to be persuaded to any [to persuade any]

civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;  
state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;

quum dicērent (imp. subj.) se  
since they were saying (that they) themselves,

expertos bis, bello Ariovisti, et  
having tried twice in the war of Ariovistus, and

transitu Tencterorum, non esse  
in the crossing of the Tencteri. not to be [are not]

tentaturos fortunam amplius. Indutiomārus  
about [going] to try fortune further. Indutiomarus

lapsus hāc spe, nihilo minus coepit  
having slipped [failed] in this hope. nevertheless began

coġere copias, exigere à finitimis,  
to collect forces, to demand (them) from the neighboring

parare equos, allicere exules que damnatos  
(states), to procure horses, to entice exiles and condemned

ad se magnis præmiis totâ Galliâ:  
(persons) to himself by great rewards in all Gaul:

ac comparaverat jam tantam auctoritatem sibi  
and he procured now so great authority for himself

his rebus in Galliâ, ut legationes  
by these things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrerent (imp. subj.) undique ad eum;  
were assembling from every side to him;

peterent (imp. subj.) gratiam atque amicitiam  
they were seeking (his) favor and friendship

publicè que privatim.  
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit venire  
When he understood (it) to be come [that they came]

ultrò ad se; Senones que Carnutes  
voluntarily to himself; (that) the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientiâ facinoris ex alterâ  
to be [were] instigated by a consciousness of crime on one

parte, Nervios que Aduaticos parare  
side, (that) the Nervii and Aduatuci (to) prepare

bellum Romanis (dat.) alterâ neque  
war against the Romans on the other side nor (that)

copias voluntariorum defore  
forces of volunteers to be about to [would] be wanting

sibi, si cœpisset (pl. subj.) progrèdi ex  
to himself, if he was beginning to advance from

suis finibus; indicit armatum concilium.  
his own borders; he proclaims an armed council.

Hoc, more Gallorum, est initium  
This, by the custom of the Gauls, is a commencement

belli; quò omnes pubères coguntur  
of war; where all full grown (persons) are compelled

convenire armati, communi lege; et qui  
to assemble armed. by a common law. and who

ex iis venit novissimus, effectus  
 [whoever] from [of] them comes last, having been visited  
 omnibus cruciatibus necatur in conspectu  
 with all tortures is put to death in sight  
 multitudinis. In eo concilio curat  
 of the multitude. In this council he takes care  
 Cingetorigem, principem alterius factionis, suum  
 Cingetorix, the chief of the other party. his own  
 generum, judicandum hostem (quem demonstravimus  
 son in law. to be [is] judged an enemy (whom we have shown  
 supra, secutum fidem Cæsaris, non  
 above, having secured the good faith of Cæsar, not  
 discessisse ab eo), que publicat  
 to have [had not] departed from him), and he confiscates  
 ejus bona. His rebus confectis,  
 his goods. These things having been finished  
 pronunciat in concilio se  
 he declares in the council (that he) himself  
 accersitum (esse) à Senonibus et Carnutibus,  
 to have [has] been sent for by the Senones and Carnutes  
 que compluribus aliis civitatibus Galliæ:  
 and by very many other states of Gaul  
 facturum (esse) iter huc per  
 to be [that he is] about to make (his) march hither through  
 fines Remorum, que populaturum eorum  
 the territories of the Remi and [is] about to ravage their  
 agros; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni  
 lands. and [is] about to assault the camp of Labienus  
 prius quam faciat id, que præcipit,  
 before (that) he may do this and he prescribes.  
 quæ velit fieri.  
 what he wishes to be done.  
 57. Labienus timebat nihil de suo  
 Labienus was fearing nothing about his own  
 periculo ac legionis, quum contineret  
 danger and (that) of the legion, since he was keeping  
 sese castris (pl.) munitissimis et naturâ  
 himself in a camp most fortified both by the nature

lōci, et mānu; sed cogitabat<sup>gn</sup>  
 of the place, and by hand [art]. but he was thinking  
 ne dimittēret quam occasionem gerendæ  
 he should not lose any opportunity of carrying on  
 rēi bēnē. Itaque oratione Indutiomāri,  
 a matter well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus,  
 quam habuērat in concilio, cognitā  
 which he had delivered in the council, having been known  
 à Cingetorīge atque ejus propinquis, mittit  
 from Cingetorix and his relations, he sends  
 nuntios ad finitimas civitates, que  
 messengers to the neighboring states, and  
 convocat equites undique. Dicit  
 calls together cavalry from every side. He says [fixes]  
 certam diem conveniendi his. Intērim  
 a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime  
 Indutiomārus vagabatur prōpē quotidie cum omni  
 Indutiomarus was roving almost daily with all  
 equitatu sub ejus castris (pl.); aliās ut  
 (his) cavalry near his camp; at one time that  
 cognosceret situm castrorum (pl.); aliās  
 he might learn the situation of the camp. at another time  
 causā colloquendi aut territandi: omnes  
 for the sake of parleying or of alarming: all  
 equites plerumque conjiciebant tela intra  
 (his) cavalry generally were hurling weapons within  
 vallum. Labienus continebant suos intra  
 the rampart. Labienus was keeping his (men) within  
 munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris  
 the fortifications, and was increasing the supposition of fear  
 quibuscunque rebus potērat.  
 by whatsoever things [means] he was able  
 58. Quum Indutiomārus accedēret (imp. subj.)  
 When Indutiomarus was approaching  
 indies ad castra (pl.) majore contempione,  
 daily to the camp with greater contempt,  
 equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos  
 the cavalry of all the neighboring states, which

curavērat	accessendos,	intromissis	unā
he had taken care	to be sent for,	having been admitted	in one
nocte, continūit omnes sūos	custodiis (pl.)	intra	
night, he kept all his (men)	on guard	within	
castra (pl.)	tantā	diligentiā, ut ēa res	
the camp	with so great	diligence, that this thing	
posset	enuntiari	nullā ratione, aut	
might be able	to [could] be told	by no means, or	
perferri	ad Trevīros.	Intērim, ex	
(to) be carried	to the Treviri	Meantime, according to	
quotidianā	consuetudinē,	Indutiomārus	accedit
daily	custom.	Indutiomarus	approaches
ad castra (pl.), atque	consumit magnam partem		
(to) the camp, and	spends a great part		
dier ūbi.	Equites conji-ci-unt	tela, et	
of the day there	(His) cavalry hurl	weapons, and	
evocant	nostros	ad pugnam magnā <sup>91</sup>	
call out	our (men)	to battle with great	
contumeliā verborum.	Nullo responso	dāto	
insult of words	No answer	having been given	
à castris (pl.), ūbi	visum est,	discedunt	
from the camp when	it seemed (well),	they depart	
dispersi ac dissipati	sub vespērum.	Labienus	
dispersed and scattered	about evening	Labienus	
subitō	emittit omnem equitatum	duabus	
suddenly	sends forth all the cavalry	from two	
portis:	præcipit atque interdicat, <sup>92</sup>	hostibus	
gates	he prescribes and enjoins,	the enemy	
perterrītis,	atque coniectis	in fūgam,	
having been dismayed	and thrown	into flight,	
(quod videbat	fōre,	sicut	
(which he was seeing	to be about to [would] be,	just as	
accidit)	omnes petērent	Indutiomārum	
it happened)	(that) all should seek	Indutiomarus	
unum,	neu quis vulneraret quemquam,		
one [alone]	nor any (man) should wound any one,		
prius quàm	videret illum interfectum:	quòd	
before (that)	he should see him killed.	because	

nolebat	illum,	nactum	spatium		
he was unwilling	(that) him [he],	having got	space [time]		
mōrā	reliquorum,	effugere.	Proponit		
by delay	of [with] the rest,	to [should] escape.	He offers		
magna	præmia	his,	qui occiderint:	submittit	
great	rewards	to those,	who should kill (him).	he sends up	
cohortes	subsidiō	equitibus.	Fortuna	comprobat	
cohorts	for aid	to the cavalry.	Fortune	approves	
	consilium	homīnis;	et	quum	omnes
[favors]	the plan	of the men:	and	since	all
petērent (imp. subj.)	unum,	Indutiomārus			
were seeking	one,	Indutiomarus			
deprehensus	in	vādo	ipso	flumīnis	
having been caught	in	the ford	itself [the very ford]	of the river	
interficiūtur,	que	ejus	cāput	refertur	in
is slain.	and	his	head	is carried back	into
castra (pl.).	Equites	redeuntes	consectantur	atque	
the camp	The cavalry	returning	pursue	and	
occidunt,	quos	possunt.	Hāc	re	cognitā,
slay (those),	whom	they can	This	thing	having been known,
omnes	copiæ	Eburonum	et	Nerviorum,	
all	the forces	of the Eburones	and	of the Nervii,	
quæ convenērant,	discedunt;	que	paulò	post	id
which had assembled,	depart,	and	a little	after	this
factum,	Cæsar	habuit	Galliā	quietiorem.	
deed [action],	Cæsar	had	Gaul	more tranquil.	

## SIXTH BOOK

The sixth book begins with a description of Cæsar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senonnes and Carnutes. The Triveri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Cæsar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Cæsar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Cæsar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies.

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem  
 Cæsar for many reasons expecting (a) greater  
 motum Gallæ instituit per legatos,  
 commotion of Gaul determines through (his) lieutenants,  
 M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium,  
 N. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, (and) T. Sextius,  
 habere delectum. Simul pëtit ab Cneio  
 to hold a levy. At the same time he requests from Cneius  
 Pompeio, proconsule, quoniam ipse maneret  
 Pompey, proconsul, (that) because he was remaining  
 ad urbem cum imperio, causâ  
 near the city with (military) command, for the sake of  
 rei publicæ, juberet quos  
 the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom  
 rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consul ex  
 he had enrolled by oath (as) consul in

Cisalpinâ Galliâ convenire ad signa et  
Cisalpine Gaul to assemble at the standards and

proficisci ad se; existimans interesse magni  
march to him: deeming (it) to be of great

ad opinionem Galliæ  
(importance) regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might

etiam in reliquum tempus  
have) even for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ videri tantas ut si  
resources of Italy to [should] be seen so great that if

quid (neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,  
any (of) detriment [harm] should be received in war.

id non modò posset sarciri brevî tempore, sed  
this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etiam augeri<sup>1</sup> majoribus copiis. Quod  
could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

quum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et  
when Pompey had granted both for the republic and

amicitiæ; delectu celeriter confecto  
for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made

per suos, tribus legionibus et  
through his (lieutenants). three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem exactum;  
having been raised and brought on before the winter had passed;

et numero earum cohortium, quas amiserat cum  
and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost under

Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et  
Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina  
by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.  
and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,  
Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium defertur à Trevis ad ejus propinquos.  
the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos Germanos  
They (do) not cease to invite the neighboring Germans



et polliceri pecuniam. Quum possent non impetrare  
and to promise money. When they could not obtain

ab proximis,<sup>2</sup> tentant ulteriores.<sup>3</sup>  
(this) from the neighboring, they try the more remote.

Nonnullis, civitatibus inventis,  
Some, states having been found (compliant),

confirmant<sup>4</sup> jurejurando inter se, que  
they pledge by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniâ; adjungunt  
give security by hostages for the money. they unite

sibi Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus  
to themselves Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty Which

rebus cognitis, Cæsar quum videret bellum  
things having been known. Cæsar as he perceived war

parari<sup>5</sup> undique; Nervios, Aduatucos  
to be [was] preparing on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis  
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis esse in armis; Senones non  
having been added were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare  
come at (his) command, and (that) they exchange

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;  
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Treviris crēbris  
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum,  
embassies; he thought to [it must] be considered [he must

consider] sibi (dat.) maturiùs de bello.  
by himself earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectâ,  
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed

quatuor proximis legionibus coactis,  
the four nearest legions having been assembled.

contendit improvise in fines Nerviorum; et  
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

priùs quàm illi aut possent convenire, aut  
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugere magno numero pecoris atque hominum  
 escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque hæ prædâ concessâ  
 having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coëgit  
 to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

venire in deditionem, atque dare  
 (them) to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter  
 hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.  
 performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut  
 A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituërat, quum reliqui præter Senones,  
 he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus  
 the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,  
 this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponere omnia, transfert  
 although he might seem to postpone every thing, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi erant  
 the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris), These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriâ patrum  
 neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxerant<sup>6</sup> civitatem, sed existimabantur  
 had united their state with (them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hæc re  
 to have been absent from this council. This thing

pronunciatâ pro suggestu, proficiscitur  
 having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in Senones, que  
 on the same day with the legions into the Senones, and

pervenit eò magnis itineribus.  
 arrives there by long [forced] marches

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat  
 His arrival having been learned Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii, jubet multitudinem convenire  
the author of this council. orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,  
in the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (and)

prius quàm id posset effici Romanos  
before (that) it could be accomplished (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessariò desistunt sententiâ, que  
to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design. and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causâ deprecandi;<sup>7</sup>  
send ambassadors to Cæsar for the purpose of imploring,

adeunt per Æduos, in fide  
they approach (him) through the Ædui. under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitùs. Æduis  
of whom (their) state was formerly The Ædui

petentibus Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit  
petitioning Cæsar readily gives pardon. and receives

excusationem, quòd arbitrabatur æstivum  
(their) excuse, because he was judging (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non  
time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,  
of [for] investigation A hundred hostages having been ordered,

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes  
he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eòdem,  
send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelâ  
having made use of the Remi as intercessors. under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.  
of whom they were. they carry (back) the same answer.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites  
Cæsar held the council. and orders horsemen

civitatis (dat.).  
(of) the states.

5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacatâ, insistit  
This part of Gaul having been pacified, he applied

totus et mente et animo in bellum  
(himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum  
 of the Treviri and Ambiorix He orders Cavarinus

proficisci secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis  
 to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus  
 commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiâ, aut ex eo, quod meruerat odio.  
 irascibility, or from this (fact), that he had merited hatred.

His rebus constitutis, quod habebat pro  
 These things having been settled, because he was holding for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum<sup>8</sup>  
 [as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prælio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.  
 in battle, he was considering in mind his other plans.

Menapii erant propinqui finibus Eburonum,  
 The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex  
 protected by continuous marshes and woods; who alone of

Galliâ nunquam miserant legatos ad Cæsarem  
 Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse  
 concerning peace; he was knowing (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item  
 with [between] them (and) Ambiorix, also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam  
 he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat  
 to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He was thinking (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, prius quàm  
 these auxiliaries to [must] be detached from him, before (that)

ipsum lacessendum bello; ne salute des-  
 (he) himself to be [was] assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratâ, aut abderet se in Menapios,  
 despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii

aut cogeretur congregi cum transrhenanis.  
 or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans)

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta  
 This plan having been formed, he sends the baggage

totius exercitûs ad Labienum in Treviros, que  
of all the army to Labienus among the Treviri, and

jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse  
orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in  
marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullâ mânu coactâ,  
the Menapii They. no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio loci, confugiunt in silvas  
trusting to the protection of the place, retreat to the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eòdem sũa.  
and marshes, and convey to the same place their property

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,  
Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus  
the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor and bridges

effectis celeriter, adiit tripartitò;  
having been constructed hastily, he invades in three divisions;

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno  
he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great

numero pecõris, atque hominum. Coacti  
number of cattle, and of men Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad  
by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causâ petendæ<sup>9</sup> pacis Ille, obsidibus,  
him, for the purpose of seeking peace He, the hostages,

acceptis confirmat se habit-  
having been received declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent  
[would] hold (them) in the number of enemies if they received

aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos suis finibus.  
either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories.

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,  
These things having been settled, he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis loco  
the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.  
of a guard; he himself marches unto the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur à Cæsare, Treviri,  
 While these (things) are performed by Cæsar the Treviri,  
 magnis copiis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-  
 a great force of foot soldiers, and of cavalry having been  
 tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ  
 assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one  
 legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que  
 legion, which had wintered in their territories. And  
 jam aberant ab eo non longius  
 already they were distant from him not farther (than)  
 viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas  
 a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two  
 legiones venisse missu Cæsar.  
 legions had arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.  
 Castris positis à quindecim<sup>10</sup> millibus  
 Their camp having been pitched by fifteen thousand  
 passuum constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)  
 (of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]  
 Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-  
 of the Germans. Labienus the plan of the enemy having  
 nito sperans temeritate eorum  
 been learned (and) hoping (that) by the rashness of them  
 fore aliquam  
 [by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some  
 facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium  
 opportunity of fighting. a guard of five cohorts  
 relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem  
 having been left for the baggage, he marches against the enemy  
 cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno  
 with twenty five cohorts, and a great [much]  
 equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille  
 cavalry, and he fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand  
 passuum intermisso. Erat, inter Labienus  
 paces having intervened. There was, between Labienus  
 atque hostem, flumen difficili transtitu, que  
 and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing and  
 præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo  
 with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes  
 to cross this, nor was he thinking (that) the enemy  
 transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.  
 would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily  
 Loquitur palàm in concilio, "quoniam Germani  
 It was said openly in council, "because the Germans  
 dicuntur appropinquare sese non  
 are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not  
 devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas  
 (about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes  
 exercitûs, et moturum castra  
 of the army. and (that he) about to [would] move the camp  
 primâ luce<sup>11</sup> postero die." Hæc deferuntur  
 at early dawn on the next day." These (words) are carried  
 celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero  
 quickly to the enemy as from [of] the great number  
 equitatûs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos  
 of cavalry of the Gauls, nature was forcing some  
 favere Gallicis rebus. Noctû Labienus, tribunis  
 to favor the Gallic affairs At night Labienus, the tribunes  
 militum que primis ordinibus coac-  
 of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been  
 tis, proponit quid sit sui  
 assembled, propounds [proposes] what may be (of) his  
 consilii; et quò faciliùs det hostibus  
 plan, and that the more easily he may give to the enemy  
 suspicionem timoris, jubet castra moveri  
 a suspicion of fear he orders the camp to be moved  
 majore strepitu et tumultu, quàm fert consuetudo  
 with greater noise and confusion, than was the custom  
 Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem  
 of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure  
 similem fugæ. Hæc quoque deferuntur ad  
 like to a flight. These (things) also are announced to  
 hostes per exploratores ante lucem, in  
 the enemy through spies before light, in  
 tanta propinquitate castrorum.  
 so great [such] nearness of the camps.

8. Vix novissimum agmen processerat extra  
 Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond  
 munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se<sup>12</sup>  
 the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another  
 ne dimitterent speratam prædam ex  
 (that) they should not lose the hope for booty from  
 manibus; esse longum expectare  
 (their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for  
 auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;  
 the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified:  
 neque suam dignitatem pati ut non  
 (that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not  
 audeant adoriri tantis copiis, tam exiguum  
 dare to attack with so great forces, so small  
 manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;  
 a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;  
 non dubitant transire flumen et committere  
 they do not hesitate to cross the river and to join  
 prælium iniquo loco. Quæ Labienus  
 battle in an unfavorable place. Which Labienus  
 suspicatus fore, ut eliceret  
 having suspected to be about to [would] be, that he would lure  
 omnes citra flumen, progrediebatur placidè  
 all to this side the river, he was marching on quietly  
 usus eadem simulatione (abl.) itineris. Tum,  
 having used the same pretence [of a march]. Then,  
 impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque  
 the baggage having been sent forward a little, and  
 collocatis quodam tumulo; "habetis," inquit,  
 having been placed on a certain eminence: "you have" says he.  
 "milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenetis  
 "soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought: you hold  
 hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;  
 the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place.  
 præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam  
 exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals which  
 sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori; existimate  
 so often you have displayed to your commander: suppose



ĕum adesse, et cernere hæc  
 him to be present. and to observe these (deeds as if)  
 coràm." Simul jubet signa con-  
 in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be  
 verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et  
 turned to the enemy. and the battle-line to be formed, and  
 paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad  
 a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to  
 impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.  
 the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.  
 Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt  
 Our men, a shout having been raised. quickly throw  
 pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter  
 (their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary  
 spem, viderunt quos credebant fugere  
 to expectation, they saw those whom they believed to flee  
 ire ad se infestis signis, non ferre  
 come at them with hostile standards, (to) [could] not sustain  
 impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,  
 the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,  
 conjecti in fugam, petiverunt proximas  
 having been thrown into flight, they sought the nearest  
 silvas; quos Labienus consecutus equitatu  
 woods; whom Labienus having followed with (his) cavalry  
 magno numero interfecto, compluribus  
 (and) a great number having been slain. and very many  
 captis, recepit civitatem, paucis  
 having been captured he received the state (in submission), a few  
 diebus pòst. Nam Germani, qui veniebant  
 days afterwards For the Germans, who were coming  
 auxilio, fugâ Trevirorum perceptâ  
 for [as] aid. the flight of the Treviri having been known  
 contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui  
 betook themselves home With them the relations  
 Indutiomari, qui fuërant auctores defectionis  
 of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt  
 comitati eos excessere ex civitate,  
 having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,  
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorix.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in  
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio  
allegiance from the beginning

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapiis in  
Cæsar after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;  
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant  
the one of which was, because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Trevisis contra se, altera  
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself the other (that)

Ambiorix ne haberet receptum ad eos. His  
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem  
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-  
a little above this place at which before he had

duxerat exercitum Ratione notâ atque  
transported the army The plan having been known and

institutâ, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno  
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days by the great

studio militum Firmo præsidio relicto ad  
zeal of the soldiers A strong guard having been left at

pontem in Trevisis, ne quis motus oriretur  
the bridge among the Treviri lest any commotion might arise

subitò ab eis transducit reliquas copias que  
suddenly among them he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum Ubii, qui antè dederant obsides,  
the cavalry The Ubii who before had given hostages

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt legatos ad  
and had come to a surrender send ambassadors to

eum causâ purgandi sui,<sup>13</sup> qui doceant.  
him for the purpose of clearing themselves who may show

neque auxilia missa in Treviros ex  
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suâ civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;  
 their state, nor faith (had been) violated by them.

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne  
 they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant  
 in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus, si velit amplius obsidum,  
 the penalties for the guilty. if he desires more hostages,

pollicentur dare Causâ cognitâ,  
 they promise to give (them) The case having been investigated.

Cæsar reperit auxilia missa esse ab  
 Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;  
 the Suevi he accepts the excuses of the Ubi. and

perquirat aditus que vias in Suevos.  
 carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior<sup>14</sup> ab Ubiis, paucis  
 In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubi. a few

diebus post, Suevos cogere omnes  
 days after (that) the Suevi to collect [were collecting] all

copias in unum locum, atque denunciare  
 (their) forces into one place, and also to warn [were]

his nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperio,  
 warning] these nations who are under their command.

ut mittant auxilia peditatûs que equitatûs.  
 that they should send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentaria,  
 These things having been known he provides a corn supply.

deligit idoneum locum castris; imperat  
 he selects a suitable place for the camp; he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecora, que conferant  
 the Ubi. that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans  
 all their (property) from the fields into the towns, hoping

barbâros atque imperitos homines adductos  
 (that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiâ cibariorum posse deduci ad  
 by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi Mandat  
 an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubi)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,  
 that they send frequent scouts among the Suevi

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud eos  
 that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,  
 They execute the orders and, a few days having passed.

referunt; "omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores  
 report. "all the Suevi after (that) more certain

nuncii venerant de exercitû  
 messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepissee sese penitus ad  
 of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que  
 the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent Esse  
 of (their) allies. which they had collected To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ  
 a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis, hanc pertinere longè  
 is called Bacenis. this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,  
 into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibere injuriis que incursionibus Cheruscos  
 to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

à Suevis, que Suevos à Cheruscis; Suevos  
 from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci the Suevi

constituisse expectare adventum Romanorum,  
 to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans

ad initium ejus silvæ  
 at the entrance of this forest

11 Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum,  
 Because it has come to this place

videtur non esse alienum proponere  
 it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et  
 of the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter  
in what (respects) these nations may differ among

sese.<sup>15</sup> In Galliâ sunt factiones,  
themselves In Gaul (there) are factions.

non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque  
not only in all the states and

pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis  
cantons and parts. but also almost in the several

domibus; que principes earum fâctionum sunt  
houses and the chiefs of those factions are (those)

qui existimantur habere, iudicio eorum  
who are considered to have. in the judgement of them [their

judgement] summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que  
the highest authority to the will and

iudicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que  
judgement of whom, the management of all affairs and

consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur  
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)

institutum (esse) antiquitùs causâ ejus rei,  
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing

ne quis ex plebe egëret auxilii (gen.)  
(that) no one from [of] the people should want assistance

contra potentiozem, enim quisque non patitur  
against the more powerful for each one does not suffer

suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat  
his own to be oppressed and overreached; nor if he do

aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.  
otherwise has he any authority among his (people).

Hæc eadem ratio est in summâ  
This same plan [system] is in the management [authority]

totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divsæ sunt  
of all Gaul For indeed all the states are divided

in duas partes.  
into two parties.

12 Quum Cæsar venit in Galliam, Ædúi erant  
When Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædúi were

principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius. Hi,  
the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other These

quum valerent minus per se,  
 [The latter] as they prevailed less by themselves.  
 (quòd summa auctoritas erat in Æduis  
 [because the supreme authority was among the Ædui  
 antiquitùs, que magnæ erant eorum  
 ancièntly [of old]. and great (states) were their  
 clientelæ), adjunxerant Germanos atque  
 tributaries). they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and  
 Ariovistum sibi, que perduxerant eos ad  
 Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to  
 se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Verò  
 themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed  
 compluribus secundis præliis factis, atque  
 very many successful battles having been fought, and  
 omni mobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,  
 all the nobility of the Ædui having been slain,  
 antecesserant tantum potentiâ, ut  
 they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power that  
 transducerent ad se magnam partem clientium  
 they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients  
 ab Æduis, que acciperent ab iis  
 [tributaries] from the Ædui, and received from these  
 filios principum obsides, et cogèrent jurare  
 the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (them) to swear  
 publicè, se inituros<sup>16</sup> nihil consili  
 publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design  
 contra Sequanos; et possiderent partem  
 against the Sequani, and they kept a part  
 finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que  
 of the neighboring territories seized by force, and  
 obtinerent principatum totius Galliæ Divitiacus  
 obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus  
 adductus quâ necessitate, profectus Romam  
 led by which [this] necessity. having proceeded to Rome  
 ad senatum causâ petendi auxilia, re  
 to the senate for the purpose of asking aid. the thing  
 infectâ redierat. Adventu  
 [purpose] having been accomplished had returned By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factâ,  
 of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,  
 obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus  
 the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old  
 clientelis restitutis, nōvis comparatis  
 tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired  
 per Cæsarem, (quòd ii, qui aggregaverant  
 through Cæsar, (because these, who had united  
 se ad eorum amicitiam, videbant se  
 themselves to their friendship, were seeing (that) they  
 uti<sup>17</sup> meliore conditione atque æquiore  
 to use [possessed] a better condition and more equitable  
 imperio) reliquis rebus eorum gratiâ  
 government) (their) other affairs, their authority  
 que dignitate amplificatâ, Sequani  
 and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani  
 dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant  
 had lost the sovereignty, the Remi succeeded  
 in eorum locum; quos<sup>18</sup> quòd  
 in their place, whom [who] as  
 intelligebatur adæquare gratiâ apud  
 it was perceived equaled (the Ædui) in favor with  
 Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias  
 Cæsar, these, who on account of old hostilities  
 poterant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,  
 could in no manner be united with the Ædui,  
 dicabant se in clientelam Remis.  
 were declaring themselves under the protection of the Remi.  
 Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenebant  
 They were protecting them carefully, and so they held  
 nōvam et repentè collectam auctoritatem. Res  
 a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs  
 erat tum eo statu, ut Ædui haberentur  
 were then in this state, that the Ædui were held  
 longè principes, Remi obtinerent secundum  
 by far as the principal (people) the Remi obtained the second  
 locum dignitatis.  
 place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Galliâ eorum hominum, qui sunt  
 In all Gaul of these men who are  
 aliquo numero atque honore, sunt duo genera.  
 of any account and honor. there are two classes.  
 Nam plebs habetur pæne lōco servorum,  
 For the common people are held almost in place of slaves,  
 quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli  
 who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no  
 concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,  
 council. Many when they are oppressed either by debt,  
 aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriâ  
 or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]  
 potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutem  
 of the more powerful, declare themselves in servitude  
 nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ  
 to the nobles, all the same rights are over these, which  
 dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus  
 [as] to masters over slaves. But of these two  
 generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum  
 classes, the one is (that) of the Druids. the other (that)  
 Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,  
 of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,  
 procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-  
 they have charge of public and private sacrifices (and) inter-  
 pretantur religiones Magnus numerus adolescentium  
 pret religion A great number of youths  
 concurrunt ad hos causâ disciplinæ, que ii,  
 resort to these for the purpose of training, and they  
 sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam  
 (the Druids) are in great honor among them For  
 constituunt de ferè omnibus controversiis  
 they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)  
 publicis que privatis; et si quod facinus est  
 public and private; and if any crime had been  
 admissum, si cædes facta, si est  
 committed, if (any) murder had been done, if (there) is  
 controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, iidem  
 a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries the same



decernunt; que constituunt præmia que pœnas  
decide (it). and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non  
If any (person) either a private or public, should not

steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.  
submit to their decree, they forbid (him) the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud eos. Hi  
This is a very great punishment among them These

quibus<sup>19</sup> est ita interdictum, habentur numero  
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,  
of the impious and wicked, all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne  
and flee from their approach and conversation, lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex  
they might receive some (of) evil from (their)

contagione; neque jus redditur eis  
contagion, neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus hōnos communicatur. Autem  
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet  
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,  
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.  
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio  
But if many are equal he is elected by the suffrage

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis  
of the Druids, also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatu. Hi considunt in consecrato  
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

lōco, certo tempore anni in finibus  
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.  
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc omnes undique, qui habent controversias,  
Here all from all sides, who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.  
 assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees.

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britannîâ,  
 (This) institution [cu't] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et  
 and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul And

nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam  
 now those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illò causâ  
 thing [sect] often go there for the purpose

discendi.  
 of learning (it)

14. Druides consueverunt abesse à bello, neque  
 The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war nor

pendunt tributa unâ cum reliquis; (habent vaca-  
 do they pay tribute together with the rest (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium  
 tion from military service and immunity of [in] all

rerum.) Excitati tantis præmiis, et multi suâ  
 things) Excited by such advantages and many of their

sponte conveniunt in disciplinam, et mittuntur à  
 own accord assemble for instruction, and they are sent by

parentibus que propinquis Dicuntur ediscere  
 parents and relations They are said to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi. Itaque nonnulli  
 a great number of verses there Therefore many

permanent vicos annos in disciplinâ; neque  
 remain twenty years under instruction nor

existimant esse fas mandare hæc  
 do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, quum utantur Græcis litteris, in ferè  
 to writing, although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.  
 (all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;  
 This seems to me to have been established for two reasons

quòd neque velint disciplinam efferi in  
 because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque eos qui discunt, confisos  
the common people nor (that) those who learn relying

litteris, studere memoriæ minùs.  
on writing should cultivate (their) memory the less [too little].

Quod ferè accidit plerisque, ut præsidio  
Which ordinarily happens to the most so that by the aid

litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,  
of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning,

ac memoriam. In primis volunt persuadere  
and (their) memory. In particular they wish to inculcate

hoc: animas non interire, sed post mortem  
this (that): souls [do] not (to) die, but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios;<sup>20</sup> atque putant  
(to) pass from one (body) to another; and they think

hòc maximè excitari ad virtutem,  
(that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] excited to courage,

mètu mortis neglecto. Præterea disputant,  
the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss,

et tradunt juventuti, multa, de sideribus,  
and impart to the youths, many things, concerning the stars,

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi  
and their motion, concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturâ rerum, de  
and the earth, concerning the nature of things, concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum.  
the power and majesty of the immortal gods.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, quum  
The other class is the knights. These, when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante  
is need, and any war occurs, (which before

adventum Cæsaris solebat accidere ferè quotannis,  
the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year,

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut  
as either they themselves inflicted injuries, or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in  
repelled (them) inflicted) all are employed in

bello, atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus  
war, and as any one of them is most noble

genere que copîs, ita habet plurimos ambactos  
by family and resources so he has very many vassals

que clientes circum se Noverunt hanc  
and clients about himself [him] They have known this

gratiam que potentiam unam.  
authority and power only

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita  
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given  
religionibus, atque ob eam causam,  
to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)

qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui  
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who

versantur in præliis que periculis, aut immolant  
are engaged in war and dangers either sacrifice

homines pro victimis, aut vovent se  
men for [as] victims or they vow (that they) themselves

immolatu<sup>21</sup>ros, que utuntur Druidibus  
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them) and they use the Druids

(abl.) administris ad ea sacrificia; quòd arbitrantur,  
as performers of these sacrifices because they think.

nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitâ  
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life

hominis, numen immortalium deorum  
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods

non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia  
could not be otherwise appeased and they have sacrifices

eiusdem generis instituta publicè Alii habent  
of the same kind performed publicly Others have

simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum  
images with [of] vast size the limbs of which

contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus,  
woven with twigs they fill with living men

quibus succensis homines exanimantur  
which having been set on fire the men are put to death

circumventi flammâ Arbitrantur supplicia  
by the surrounding flame. They think (that) the sacrifices

eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in  
of those, who may be taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquâ noxâ esse gratiora  
 robbery or in any culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis, sed quum copia ejus  
 to the immortal gods but when a supply of this

generis deficit, etiam descendunt ad supplicia  
 kind is wanting also they descend to the sacrifice

innocentium  
 of the innocent

17 Maximè colunt deum Mercurium · sunt  
 They principally worship the god Mercury there are

plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem  
 many images of him they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium, hunc ducem viarum  
 of all arts (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinèrum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam  
 and marches they believe him to have very great

vim ad quæstus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl).  
 power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et  
 After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars and

Jovem, et Minervam De his habent ferè  
 Jupiter and Minerva About these they have nearly

ẽandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;  
 the same opinion which [as] other nations (that)

Apollinem depellere<sup>22</sup> morbos, Minervam tradere  
 Apollo drives away diseases (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem  
 the principles of crafts and of arts (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regere  
 holds the empire of the celestials (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare prælio,  
 wars To him when they have resolved to engage in battle.

plerumque devoent, ẽa quæ ceperint  
 they often vow these (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint, capta  
 in war the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in  
 they sacrifice they bring together the remaining things into

um locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspicari  
one place. In many states there may be seen

mulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis lōcis.  
piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

eque sæpe accīdit, ut quisq̃iam, religione  
Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion

neglectâ, auderet aut occultare capta,  
ing disregarded, should dare either to conceal the things captured,

pud se, aut tollere posita, que  
his home, or to take away the things deposited, and

ravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est  
e most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.  
r this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos  
All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

b Dite patre, que dicunt id  
om Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this

proditum<sup>23</sup> ab Druidibus Ob eam causam  
s been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis temporis non  
ey determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium: et sic observant  
the number of days, but of nights and so observe

atales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et  
birth days, and the commencement of the month and

inorum, ut dies subsequatur noctem. In  
of years, so that the day may follow the night. In

aliquis institutis vitæ differunt hōc ab ferè  
other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all

aliquis, quòd non patiantur suos liberos adire  
others. that they do not suffer their children to approach

e palàm, nisi quum adoleverint, ut  
em publicly, unless when they may have grown up, so that

possint sustinere munus militiæ; que  
ey may be able to bear the duty of military service, and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate  
ey consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistere in conspectu patris, in publico.  
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab  
As much money (as) the husbands may receive from  
uxoribus, nomine, dotis, tantas, æstimatione  
wives, in the name, of dower, so much, an estimate

factâ, communicant cum dotibus ex suis  
having been made, they join with the dower from their own  
bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratio conjunctim  
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum  
is kept, and the profits are reserved. whoever of them

superârit vitâ, pars utriusque cum fructibus  
may have survived in life, the part of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervenit ad eum. Viri  
to the previous time reverts to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que necis in uxores,  
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives,

sicuti in liberos Et quum pater-  
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,  
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res venit  
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem  
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,<sup>24</sup> et si est  
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque  
discovered they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu  
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,  
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi<sup>25</sup> vivis, inferunt  
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulò supra hanc  
into the fire. even animals, and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat  
memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood

dilectos esse ab eis, cremabantur unâ,  
to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together

justis funeribus confectis.  
(with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare  
Those states (which) are believed to administer  
suam rem publicam (sing.) commodiùs, habent  
their public affairs more advantageously, have

sanctum legibus si quis acceperit  
established by law (that) if any one shall have heard

quid à finitimis de re publicâ rumore aut  
any thing from neighbors about the state by rumor or

famâ, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve  
by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor

communicet cum quo alio; quòd cognitum est  
communicate with any other, because it has been known

sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines  
(that) often rash and inexperienced men

terreri falsis rumoribus, et impelli  
to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled

ad faciûs, et capere consilium de summis  
to crime, and to form plans about the most important

rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que  
things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and

produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu  
disclose to the people, what they judge to be of use,

Non conceditur loqui de re publicâ nisi  
It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter unless

per concilium.  
in the council.

21 Germani differunt multum ab hæc consue-  
The Germans differ much from these cus-  
tudine: nam habent neque Druides, qui præsent  
toms, for they have neither Druids, who preside over

divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis Ducunt  
sacred things; nor do they regard sacrifices They hold



ĕos solos numĕro deorum, quos cernunt,  
those only in the number of the gods, whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur apertè,  
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously.

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt  
as the Sun. and Vulcan. (fire) and the Moon: they are heard

reliquos ne famâ quidem Omnis vita  
(of) the others not by report even. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis  
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing.); ab parvulis student  
of military affairs, from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiæ. Qui permanserunt diutissimè  
to labor and hardships. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter sũos.  
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hõc staturam alì,  
(They) believe (that) by this the statue to be [is] increased,

hõc vires alì, que nervos  
by this the strength to be [is] increased. and the nerves

confirmari. Verò habuisse notitiã  
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in  
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cujus rei est nulla  
the most shameful things, of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quòd perluuntur promiscuè in  
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis  
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl.) renonum, magnâ parte corpõris nudâ.  
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major  
They do not attend to agriculture, and the greater

pars ĕorum victũs consistit in lacte et casĕo  
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum mōdum  
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac  
 of land, or proper boundaries, but the magistrates and  
 principes, in singulos annos, attribunt quantum  
 chiefs, in each year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que  
 (of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and  
 cognationibus hominum, qui coierunt unâ,  
 to the families of men, who may have united together,

atque anno post cogunt transire aliò  
 and the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen); ne capti  
 They offer many reasons for this thing, lest captivated

assiduâ consuetudine commutent studium  
 by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturâ; ne student  
 of [for] waging war for agriculture, lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant  
 to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent  
 the more humble from possessions, lest they may build

accuratiùs ad vitandos frigora atque æstus; ne qua  
 with more care for avoiding cold and heat, lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quâ re factiones  
 desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant  
 and dissensions originate, that they may keep

plebem æquitate animi, quum quisque  
 the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum  
 may see (that) his own means to be [are] equaled with

potentissimis.  
 the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habere  
 It is the greatest praise to the states, to have

solitudines quàm latissimas<sup>26</sup> circum se,  
 deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc  
 their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos  
a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedere, neque quemquam  
from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), nor (that) any

(sing) audere consistere se prope.  
(to) dare (to) settle themselves near.

Simul arbitrantur se  
At the same time they think (that) they themselves

före tutiores hęc, timore repentinę  
to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incursionis sublato. Quum civitas aut  
raids having been removed. When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert;  
repels war waged against it, or wages war;

magistratus deliguntur, qui pręsint ei bello,  
magistrates are chosen, who preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitę que necis.  
so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed  
In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt  
the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter suos, que minũunt controversias.  
justice among their (people), and settle disputes.

Habent latrocinia nullam infamiam, quę fiunt  
They hold robberies as no disgrace, which are committed

extra fines cujusque civitatis; atque prędicant  
beyond the boundaries of any state; and they assert

ea fieri causā exercendę  
(that) this to be [is] done for the purpose of exercising

juventutis; ac minuendę desidię. Atque ubi  
the youth; and of preventing sloth. And when

quis ex principibus dixit in concilio, "se  
any one from [of] the chiefs has said in council,

före ducem, ut qui velint  
"he to be about to [will] be the leader, that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur;" ii qui probant et  
to follow let them volunteer;" those who approve both

causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur  
the cause and the man rise up. and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine.  
their aid. and are applauded by the multitude.

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur  
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum, que  
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium  
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.) Putant non fas violare  
things They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quaque  
their guests, those who have come to them for any

causâ, prohibent ab injuriâ, que habent  
reason. they defend from harm. and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que  
inviolable, the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.  
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, quum Galli  
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro  
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella ac propter  
were waging war and on account of

multitudinem hominum, que inopiam agri  
the multitude of men, and the scarcity of land

mitterent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.  
they were sending colonies across the Rhine.

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occupârunt ea loca  
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt  
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video  
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam  
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famâ; quam illi appellant Orcyniam).  
 Greeks by report, which they call Orcynia)

Quæ gens continet se iis sedibus  
 Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem  
 to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc  
 of [for] justice and (of) warlike praise, and now

permanent in eâdem inopiâ, egestate,  
 they remain in the same privation [want], poverty [need],

patientiâ, quâ Germani; utuntur  
 (and) patience, in which [as] the Germans, they use

ëodem victu et cultu corpõris Propinquitas  
 the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitiâ transmarinarum  
 of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam  
 things provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que  
 and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis prœliis ipsi ne se  
 conquered in many battles they do not themselves

quidem<sup>27</sup> comparant virtute cum illis.  
 indeed compare in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ  
 The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est suprâ, patet iter novem dierum  
 has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito Enim potest non finiri aliter,  
 to an active (man) For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur  
 nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et  
 at the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes, and

Rauracorum, que rectâ regione fluminis  
 of the Rauraci, and in a straight direction (along) the river

Danuvî, pertinet ad fines Dacorum et  
 Danube, it extends to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis  
of the Anartes: thence it bends itself to the left in different  
regionibus à flumine, que attingit fines  
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries  
multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque  
of many nations on account of the great extent. Nor  
est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat  
is (there) any one of this (part) of Germany, who may say  
(aut audisse) aut adisse  
(that) (either to have [he had] heard) or to have [had] gone  
ad initium ejus silvæ, quum processerit  
to the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded  
iter sexaginta dierum; aut acceperit ex quo  
a journey of sixty days, or may have heard from what  
lōco oriatur. Constat multa genera  
place it may take its origin. It is certain (that) many kinds  
ferarum nasci in ea, quæ sint non visa in  
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in  
reliquis lōcis; ex quibus quæ maximè differant  
other places: from which (those) that greatly differ  
ab cæteris, et videantur prodenda  
from others, and may seem worthy to be handed down  
memoriæ, sunt hæc.  
to memory, are these.

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, à mediâ  
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid  
fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit  
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows  
excelsius, que magis directum his cornibus,  
higher, and more straight (than) these horns,  
quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami  
which are known to us. From the top of this branches  
diffunduntur latè sicut palmæ. Natura  
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves) The nature  
feminae que maris est eadem, eadem forma  
of the female and male is the same, the same form  
que magnitudo cornuum.  
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.  
 There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et variētas pellum est  
 The shape of these, and the variety of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt  
 very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; quæ sunt multilæ cornibus, et habent  
 a little, and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis quæ articulis; neque  
 legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ  
 do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigere  
 by any accident they may fall down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro  
 themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque  
 beds; they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modò paulùm capiunt quietem;  
 so reclined merely a little they take rest;

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est  
 when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

à venatoribus, quò consueverint recipere  
 by the hunters, where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subrunt omnes eo  
 themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

lōco, à radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut  
 place, at the roots, or they cut the trees so that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.  
 the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Huc quum ex consuetudine reclinauerint se,  
 Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores pondere, atque ipsæ  
 they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt unà.  
 fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui  
 There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo  
 are called the wild ox. These are in size a little  
 infra elephantos, specie et colore et  
 below the elephant, with the appearance and color and  
 figurâ tauri. Forum vis est magna, et  
 form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)  
 velocitas magna; parcant neque homini neque ferâ  
 speed great. they spare neither man nor beast  
 quam conspexerint; hos interficiunt captos  
 that they may have seen; these they kill captured  
 studiose foveis. Adolescentes durant se  
 with much zeal in pits. The youths harden themselves  
 hâc labore; atque exercent hâc genere  
 by this task; and they exercise by this kind  
 venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos  
 of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most  
 ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus  
 from [of] these, obtain great praise. the horns  
 relatis in publicum quæ sint  
 having been brought into public which may be (as)  
 testimonio. Sed ne parvuli quidem excepti  
 evidence. But not the young even (when) taken  
 possunt assuescere ad homines, et  
 [captured] can be accustomed to men. and  
 mansueferi. Amplitudo et figura et species  
 tamed. The size and shape and appearance  
 cornuum differt multum à cornibus nostrorum  
 of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our  
 bovm. Hæc studiosè conquisita,  
 oxen. These having been carefully sought,  
 circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque  
 they enclose (them) from [on] the brims with silver, and  
 utuntur in amplissimis epulis pro  
 use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for  
 poculis.  
 cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compèrit per Ubios  
 Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian



exploratores, Suevos recepissee sese in  
 scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into  
 silvas, veritus inopiam frumenti, (quod, ut  
 the forests, fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as  
 demonstravimus suprà, omnes Germani student  
 we have shown above, all the Germans attend  
 minimè agri culturæ), constituit non progredi  
 very little to agriculture), he resolved not to proceed  
 longius; sed ne tolleretur omnino metum  
 further, but that he might not take away altogether the fear  
 sui reditus barbaris, atque ut tardaret  
 of his return from the barbarians and that he might retard  
 eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu, rescindit  
 their auxiliaries, having led back the army he breaks down  
 ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat  
 the farthest part of the bridge, which was touching  
 ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum  
 the shores of the Ubi, to the length of two hundred  
 pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)  
 feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge  
 constituit turrem quatuor tabularum, que ponit  
 he constructs a tower of four stories, and places  
 præsidium duodecim cohortium causâ tuendi  
 a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending  
 pontis, que firmat eum locum magnis  
 the bridge and strengthens this place with great  
 munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco que præsidio,  
 fortifications He placed over this place and garrison  
 C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, quum  
 C. Volcatius Tullus, a young man he himself, when  
 frumenta inciperent maturescere, profectus ad  
 the corn began to ripen, having set out to  
 bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam  
 the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]  
 silvam, quæ est maxima totius Galliæ, atque  
 forest, which is the largest of all Gaul, and  
 pertinet ab ripis Rheni que finibus  
 extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios. que patet amplius  
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than

quingentis millibus in longitudinem; præmittit  
five hundred miles in length, he sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si  
L. Minucius Basilius, with all the cavalry, if

possit proficere quid celeritate itineris,  
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate temporis; monet ut  
and by the favorableness of the time, he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne  
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat procul ejus  
any intimation [sign] might be made at a distance of his

adventus; dicit sese subsequi confestim.  
coming, he says that he himself to [would] follow speedily.

30. Basilium facit ut imperatum est; itinere  
Basilius does as he was commanded, the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem  
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the opinion

omnium,prehendit multos inopinantes in agris;  
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields.

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,  
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis  
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, quum in  
horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).  
all things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret  
For as it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus  
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quam  
arrival was seen by the men before (that)

afferretur famâ ac nunciis; sic fuit  
it was brought by report and messengers, so it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento, quod  
 (of) great fortune, all the military implements, that  
 habebat circum se erepto, rhedis  
 he was having about him having been seized, his chariots  
 que equis comprehensis, ipsum  
 and horses having been captured, (that) he himself  
 effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo  
 should escape death. But this was effected in this  
 quod ædificio circumdato silvâ  
 (manner) for the house (having been) surrounded by a wood  
 ut domicilia Gallorum ferè sunt, qui causâ  
 as the dwellings of the Gauls generally are, who for the sake  
 vitandi æstûs, plerumque petunt propinquitates  
 of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity  
 silvarum ac fluminum, ejus comites que familiares  
 of woods and rivers, his attendants and friends  
 sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum  
 sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry  
 in angusto loco. His pugnantibus (abl.  
 in a narrow place. (While) these (are) fighting,  
 abs.), quidam ex suis intulit illum in  
 some one from [of] his (men) placed him on  
 equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna  
 a horse, the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune  
 valuit multum, et ad subeundum periculum, et  
 availed much, both for encountering danger, and  
 ad vitandum.  
 for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias  
 Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces  
 judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum<sup>28</sup>  
 on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged  
 proelio; an exclusus tempore, et prohibitus  
 in battle, or he had been cut off by time, and had been  
 fuerit repentino adventu equitum, quum  
 prevented by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when  
 crederet reliquum exercitum subsequi,  
 he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following

est dubium, sed certè nunciis dimissis  
 is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent  
 clàm per agros jussit  
 secretly through the fields [country] he ordered  
 quemque consulère sibi; quorum pars  
 that each one should take care of himself, of whom a part  
 profugit in Arduennam silvam,  
 fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,  
 pars in continentes paludes. Qui  
 a part into the continuous marshes (Those) who  
 fuerunt proximi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt  
 were nearest the Ocean, these hid  
 sese in insulis, quas æstus  
 themselves in the islands, which the tides  
 consuêrunt efficere. Multi egressi ex suis  
 are accustomed to form Many having emigrated from their  
 finibus crediderunt se que omnia  
 territories confided [consigned] themselves and all  
 sua alienissimis. Catuvolcus rex dimidiæ  
 their (property) to entire strangers Catuvolcus king of the half  
 partis Eburonum qui inerat consilium  
 part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel  
 unà cum Ambiorge, jam confectus ætate,  
 together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,  
 quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut  
 since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or  
 fugæ, detestatus Ambiorigem omnibus  
 of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)  
 precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii,  
 imprecations who was the author of this plan [design].  
 exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est  
 killed himself by yew (leaves). (of which (tree) there is  
 magna copïa in Gallia que Germaniâ).  
 a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany)

32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et  
 The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and

numéro Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones  
 the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 oratum "ne ducëret se in numëro  
 to pray "that he would not place them in the number  
 hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium  
 of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all  
 Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse  
 the Germans, who might be on this side of the Rhine to be  
 unam; se cogitasse nihil  
 [was] one [the same], (that) they to have [had] thought nothing  
 de bello, misisse nulla auxilia  
 about war, (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries  
 Ambiorigi." Cæsar, re exploratâ  
 to Ambiorix." Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated  
 quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui  
 by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any  
 Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugâ ut  
 Eburones had come to them from flight that  
 reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,  
 they should be brought back to him. If they did so,  
 negavit se violaturum eorum  
 he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their  
 fines. Tum coplis distributis in  
 territories. Then (his) forces having been distributed into  
 tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum  
 three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions  
 Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est  
 to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is  
 ferè in mediis finibus Eburonum, ubi  
 nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where  
 Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ  
 Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose  
 hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum  
 of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only  
 reliquis rebus, tum quòd munitiones  
 for other things, but also because the fortifications  
 superioris anni manebant integræ, ut  
 of the preceding year were remaining entire. (so) that

sublevaret laborem militum. reliquit quatuor-  
he might relieve the labor of the soldiers; he left the

decimam legionem præsidio impedimentis unam  
fourteenth legion for [as] a guard to the baggage one

ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas,  
of those three, which lately (having been) enrolled,

transduxerat ex Italiâ. Præfecit ei legioni  
he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit  
and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.  
(him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercitu partito, jubet T. Labienum  
The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus ad versum  
to march with three legions in the direction

Oceanum, in eas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.  
of the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numero legionum  
He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum eam regionem,<sup>29</sup> quæ adjacet  
for to be laid [laying] waste this district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis  
the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod  
resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam, que extremas partes  
flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quod audiebat  
of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorigem profectum cum paucis equitibus.  
Ambiorix had gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum  
On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

post septimum diem; ad quam diem sciebat  
after the seventh day; on which day he was knowing

frumentum deberi ei legioni, quæ  
(that) corn to be [was] due to this legion, which

relinquebatur in præsidio. Horatur Labienum que  
 was left in garrison. He exhorts Labienus and  
 Trebonium revertantur ad eam diem, si  
 Trebonius that they should return on this day, if  
 possint facere commodo rei publicæ, ut,  
 they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,  
 concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus  
 counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans  
 hostium exploratis, possint capere  
 of the enemy having been ascertained, they might take [adopt]  
 aliud initium belli.  
 another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus suprâ, nulla certa  
 There was, as we have shown above, no fixed  
 manus, non præsidium, non oppidum, quod  
 body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that  
 defendere se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in  
 could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in  
 omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdita vallis, aut  
 all parts. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or  
 silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat  
 a woody place, or a difficult swamp, was offering  
 aliquam spem præsidii aut salutis, consederat.  
 some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled  
 Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res  
 These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing  
 [condition] requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in  
 was requiring great care not in  
 tuendam summâ (abl.) exercitus (enim nullum  
 protecting the total of the army (for 20  
 periculum, universis, poterat accidere ab  
 danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)  
 perterritis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis  
 terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual  
 militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat  
 soldiers; which thing however in part was appertaining  
 ad salutem exercitus. Nam et cupiditas prædæ  
 to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longiùs, ac silvæ incertis  
was enticing many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itineribus prohibebant confertos  
and hidden paths were preventing (them) collected

adire. Si vellet confici negotium, que  
to advance. If he wished to finish the business, and

interfici stirpem sceleratorum hominum,  
to exterminate a race of infamous men,

plures manus dimittendæ, que milites  
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos  
to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo  
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitûs postulabat, locus ipse erat  
of the Roman army was demanding, the place itself was

præsidio barbaris; neque dederat  
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

audaciâ singulis insidiandi ex occulto, et  
the daring to individuals of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus  
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentia potèrat provideri  
of this nature whatever by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potiùs aliquid omitteretur  
was provided; so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, etsi animi omnium  
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quàm nocere-  
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.  
be injured with any loss of soldiers.

Cæsar dimittit nuncios ad finitimas civitates;  
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad  
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder, for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potiùs vita Gallorum  
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls



periclitetur in silvis, quàm legionariorum;  
might be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

sîmul, ut magnâ multitudine  
(soldiers); at the same time. that a great multitude

circumfusâ, stirps ac nomen civitatis  
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinore. Magnus numerus  
might be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celeriter convenit undique.  
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebatur in omnibus partibus  
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septîmus dîes appetebat,  
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching

ad quem dîem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad  
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,  
the baggage and the legion Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantum  
how much fortune can do in war, and how great

casus affërat. Hostibus dissipatis  
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterritis, ut demonstravimus, erat nulla  
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

mānus, quæ affëret mōdò parvam causam  
body of men, which might create only a slight cause

timōris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad  
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones diripi, atque  
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultrò ad prædam.  
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum,  
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand horse,

qui sunt proximi Rheno, à quibus Tencteros  
they are the nearest to the Rhine. by whom the Teucteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugâ,  
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

quàm magistratus ipsi, hos seditiosâ  
than the magistrates themselves, these by seditious

et imprôbâ oratione detertere multitudîne ne  
and wicked speech (to) deter the multitude lest

confèrent frumentum; quòd dicant  
they may bring together the corn; because they say

(pres.subj.) præstare, si jam possint  
to be [it is] preferable if now they may be able

non obtinere principatum Gallîæ, perferre  
not to obtain the sovereignty of Gaul, to induce

imperîa Gallorum quàm Romanorum; nèque  
the commands of the Gauls than of the Romans; nor

debèant (pres.subj.) dubitare quin, si Romani  
ought they to doubt but that, if the Romans

superavèrint Helvetîos, sint (pres. subj.)  
should overcome the Helvetii, they are

erepturi libertatem Ædûis unâ  
about to snatch away liberty from the Ædui together

cum reliquâ Gallîâ: ab iisdem nostra  
with remaining Gaul: by the same (persons) our

consilia, quæque gerantur (pres. subj.) in castris, (pl.)  
councils, whatsoever are carried on in the camp,

enuntiari hostibus; hos posse non  
to be [are] announced to the enemy; these to be [are] able not

coërceri à se: Quin-etiam, quòd  
to be restrained by himself: Moreover, because

enuntiârit (perf. subj.) rem necessariò Cæsâri,  
he has told the thing necessarily to Cæsar,

sese intelligere cum quanto pericûlo  
himself to understand [that he is aware] with how great danger

fecerit (perf. subj.) id; et ob eam caussam  
he has done it; and for this cause

tacuisse quamdiu potuerit". (perf. subj.)  
to have [he] kept silent as long as he could".

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorîgem fratrem  
Cæsar was perceiving Dumnorix the brother

Divitiâci designari hâc oratione Lisci;  
of Divitiacus to be [was] indicated by this speech of Liscus;

(Hac) spe oblatâ, Germani relinquunt  
(This) hope having been offered. the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti erant;  
in hiding the booty which they had obtained;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem  
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

dūce cujus indicio cognoverant  
(person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.  
these things

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,  
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsaris continuisset milites in  
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summâ diligentîâ, ac passus est ne  
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quemquam calonem quidem egredi extra  
any camp follower even to go beyond

munitionem); septimo die diffidens Cæsarem  
the fortification) on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numero dierum,  
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quod audiebat eum progressum longiûs,  
because he was hearing (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus reditu afferebatur,  
nor was any report of his return brought.

sîmul permotus vocibus eorum, qui  
at the same time moved by the voices of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pænè obsessionem si  
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non liceret egredi ex castris;  
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo  
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milibus,  
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp).

nōvem legionibus oppositis, que maximo  
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus, dispersis ac pænè  
cavalry, the enemy, having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in  
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proximas segètes, inter quas et castra  
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex  
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus erant relictī ægri in castris; ex quibus,  
the legions had been left sick in the camp, of whom

qui, hōc spatio dierum, convalescerant,  
(those) who, in this period of time, had recovered

circiter trecenti, mittuntur sub vexillo unā;  
about three hundred are sent under a standard together

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna  
besides a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,  
force of beasts of burden, that remained in the camp.

sequitur, potestate facta.  
followed (them). permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani  
At this very time and by chance the German

equites interveniunt, quæ protinus eodem illo  
horsemen arrived, and immediately with that same

cursum, quo venerant, conantur irrumperē in  
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanâ portâ; nec sunt visi,  
the camp at the decuman gate, nor were they seen,

silvis objectis ab eâ parte, prius  
a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side], before

quàm appropinquarent castris, usque eò, ut  
(that) they had approached the camp, even so, that

mercatores, qui tenderent sub vallo,  
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

habèrent facultatem recipiendi sibi.  
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes perturbantur novâ  
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustinet  
 condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains  
 primum impetum; hostes circumfunduntur ex  
 the first attack: the enemy are spread out on  
 reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem aditum;  
 the other sides, if they could find some approach:  
 nostri ægre tumentur portas; locus  
 our (men) with difficulty defend the gates the place  
 ipse per se que munitio defendit  
 itself through itself and by the fortification defends  
 reliquos aditus, totis castris trepidatur, atque  
 the other approaches, in all the camp there is alarm. and  
 alius quærit ex alio causam tumultus; neque  
 one inquires of an other the cause of the confusion; neither  
 provident quò signa ferantur, neque in  
 do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into  
 quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronunciat  
 what part each one may assemble. One declares  
 castra jam capta, alius contendit,  
 (that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),  
 exercitu atque imperatore delecto,  
 the army and the commander having been destroyed  
 victores barbaros venisse; plerique fingunt  
 the victorious barbarians (to) have come the greater part form  
 novas religiones sibi ex loco. Que  
 strange superstitions for themselves from the place. And  
 ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et  
 they put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cottæ and  
 Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus  
 Titurius, who had fallen in the same fortress. All  
 perterritis tali timore, opinio  
 (having been) alarmed by such fear, the opinion  
 confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex  
 is confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from  
 captivo nullum præsidium esse intus;  
 the captive (that) no garrison to be [was] within;  
 nituntur perrumpere, que ipsi adhortantur  
 they endeavor to force an entrance. and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex  
 one another, 'est they may let go so great a prize from  
 manibus.  
 their hands.

38. P. Sextius Baculus, qui duxerat primum  
 P. Sextius Baculus, who led the first  
 pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem  
 company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention  
 superioribus præliis, erat relictus æger in præsidio,  
 in former battles, was left sick in the garrison,  
 ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,  
 and had been without food now the fifth day. He,  
 diffusus suæ salutis ac omnium, inermis  
 mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed  
 prodit ex tabernaculo, videt hostes  
 goes out from the tent, he sees (that) the enemy  
 imminere, atque rem esse in  
 to be [were] pressing on, and that the affair to be [was] in  
 summo discrimine; capit arma à proximis,  
 the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,  
 atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus  
 and places himself in the gate. The centurions of this  
 cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;  
 cohort which was on guard follow him;  
 paulisper sustinent prælium unâ; animus  
 for a little while they sustain the battle together; the mind  
 relinquit Sextium<sup>30</sup> gravis vulneribus acceptis;  
 leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;  
 tractus per manus (pl.) ægrè servatur.  
 drawn away by hand with difficulty he is saved.  
 Hoc spatîo interposito, reliqui confirmant  
 This period having been interposed, the others encourage  
 sese tantum, ut audeant consistere  
 one another so much, that they dare take stand  
 in munitionibus, que præbent speciem  
 on the fortifications, and show the appearance  
 defensorum.  
 of defenders.

39. Intērim frumentatione confectâ,  
 In the mean time the foraging having been completed,  
 nostri milītes exaudiunt clamorem, equītes  
 our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen  
 præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto pericūlo  
 hasten on before, they ascertain in what great danger  
 res sit. Verò hic est nulla munitiō,  
 the matter is. But here there is no fortification,  
 quæ recipiat perterritos. Modò conscripti  
 which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled  
 atque imperiti militaris usûs convertunt ora ad  
 and unskilled in military practice turn faces to  
 tribunum milītum que centuriones; expectant  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and centurions; they await  
 quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam  
 what may be commanded by them. No one is so  
 fortis, quin perturbētur novitate rei.  
 brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the novelty of the affair  
 Barbāri, conspicati signa præcul,  
 [condition]. The barbarians, having seen the standard at a distance.  
 desistunt ab oppugnatione; primò credunt  
 desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)  
 legiones redisse, quas cognovērant ex  
 the legions had returned, which they had learned from  
 captivis discessisse longiùs; postea, paucitate  
 the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness  
 despectâ, faciunt impetum, ex  
 having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]  
 omnibus partibus.  
 all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumulum  
 The camp followers run to the nearest eminence  
 celeriter dejecti hinc, coniciunt se  
 having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves  
 in signa que manipulos; èd magis  
 among the standards and companies; so much the more  
 perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent  
 they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunēo                      facto                      celeriter  
 (that)    a wedge    having been formed    they may    quickly  
 perrumpant, quoniam    castra    sint    tam    propinqua,  
 break through,    and as    the camp    is    so    near,  
 etsi    aliqua    pars    circumventa    ceciderit,  
 although    some    part    having been surrounded    might fall,  
 at    confidunt                      reliquos    posse  
 still    they trust    (that)    the remainder    to be able [can]  
 servari.    Alii    ut    consistant    in  
 (to) be saved.    Others (advise)    that    they take stand    on  
 jigo,    atque    omnes    ferant    eundem    casum.  
 the hill-top.    and    (that)    all    undergo the same    fate.  
 Veteres    milites,    quos    documus  
 The veteran    soldiers,    whom [who]    we have mentioned  
 perfectos    unā    sub    vexillo    non  
 (to have) marched out    together    under    a standard    do not  
 probant hoc. Itaque    cohortati    inter    se,  
 approve    this    Therefore    having encouraged    one    another,  
 C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui erat præpositus  
 C. Trebonius,    a Roman knight, who had been placed over  
 eis,    duce,    perrumpunt    per    medios<sup>31</sup>  
 them, being their commander,    they break    through the middle  
 hostes    que    omnes    ad    unum    perveniunt  
 [central]enemies    and    all    to    one [a man]    arrive  
 incolumnes    in    castra (acc.).    Calones    que  
 safe    in    the camp.    The camp followers    and  
 equites    subsecuti    hos    eodem    impetu,  
 the horsemen    having followed    these    with the same    dash,  
 servantur virtute    militum.    At ii, qui  
 are saved    by the bravery    of the soldiers.    But    those, who  
 constiterant    in    jugo,    etiam    nunc    nullo  
 had taken stand    on    the hill-top,    even    now    no  
 usu    militaris    rei (sing.)    percepto,  
 experience    of military    affairs    having been acquired,  
 neque permanere in eo consilio, quod proba-  
 neither    persisted    in    this    design,    which    they have  
 verant, ut    defenderent    se    superiore  
 approved,    that    they should defend    themselves    in the higher



lōco, neque potuerunt imitari ĕam vim que  
position, nor were able to imitate this vigor and

celeritatem, quam vidĕrant profuisse  
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in  
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserant in iniquū lōcum.  
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant  
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,  
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causā virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus  
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittĕrent laudem militaris  
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rĕi (sing.) partam antĕ conciderunt pugnantes  
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissimĕ. Pars militum, hostibus  
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,  
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolūmis, prāter spem,  
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation,

pars circumventa à barbāris periit.  
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-  
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratā, quòd videbant nostros  
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt  
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum ĕâ prædā quam  
themselves beyond the Rhine, with this booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit  
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut  
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

ẽa nocte, quum C. Volusenus venisset ad  
 this night, when C. Volusenus had come to  
 castra, missus cum equitatu, non  
 the camp. having been sent with the cavalry he could not  
 faceret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum  
 make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with  
 exercitu incolũmi. Timor præoccupaverat animos  
 the army safe Fear had preoccupied the souls  
 omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatã,  
 of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced  
 dicerent, equitatum tantum recepisse se  
 they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned  
 ex fugã, omnibus copiis deletis,  
 from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed.  
 que contendèrent Germanos ne fuisse  
 and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been  
 oppugnatu<sup>32</sup> castra exercitu  
 about to assault [had not assaulted] the camp (if) the army  
 incolũmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus  
 being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival  
 sustulit.  
 removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventũs  
 He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty  
 belli, questus unum quodd cohortes essent  
 of war, complained (of) one (thing) that the cohorts had been  
 emissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit  
 sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out  
 (that) locum ne minimum quidem debuisse  
 the place not the least even ought  
 relinqui casui, fortuna potuisse  
 to be left to chance, fortune might have been able [done]  
 multum in repentino advetu hostium; etiam multo  
 much by the sudden arrival of the enemy; also much  
 ampliũs, quodd avertisset barbãros ab  
 more, because she had turned away the barbarians from  
 vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium  
 the rampart itself and the gates of the camp Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maximè admirandum,  
which things it seemed most to be wondered at.

quòd Germani, qui transiērant Rhenum ēo  
that the Germans. who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,  
design that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix.

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt  
having been led to the camp of the Romans brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium  
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43 Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos<sup>33</sup>  
Cæsar having again departed to harass

hostes; magno numēro coacto ex  
the enemy a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes  
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,  
parts All the villages and all the buildings

quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; præda  
which any one might see were set on fire spoils

agebatur ex omnibus locis; frumenta non  
were driven off from all places the corn not

solùm consumebantur (pl) à tantâ multitudine  
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum; sed etiam procubuērant  
of cattle and men. but also had fallen down

tempore anni atque imbribus; ut si qui  
by the time of year and the rains so that if any

etiam in præsentia occultassent se, tamen  
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves yet

videretur his perendum<sup>34</sup> inopiâ omnium  
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum exercitu deducto Ac sæpe  
things the army having been withdrawn And often

ventum est in eum locum, equitatu diviso  
it came to this pass. the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captiv.  
so much into [in] all directions. that the prisoners

contenderunt      Ambiorigem      non      modò visum  
 declared      (that)      Ambiorix      was not      only      seen  
 ab se in fugâ, sed etiam      nec abisse  
 by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone  
 planè ex conspectu;      ut spe consequendi  
 clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking  
                  illatâ,      atque infinito labore  
 (him) having been raised, and an immense labor  
                  suscepto,      qui putarent      se  
 having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they  
                  ituros summam gratiam à Cæsare, pænè  
 would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly  
 vincèrent naturam studio, que semper paulum  
 conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always a little  
 videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;  
 seemed to be wanting to complete success;  
 atque ille eripèret se latebris ac silvis  
 but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods  
 aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu peteret alias  
 or forests, and concealed by night he sought other  
 regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio  
 regions, and places, with no greater guard  
 equitum quàm quatuor, quibus solis audebat  
 of horsemen than four, to whom alone he was daring  
 committere suam vitam.  
 to commit his life.

44. Regionibus      vastatis      tali      modo,  
 The country      having been laid waste      in such      manner.

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum  
 Cæsar marches back the army with the loss of two  
 cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilio  
 cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

                 indicto      in eum locum Galliæ, instituit  
 having been convoked in this part of Gaul, he resolved

habere quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum  
 to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiâ pronun-  
 and Carnutes; and a very severe sentence having been

ciatâ            de    Accone,    qui    fuerat    princeps  
pronounced    on    Acco,    who    had been    the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit            supplicium,    more  
of this    counsel,    he took [inflicted]    punishment,    after the custom

majorum.<sup>35</sup> Nonnulli veriti    judicium    profugerunt,  
of our ancestors,    Some    afraid of    a trial            fled.

quum    interdixisset    aquâ    atque    igni    quibus,  
when    he had interdicted    water    and    fire    to them;

collocavit in    hibernis    duas legiones ad    fines  
he stationed in    winter quarters    two    legions    on the frontiers

Trevirorum,    duas    in    Lingonibus,    reliquas  
of the Treviri,    two    among    the Lingones,    the remaining

sex Agendici in    finibus    Senonum,    que  
six    at Agendicum    in    the territories    of the Senones    and

frumento            proviso            exercitûi,    ut  
corn            having been provided            for the army.    as

instituërat,    profectus est in    Italiam    ad    agendos  
he had resolved    he departed    for    Italy    to    hold

conventus.  
the assemblies.

## SEVENTH BOOK

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Cæsar in the city. Cæsar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Cæsar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Cæsar. In spite of Cæsar's efforts the Ædni join the revolt. Cæsar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Cæsar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Cæsar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Cæsar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Cæsar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Cæsar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliâ	quietâ,	Cæsar	ut	constituërat
Gaul	being at peace,	Cæsar	as	he had resolved
proficiscitur	in Italiam	ad agendos	conventus;	
proceeded	to Italy	to hold	the assemblies;	
ubi	cognoscit	de cæde	P. Clodii,	que
there	he learned	of the murder	of P. Clodius,	and
factus	certior	de consulto	Senatûs,	
having been made	acquainted	with the decree	of the Senate,	

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,  
that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,

instituit habere delectum totâ provinciâ. Eæ  
he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.  
things quickly are spread into Transalpine Gaul.

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,  
The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscere,) Cæsarem  
(what the case seemed to demand,) (that) Cæsar

retineri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse  
was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi  
come to the army in such dissensions Incited

hâc occasione, qui jam antè dolèrent  
by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,  
(that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilia de bello liberiùs  
begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audaciùs. Principes Galliaë,  
and more daringly The principal men of Gaul,

conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus  
councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte  
and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse  
of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidere ad ipsos; miserantur communem  
occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliæ; deprecantur omnibus pollicitationibus  
lot of Gaul; they demand by all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,  
and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem  
and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

pericûlo sui capitis.<sup>1</sup> Dicunt in primis  
at the peril of their lives. They say especially

ut rationem habendam ejus, ut  
that care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that

Cæsar intercludatur ab exercitu, priusquàm eorum  
Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their

clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,  
secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy.

quòd neque legiones, imperatore absente,  
because neither the legions, the commander being absent,

audeant egrèdi ex hibernis, neque possit  
dare to come forth from winter quarters, nor could

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.  
the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.

Postremò præstare interfici in acie,  
Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,

quàm non recuperare vetèrem gloriàm  
than not to recover (their) ancient glory

belli que libertatem quam accepèrint à  
of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from

majoribus.  
the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitis, Carnutes profitentur  
These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim

se recusare nullum pericùlum causâ  
(that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake

commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes  
of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et  
from [of] all about to [would] make war; and

quoniam in præsentia possent non cavere  
since at the present (time) they could not give security

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,  
among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged,

petunt ut sanciat jurejurando ac fide,  
they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo  
the military standards having been stacked together, (by which

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur  
usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed]



ne                    initio                    belli                    facto,  
 lest            the commencement            of the war            having been made,  
           deserantur            à    reliquis.    Tunc,    Carnutibus  
 they might be deserted    by    the others.    Then,    the Carnutes  
           collaudatis,            jurejurando            dato            ab  
 having been applauded,            the oath            having been given            by  
 omnibus    qui    adërant,            tempore    ejus  
           all    who    were present,    (and)    the time    of [for] this  
           rei            constituto,            disceditur<sup>2</sup>    ab  
 movement            having been determined,            they departed            from  
 concilio.  
 the council.

3. Ubi    Æa    dies venit,    Carnutes,    Cotuato et  
           When    this    day    came,    the Carnutes.    Cotuatus and  
 Conconnetodumno    ducibus,    desperatis    hominibus,  
           Conconnetodumnus    as leaders,    desperate            men,  
           concurrunt            Cenabum,            signo  
 assembled hastily            at Cenabum [Orleans].            the signal  
           dato,            que    interficiunt    Romanos    cives,  
 having been given,            and            kill            the Roman            citizens,  
 qui constitërant    ibi    causâ    negotiandi,    in  
 who    had settled    there    for the purpose    of trading,    among  
           iis C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,  
 them C. Fufius Cita,    an honorable    Roman    knight,  
 qui præerat    frumentariæ rei,    jussu    Cæsaris;  
 who    presided over    the grain    supply,    by order    of Cæsar;  
 que    diripiunt    eorum bona.    Fama    celeriter  
 and    they plunder    their    property.    The report    quickly  
 perfertur    ad omnes civitates Galliæ.    Nam    ubi  
 is spread    to    all    the states    of Gaul.    For    when  
           major atque illustrior res incidit,    significant  
 a greater    and    more notable    affair    occurs,    they indicate  
           per    agros    que    regiones    clamore;    alii  
 (it) through    the lands    and    territories    by a shout;    some  
 deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,  
 in succession    receive    this,    and    transmit (it) to the nearest  
 ut    tunc    accidit.    Nam    quæ    gesta essent  
 as    then    happened.    For    what (things)    had been done

Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),<sup>3</sup>  
 at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,  
 audita sunt in finibus Arvernorum ante  
 are heard in the territories of the Arverni before  
 primam vigiliam<sup>4</sup> confectam, quod est spatium  
 the first watch is completed, which is a space  
 [distance] circiter centum et sexaginta millium  
 of about a hundred and sixty thousand  
 passuum.  
 paces.

4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,  
 There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,  
 filius Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiæ,  
 the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,  
 (cujus pater obtinuërat principatum totius Galliæ,  
 (whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,  
 et ob eam causam, quod appetebat regnum  
 and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign  
 interfectus erat ab civitate), suis clientibus  
 power was put to death by the state), his clients  
 convocatis facile incendit eos. Ejus  
 having been called together he easily inflamed them. His  
 consilio cognito concurritur<sup>5</sup> ad arma.  
 design having been known they rush to arms.  
 Prohibetur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que  
 He was prevented by Gobannitio his uncle, and  
 reliquis principibus, qui non existimabant  
 the other chiefs, who were not thinking (that)  
 hanc fortunam temptandam, expellitur  
 this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted, he is expelled  
 ex oppido Gergoviâ. Tamen non  
 from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not  
 desistit, atque in agris habet delectum  
 desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy  
 egentium ac perditorum. Hâc manu coac-  
 of needy and desperate (men). This band having  
 to, quoscunque ex civitate adit  
 been collected, whomever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut  
 he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that  
 capiant arma causâ communis libertatis;  
 they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;  
 que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex  
 and great forces having been collected, he expels from  
 civitate suos adversarios à quibus ejectus erat  
 the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted  
 paulò antè. Appellatur rex ab suis;  
 a little before. He is called king by his (followers);  
 dimittit legationes quoquoersùs; obtestatur ut  
 he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that  
 manèant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi  
 they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself  
 Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,  
 the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,  
 Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,  
 the Aulerci. the Lemovici, the Andes. and all the rest,  
 qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur  
 who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred  
 ad eum consensu omnium. Quâ potestate  
 on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power  
 oblatâ, impërat obsides omnibus iis  
 having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these  
 civitatibus: jubet certum numërum militum  
 states: he orders a fixed number of soldiers  
 celeritèr adduci ad se; constituit quantum  
 speedily brought to him; he decrees what number  
 armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que  
 of arms each state should prepare at home, and  
 ante quod tempus; in primis studet equitatui.  
 before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.  
 Summæ diligentiaë addit summam severitatem  
 To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity  
 imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit  
 of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces  
 dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commisso  
 the hesitating. For, a greater crime having been committed.

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;  
 he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviore causâ, auribus desectis, aut  
 for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singulis oculis effosis, remittit  
 a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et  
 home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterrêant alios magnitudinæ poenæ.  
 may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercitu coacto celeriter his  
 An army having been assembled quickly by these

suppliciis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem  
 punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in  
 of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.  
 the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad  
 On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum  
 the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius  
 aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædûi de consilio  
 to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad  
 of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatus que peditatus  
 the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui quum venissent ad flumen  
 to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Ædûis,  
 Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi  
 having delayed a few days there, nor having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renunciant  
 to cross the river, they return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam  
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus<sup>6</sup> cognoverint  
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent  
this plan to have [had] been, that if they crossed

flumen, ex unâ parte ipsi, alterâ  
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges] on the other

Arverni circumsisterent se. Ne fecerint  
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eâ causâ, quam pronuntiârunt  
this from [for] this reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiâ, quod nihil  
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur esse ponendum  
is evident to us, it does not seem (best) to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim  
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernīs.  
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nunciatis Cæsari, in Italiam,  
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

quum jam ille intelligeret urbanas res  
when already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute<sup>7</sup>  
[had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.  
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eò afficiebatur magnâ  
When he had arrived there he was affected with the great

difficultate, quâ ratione posset pervenire  
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he might reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcesseret legiones in  
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicatura  
the province, he was understanding (that) they about to [must] fight

prælio in itinere, se absente; si ipse  
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendēret ad exercitum, videbat, suam  
 should hasten to the army, it was seeming (that) his  
 salutem rectè committi ne his,  
 safety properly to [could] be committed not to those,  
 quidem qui èo tempore viderentur  
 even who at this time were appearing (to be)  
 pacati.  
 peaceable.

7. Intērim Lucterius Cadurcus missus  
 In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent  
 in Rutenos conciliat eam civitatem Arvernīs.  
 to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arverni.

Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit  
 Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali, he receives  
 obsides ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-  
 hostages from each one: and a large band having been

actā, contendit facere eruptionem in Provinciam  
 collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province

versus Narbonem. Quā re nunciatā,  
 toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,

Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus  
 Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all

consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.  
 (other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.

Quum venisset eò, confirmat timentes, constituit  
 When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places

præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis  
 garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci

Arecomici, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ  
 Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which

loca erant finitima hostibus; jubet partem copiarum  
 places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces

ex Provinciâ que supplementum, quod adduxerat  
 from the province and the recruits, which he had brought

ex Italiâ convenire in Helvios qui contingunt  
 from Italy to assemble among the Helvi who border on

fines Arvernorum.  
 the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterius jam  
 These things having been arranged, Lucterius now  
 represso et remoto, quòd putabat  
 having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)  
 periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-  
 dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]  
 ficiscitur in Helvîos. Etsi mons Cebenna,  
 marches into the Helvii Although mount Cevennes,  
 qui discludit Arvernos ab Helvîis impediēbat  
 which separates the Arverni from the Helvii was barring  
 iter altissimâ nive durissîmo tempore  
 the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]  
 anni; tamen nive sex pēdum in altitudinem  
 of the year: however the snow six feet in height [depth]  
 discussâ, atque vîis ita patefactis,  
 having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,  
 pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo  
 he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost  
 labore militum. Quibus oppressis,  
 labor of his soldiers, Who [They] (having been) astounded,  
 inopinantibus, quòd existimabant se  
 taken unawares, because they were thinking (that they) themselves  
 munitos Cebennâ ut muro, ac ão  
 (were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this  
 tempore anni semitæ unquam patuerant  
 season of the year the paths never had lain open  
 homini ne singulari quidem, impērat  
 to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands  
 equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissimè  
 the cavalry, that they should roam as far  
 possent, et infērant quàm maximum  
 as they could, and should occasion the very greatest  
 terrorem hostibus. Hæc celerit̃er perferuntur  
 fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced  
 ad Vercingetorigem famâ ac nunciis; quem  
 to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom  
 omnes Arverni perterriti circumsistunt atque  
 all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu  
 entreat that he look out for their property, nor  
 patiat<sup>ur</sup> se diripi ab hostibus,  
 suffer themselves to be plundered by the enemy  
 præsertim quum videat omne bellum trans-  
 especially when he sees (that) all the war was trans-  
 latum ad se. Percibus quorum<sup>8</sup> per-  
 ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom having been  
 motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus  
 stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges  
 versus in Arvernos.  
 towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in his locis  
 But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places  
 quod<sup>9</sup> præceperat opinione, hæc  
 because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these  
 ventura usu de Vercingetorige,  
 (things) would come in use [fact] regarding Vercingetorix,  
 discedit ab exercitu per causam cogendi  
 he departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising  
 supplementi que equitatus; præfecit Brutum,  
 recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,  
 adolescentem, his copiis; monet hunc, ut  
 a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that  
 equites pervagentur quam latissimè in  
 the cavalry should range about as far as possible in  
 omnes partes, se daturum operam  
 all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care  
 absit ab castris ne longius  
 (that) he may be absent from the camp no longer (than)  
 triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervenit  
 three days. These things having been arranged, he arrived  
 Viennem maximis itineribus quam potest,  
 at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he was able,  
 suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentum  
 his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh  
 equitatum, quem præmiserat è multis  
 [newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many



diebus antè itinère intermisso neque  
days before the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno contendit per fines  
by day nor by night he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ubi duæ legiones  
of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de  
were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suâ salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,  
his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Quum pervenisset eò mittit  
(it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum  
to the other legions, and gathers all into one

locum, prius quam possit nunciari  
place, before (that) it was possible [could] (to) be announced

Arvernīs de ejus adventu. Hæc re  
to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitâ, Vercingetorix rursus reducit  
having been known, Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercitum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus  
army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos  
to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prælio, Cæsar collocaverat  
conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuêrat Æduis; instituit oppugnare.  
there, and had assigned to the Ædui; he resolved to assault (it),

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem  
This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilium,<sup>10</sup> si contin-  
to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan, if he should

eret legiones in uno loco reliquam partem  
keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,  
of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficêret, quòd videretur  
all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in eo  
no protection about to [could] be placed in him

amicis; sin educeret maturiùs ex  
for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from

hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariâ,  
winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,

subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare  
transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better

tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quàm tantâ  
however to endure all difficulties, than so great

contumeliâ acceptâ, alienare voluntates  
an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will

omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos  
of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui

de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,  
about transporting provisions he sends before to the Boii,

qui doceant de sũo adventu, que  
(those) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and

hortentur ut maneat in fide, atque  
he exhorts (them) that they remain in alliance, and

sustineant impetum hostium magno anĩmo.  
resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].

Dũabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius  
Two legions, and the baggage of the entire

exercitũs relictis, Agendici, proficiscitur  
army having been left, at Agendicum [Sens], he marches

ad Boios.  
to the Boii.

11. Quum altẽro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum  
When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, ne relinqueret quem  
[Beauns] a town of the Senones, lest he might leave any

hostem post se, instituit oppugnare,  
enemy behind him, he resolved to attack (it), (and)

quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariâ; que  
that he might use more easily the grain supply; and

bidũo circumvallavit id, tertio die legatis  
in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppido de deditione,  
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,  
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,  
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficeret ea. Ipse  
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things. He himself

proficiscitur, ut faceret iter quam primum  
sets out, that he may make the march as soon as possible

Cenabum Carnutum; qui, nuncio de  
to Cenabum of the Carnutes; who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primum  
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, comparabant praesidium causâ  
having been brought, were preparing a garrison for the purpose

tuendi Cenabi, quod mitterent eò quum  
of defending Cenabum, which they might send there as

existimarent eam rem ire ductum  
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longius. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris  
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppidum, exclusus  
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempore diei, differt oppugnationem in  
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

postĕrum; imperat militibus quæque  
the next (day); he demands from the soldiers whatever

sint usui ad eam rem; et quod pons  
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

fluminis Ligëris continebat oppidum Cenabum;  
of the river Loire was joining the town (of) Cenabum;

veritus ne profugerent ex oppido noctu,  
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet duas legiones excubare in armis.  
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses egressi ex oppido silentio  
The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence

paulò ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire  
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quâ re nunciatâ per  
the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis  
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jussêrat esse  
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potitur oppido (abl.); perpaucis<sup>11</sup>  
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numëro hostium desideratis quin  
from [of] the number of the enemy having escaped but that

cuncti caperentur, quòd angustię (pl.) pontis  
the whole were taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.  
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Diripit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam  
He pillages and burns the town, he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercitum Ligerim, atque  
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervenit in fines Biturigium.  
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu  
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsar, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur  
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviâm Cæsari. Ille instituêrat oppugnare  
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum  
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viam. Ex quo<sup>12</sup> oppido quum legati  
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad eum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,  
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

que consuleret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficêret  
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quâ pleraque  
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which the most

erat consecutus, jubet arma proferri  
 had been effected, he orders the arms to be brought forth  
 equos produci, obsides dari. Parte  
 the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part  
 obsidum jam transditâ, quum reli-  
 of the hostages now having been surrendered, while the other  
 qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis  
 things were being executed, the centurions and a few  
 militum intromissis, qui conquirerent  
 of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect  
 arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium est  
 the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy was  
 visus procul, qui antecesserat agmen  
 seen at a distance, which had proceeded the army  
 Vercingetorigis; quem<sup>13</sup> atque simul oppidani  
 of Vercingetorigis; which as soon as the townsmen  
 conspexerunt, atque venerunt in spem auxilii  
 had seen, and had come to the hope of aid,  
 clamore sublato cœperunt capere arma,  
 a shout having been raised they began to take arms,  
 claudere portas, complere murum. Centuriones  
 to shut the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The Centurions  
 in oppido, quum intellexissent ex significatione  
 in the town, when they had understood from the signals  
 Gallorum aliquid novi consilii iniri ab  
 of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plans was formed by  
 his, gladiis districtis occupaverunt  
 them, their swords having been drawn they took possession of  
 portas, que receperunt omnes suos incolûmes.  
 the gates, and received all their (men) safe.  
 13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,  
 Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,  
 que committit equestre prælium. Suis jam  
 and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now  
 laborantibus submittit circiter quadringentos  
 hard pressed he sends about four hundred  
 Germanos equites, quos ab initio instit-  
 German horsemen, whom from the beginning he had

uērat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt  
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinere eorum impētum; atque conjecti  
not sustain their attack; and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis  
into flight, betook themselves to the army, many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani  
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen

rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos  
again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those

comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant  
(having been) arrested by whose means they were thinking

plebem concitatam, que dederunt sese  
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar  
to him. Which things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppidum Avaricum, quod  
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus  
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturigum, atque fertilissimâ regione agri,  
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country,

quòd eo oppido recepto, confidebat  
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum  
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.  
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis  
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-  
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis convocat suos ad concilium; docet  
received calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

“bellum gerendum esse longè aliâ  
(that) “the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei  
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani  
 it must be attended by all means, that the Romans  
 prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu;  
 should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that)  
 id esse facile, quòd ipsi abundant equitatu,  
 this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,  
 et quòd sublevèntur tempore anni;  
 and because they are assisted by the season of the year;  
 pabulum posse non secari; hostes  
 (that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy  
 dispersos necessariò petere ex ædificiis;  
 dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings;  
 omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab  
 (that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by  
 equitibus. Præterea causâ salutis commoda  
 the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages  
 familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda;  
 of private affairs to [must] be disregarded, (that)  
 oportere vicis atque ædificia incen-  
 to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be  
 di, hoc est, spatio à Boiâ quoquoversus,  
 burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,  
 quòd videantur posse adire causâ  
 where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose  
 pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetere copiam  
 of foraging. Of these things there is at hand an abundance  
 ipsis, quòd, in quorum finibus bellum  
 for themselves, because, in whose territories war  
 geratur, eorum opibus sublevantur;  
 may be waged, by their means they would be assisted; (that)  
 Romanos aut non laturos<sup>14</sup> inopiam,  
 the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,  
 aut progressuros longius à  
 or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from  
 castris cum magno pericùlo; neque inter-  
 the camp with great danger; nor to be [was it] any  
 esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exuant  
 difference. if they kill them or strip away

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit  
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportere  
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab  
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni pericûlo munitione et naturâ loci;  
all danger by fortifications and by the nature of the place;

neui sint suis receptacula ad  
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis  
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam commeatûs que prædam.  
for taking away an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debere(inf.)  
If these (things) seemed severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multo gravius  
'to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

libros conjuges abstrahi in  
(their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ  
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidere victis.  
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hæc sententiâ probatâ consensu  
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum  
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.  
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ  
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen  
although all were bearing with great grief, yet

proponerebant sibi hoc solaci,  
they were placing before themselves this (as) a consolation.

confidebant quodd se, victoriâ prope  
they were trusting that they, the victory being nearly



exploratâ, celerîter recuperaturos amissa.  
 assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarico,  
 It was deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi  
 (whether) it was pleasing, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt  
 an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt  
 or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fell

ad pedes omnibus Gallis,  
 at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (that)  
 ne cogereantur succendere suis  
 they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem propè totius Galliæ,  
 hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;  
 which was both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state;

dicunt se defensuros facile  
 they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturâ loci, quòd circumdata propè  
 by the nature of the place, because (it was) surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude; habeat  
 on all sides by the river and by a marsh; (that) it had

unum et perangustum aditum. Venia  
 one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primò dissuadente,  
 is given to those petitioning, Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et  
 afterwards conceding both because of their entreaties and

misericiordiâ volgi. Idonei defensores  
 because of compassion to [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppido.  
 are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus  
 Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum  
 marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longè ab Avarico quindécim  
 by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passuum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos  
thousand paces There he was learning by faithful

exploratores in singula tempora (pl.) diei quæ  
scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things

agerentur (pl.) ad Avaricum; et imperabat  
were done at Avaricum, and he was commanding

quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras  
what he wished to be done; he watched all our

pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum  
foragings and corn-raids and when

necessario procederent longius, adoriebatur  
they had necessarily proceeded rather far, he was attacking

dispensos, que afficiebat magno incommodo  
(them) dispersed and was inflicting great injury,

(dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris  
although (this) was obviated by our (men)

quantum poterat provideri ratione, ut  
as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight that

ireretur (pass. sing.)<sup>15</sup> incertis temporibus que  
they should go at uncertain times and

diversis itineribus.  
by different routes

17. Castris positis ad eam partem  
The camp having been pitched at this part

oppidi, quæ intermissa à flumine et  
of the town, which having been left by the river and

palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum  
marsh, as we have said above, was having a narrow

aditum, Cæsar cœpit apparare aggerem, agere  
approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move

vinæas, constituere duas turres; nam  
the shelters. (and) to construct two towers, for

natura loci prohibebat circumvallare.  
the nature of the place was preventing to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de  
He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about

frumentaria re; alteri quorum, quod agebant  
the corn supply; the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; alteri non  
with no zeal. were assisting not much; the others not

magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et  
with great means because the state was small and

infirmi, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.  
weak they consumed quickly what they had.

Exercitu affecto summâ difficultate  
The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentarie rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indigentia  
of provisions. by the poverty of the Boii. by the negligence

Æduorum, incendiis ædificiorum, usque  
of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo<sup>16</sup> ut milites caruerint frumento  
to this [so] that the soldiers wanted corn (for)

complures dies, et pecore adacto è  
many days, and cattle having been driven from

longinquiorebus vicis, sustentarent extremam  
the more distant villages, they satisfied the extreme

famem; tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis  
hunger, yet not a word was heard from them

indigna maiestate Romani populi et  
unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam quum Cæsar  
former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singulas legiones in opere, et diceret  
addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent  
(that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

ioptiam acerbius; universi petebant ab  
the want too severely; all to a man were begging from [of]

eo ne faceret id; "se sic  
him that he would not do this; "they themselves so

meruisse complures annos, illo imperante,  
to have [had] served very many years. he commanding,

ut acciperent nullam ignominiam nunquam  
that they should suffer no dishonor never

discederent, re infectâ; se  
had they withdrawn, the thing (having been) unaccomplished; they

laturos hoc loco ignominia, si  
about to [would] bear this (as) an occasion of dishonor, if

relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-  
they should abandon the siege commenced. to be [it

stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quàm  
was] preferable to endure all hardships, than (that)

non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui  
they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who

interissent perfidiâ Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc  
had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These

eadem mandabant centurionibus que  
same (things) they were consigning to the centurions and

tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur  
tribunes, that through them they might be communicated

ad Cæsarem.  
to Cæsar.

18. Quum turres jam appropinquassent muro,  
When the towers had already approached the wall,

Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,  
Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,

pabulo consumpto, movisse  
the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)

castra propius Avaricum, atque ipsum, cum  
camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he, with

equitatu que expeditis, qui consuêssent  
the cavalry and the light armed, who were accustomed

proeliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum  
to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambushes

profectum eò, quò arbitrabatur  
to have [had] marched thither, where he was thinking (that)

nostros venturos pabulum postero  
our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following

die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus  
day. Which [These] things having been known having set out

silentio mediâ nocte pervenit ad castra hostium  
in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy

manè. Illi, adventu Cæsar's celeriter  
early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdiderunt  
having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sua impedimenta in arctiores silvas,  
the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxerunt omnes copias in edito  
(and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto loco. Quare nunciata,  
and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celeriter jussit sarcinas conferri,  
Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.  
(and) the arms to be got ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infimo.  
There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficilis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc  
A difficult and impassable swamp was surrounding this

ex ferè omnibus partibus, non latior  
on nearly all sides, not wider than

quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus  
fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,  
having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves

fiducia loci; que distributi generatim  
in confidence of the place; and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada  
according to their states, they were holding all the shallow:

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic  
and passes of this swamp by trusty guards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur  
prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpere eam paludem, premerent,  
to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore loco, hæsitantes; ut  
from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viderent propinquitatem loci,  
those who should see the nearness of the position

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum  
would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicērent  
almost on equal terms; (but) those who perceived

iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscērent  
the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)

sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar  
they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar

edocet milites indignantes, quòd hostes  
shows the soldiers indignant, because the enemy

possent ferre sūm conspectum, tantulo spatio  
could endure their sight, so small a space

interjecto, et exposcentes signum  
(having been) interposed, and earnestly demanding the signal

prælii, quanto detrimento, et morte  
of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death

quot fortium virorum sit necesse  
of how many brave men it would be necessary

constare victoriam; quos<sup>17</sup> quum vidēret sic  
to assure the victory; whom since he saw so

paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum pericūlum  
prepared in mind, that they refused no danger

pro sūa laude, se debere condemnari summæ  
for his glory, he ought to be condemned for the greatest

iniquitatis, nisi habēat eorum vitam cariorem  
injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer

sūa salute. Consolatus milites sic,  
than his safety Having consoled the soldiers thus,

reducit in castra eodem diē; instituit  
he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook

administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad  
to perform the other things, which were belonging to

oppugnationem oppidi.  
the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, quum redisset ad suos  
Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus prodicionis, quòd movisset castra  
was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp

propiùs Romanos, quòd discessisset cum omni  
nearer to the Romans, because he had departed with all

equitatu; quòd relinquisset tantas copias sine  
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without

imperio; quòd ejus discessu Romani venissent  
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come

tantâ opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia  
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all

hæc potuisse non accidere fortuito, aut  
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or

sine consilio; illum malle<sup>18</sup> habere regnum  
without design; (that) he to prefer to have the sovereignty

Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quam ipsorum  
of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their

beneficio Accusatus tali modo, respondit  
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied

ad hæc "Quod movisset castra, factum  
to these (things) "That he had moved the camp, it was done

inopiâ pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus, quòd  
by want of forage, they themselves even urging, that

accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum  
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced

opportunitate loci, qui defenderet, se ipsum  
by the advantage of the place, which would protect, its own self

munitione; verò opëram equitum  
by the defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen

debuisset (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,  
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,

et fuisse utilem illic, quòd  
and they to have been [were] useful there, where

profecti sint; se consultò discedentem  
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing

tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne  
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest

is impelleretur ad dimicandum studio multi-  
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the

tudinis; cui rei, videret omnes studere,  
multitude; to which thing, it seemed all to be [was] eager,

propter mollietiem<sup>19</sup> animi, quòd possent  
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutiùs ferre laborem. Si Romani  
 no longer endure labor. If the Romans  
 intervenerint casu gratiam habendam  
 had come up by chance, that, thanks must be given  
 fortunæ, si vocati indicio alicujus, huic,<sup>20</sup>  
 to fortune, if invited by the information of any one to him,  
 quòd et potuérint cognoscere eorum paucitatem  
 because they could both (to) perceive their small number  
 ex superiore loco, et despiciere  
 from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise  
 virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter  
 the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely  
 recepérunt se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)  
 had betaken themselves into camp. He desires  
 nullum imperium à Cæsare per proditionem,  
 no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,  
 quòd posset habere victoriâ, quæ esset  
 because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was  
 jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin  
 now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but  
 etiam remittere ipsis, si videantur tribuere  
 even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer  
 honorem sibi magis, quàm accipere (inf.)  
 honor on him rather, than (that) they had received  
 salutem ab se." Inquit, "ut intelligatis  
 safety from himself." He said, "in order that you may know  
 hæc pronunciari sincerè à me, audite  
 these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear  
 Romanos milites." Producit servos quos  
 the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom  
 excepérat in pabulatione, paucis diebus antè,  
 he had captured in foraging, a few days before,  
 et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.  
 and had tortured both by hunger and chains.  
 Hi edocti jam antè, quæ pronunciarent  
 They having been taught already before, what they should declare  
 interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,  
 (when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers



adductos fame et inopiâ  
 (and) (having been) led by hunger and want  
 exisse clam ex castris si possent  
 to have [had] gone out secretly from camp if they were able  
 reperire quid frumenti aut pecoris in  
 [could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in  
 agris; omnem exercitum premi  
 the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed  
 simili inopiâ; nec vires cujusquam jam  
 by a like want; nor (does) the strength of any one now  
 sufficere, nec posse ferre laborem  
 (to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor  
 operis. Itaque imperatorem statuisset, si  
 of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if  
 profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,  
 he accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,  
 deducere exercitum triduo. "Hæc beneficia,"  
 to withdraw (his) army in three days "These benefits,"  
 inquit Vercingetorix, "habetis à me, quem  
 said Vercingetorix, "you have from me. whom  
 insimulatis proditiōis, cujus operâ videtis tantum  
 you accuse of treason. by whose means you see so great  
 victorem exercitum pænè consumptum fame,  
 a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,  
 sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpiter recipientem  
 without your blood, which, disgracefully betaking  
 se ex hac fugâ, provisum est à me, ne  
 itself on this flight it had been provided by me, not  
 qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."  
 any state shall receive in its territories."

21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat  
 All the multitude shout and rattle

armis suo more, quod consueverunt  
 with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed  
 facere in eo cuius orationem approbant,  
 to do for him whose speech they were approving.

"Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec  
 "Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest [general, nor

dubitandum            de            ejus            fide,            nec  
must it be doubted    concerning    his            faithfulness,    nor

posse            bellum            administrari            majore  
to be possible [could]    the war    (to) be carried on    with greater

ratione." Statuunt    ut    decem    millia    hominum  
judgement." They decree    that    ten    thousand    men

delecta    ex    omnibus    copiis    submittantur    in  
selected    from    all    the forces    should be sent    into

oppidum;    nec    censent    communem    salutem  
the town;    nor    do they think    the general    safety

committendum    Biturigibus    solis,    quod  
to [must] be committed    to the Bituriges    alone,    because

intelligebant            summam            victoriæ  
they were understanding    (that)    the completeness    of the victory

constare    pænè    in    eo,    si    retinuissent  
would depend    almost    upon    this,    if    they should hold

oppidum.  
the town.

22. Consilia    cujusque    modi    Gallorum    occurrebant  
The plans    of every    kind    of the Gauls    were opposing

singulari    virtuti    nostrorum    militum, ut    est (sing.)  
the uncommon    bravery    of our    soldiers, as    they are

genus    summæ    sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad  
a nation    of the greatest    ingenuity, and    very apt    for [at]

imitandi atque efficienda,            quæ traduntur  
imitating    and    making (things),    which    are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertabant falces laqueis,  
by any one. For they were turning the hooks with nooses,

quos<sup>21</sup> quum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus  
which when they had caught, they were hauling within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,  
by engines, and they were undermining the mound by tunnels,

eò scientiùs, quod apud eos sunt magnæ  
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum  
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatam. Autem contabulaverant totum  
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant  
 wall on all parts with towers, and had covered  
 has coriis: tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis  
 these with hides: also in (their) frequent daily and nightly  
 eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,  
 sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,  
 aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et  
 or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and  
 adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,  
 they were equaling the height of our towers,  
 quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,  
 as much as the mound daily raised them.  
 malis suarum turrium commissis; et  
 the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and  
 morabantur apertos cuniculos præustâ et  
 they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and  
 præacutâ materiâ, et fervefactâ pice, et saxis  
 very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones  
 maximi ponderis, que prohibebant  
 of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)  
 appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.  
 approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est ferè forma omnibus Gallicis  
 Moreover this is generally the form of all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,  
 walls Straight beams continuous in length,  
 binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter  
 two feet distant at equal intervals between  
 se<sup>22</sup> collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur  
 themselves are placed on the ground. These are made fast  
 introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.  
 within, and are covered with much mound-filling.  
 Autem Æa intervalla, quæ diximus  
 But those intervals, which we have mentioned,  
 effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis  
 are filled up in front with great stones. These  
 collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo  
 having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum  
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingent inter  
may be observed, nor the beams may touch among

se,<sup>23</sup> sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ  
themselves, but are separated by equal spaces, each

contineantur (pl.) artè singulis interjectis saxis:  
kept in place closely by the several interposed stones

sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum  
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Quum hoc  
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only this

opus est non deforme in speciem que varietatem  
work is not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos  
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,  
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,  
and defence of cities great advantage,

quòd et lapis defendit ab incendio, et  
because both the stone protects from fire, and

materia ab ariete, quæ  
the wood-work from the battering-ram, which (having been)

revincta introrsùs trabibus plerumque perpetuis  
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,  
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.  
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditâ tot iis  
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, quum milites tardarentur tōto  
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis imbribus, tamen  
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,  
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem  
 and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound  
 trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta  
 three hundred and twenty feet wide, (and) eighty  
 pedes altum. Quum is pænè contingeret  
 feet high. When this (mound) had nearly touched  
 murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus  
 the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work  
 consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, quod ne  
 by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that no  
 tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo  
 time at all should be lost from the work a little  
 ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum  
 before the third watch, it was observed (that)  
 aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succenderant  
 the mound (to) smoked, which the enemy had fired  
 cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato  
 by a mine, and at the same time a shout having been raised  
 toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab  
 on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on  
 utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant  
 each side of the towers Some from a distance were throwing  
 faces atque aridam materiem de muro in  
 torches and dry material from the wall on  
 aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,  
 the mound, others were pouring pitch and other things,  
 quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset  
 by which the fire might be encouraged; so that a plan could  
 vix iniri, quò primum occurreretur,<sup>24</sup> aut  
 scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or  
 cui rei auxilium ferretur;  
 to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;  
 tamen quòd, instituto Cæsar, duæ legiones  
 however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions  
 semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis  
 always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted  
 temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut  
 times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducèrent  
 some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back

turres que interscindèrent aggerem; verò  
 the towers and cut off the mound, and indeed

omnis multitudo concurrent ex castris ad  
 (that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to

restinguendum.

extinguish (the fire).

25. Quam pugnaretur<sup>25</sup> in omnibus locis,  
 When it was fought in all places,

reliquâ parte noctis jam consumptâ, que  
 the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and

spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus(dat.),  
 the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,

magis eò quòd videbant pluteos turrium  
 the more so because they were seeing the coverings of the towers

deustos, animadvertebant apertos nec  
 burnt off. (and) were observing (that we) unprotected not

facile adire ad auxiliandum, que ipsi  
 easily to go [approached] for aiding, and they

recentes semper succedèrent defessis (dat.),  
 fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,

que arbitrarentur omnem salutem Galliæ  
 and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul

positam<sup>26</sup> in illo vestigio temporis, accidit  
 (was) placed in that instant of time, there happened

nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum  
 to us observing (that) which seemed (to be) worthy

memoriâ existimavimus non prætermittendum.  
 (of) memory we have thought to [it must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallum ante portam oppidi, qui è  
 A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from

regione turris projiciebat glebas sevi ac  
 the locality of the tower was throwing lumps of tallow and

picis in ignem, transditas per manus (pl.);  
 pitch into the fire, passed along by hand,

transjectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que  
 having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus      concidit;      unus      ex      proximis  
struck lifeless      fell;      one      from [of]      the nearest

transgressus      hunc      jacentem      fungebatur      illo  
having stepped over      him      lying prostrate,      was discharging      that

eodem manere;      eâdem ratione      altero      exanimatus  
same      duty;      in the same      manner      the other      having been

mate      ictu      scorpionis,      tertius      successit,  
killed      by a stroke      of the cross-bow,      a third      succeeded,

et quartus tertio;      nec ille      locus relictus est  
and      a fourth      to the third;      nor      that      place      was left

vacuus à propugnatoribus,      prius quàm      aggere  
vacant      by      the defenders,      before      (that)      the mound

restincto atque hostibus submotis  
(having been) extinguished      and      the enemy      having been repulsed

omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.  
on every      side,      an end      was made      of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res  
The Gauls      having tried      all things,      because      no      thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugere  
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.  
from the town,      Vercingetorix      advising      and      commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis  
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnâ  
(that) they      about to [would] accomplish (it)      with no      great

jacturâ suorum, propterea quòd castra  
loss      of their (men),      because      (that)      the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longè ab oppido,  
of Vercingetorix      was distant      not      far      from      the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat<sup>27</sup>  
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam  
the Romans      for [in]      following.      And      already

apparabant facere hoc noctu, quum matres  
they were preparing      to do this      by night,      when      the mothers

familias repente procurrerunt in publicum,  
of families [matrons]      suddenly      ran out      into      public,

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum  
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their

petierunt omnibus precibus, ne  
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not

dederent se et communes liberos hostibus  
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy

ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas  
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness

virium (pl.) impediret ad capiendam fugam.  
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.

Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in  
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)

sententiâ, quòd plerumque in summo periculo  
design, because generally in the greatest danger

timor recipit non misericordiam, cæperunt conclamare,  
fear admits not mercy, they began to cry out,

et significare de fugâ Romanis;  
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;

quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viâ  
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the road

præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt  
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted

consilio.  
from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postëro die turri pro-  
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been

motâ, que operibus directis, quæ  
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which

instituërat facëre, magno imbro coorto,  
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,

arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad  
thought this time not unsuited for

capiendum consilium, quòd videbat custodias  
carrying out the plan, because he was seeing the guards

in muro dispositas paulò incautiùs; que  
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and

jussit suos versari in opere langui-  
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather



diùs, et ostendit quid vellet fieri.  
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto  
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando perciperent fructum  
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia  
of victory for such great labors, he offers rewards

his, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit  
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex  
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complerunt murum.  
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,  
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,  
[action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus  
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

locis, hoc animo, ut si ex quâ parte venire-  
places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur<sup>28</sup> contra obviam depugnarent acie  
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere  
drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-  
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino  
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis  
the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes  
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,  
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

quum ipsi premerent se angusto exitu  
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est à militibus, pars  
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers, (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec  
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.  
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,  
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opëris perpecerunt non  
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.  
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni ðo numero, qui fuit circiter  
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo  
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex  
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;  
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multâ, excepit  
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

sic ex fugâ silentio (veritus ne qua seditio  
thus from the flight in silence (having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et  
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericordiâ volgi) ut suis familiaribus, que  
from the compassion of the throng) that his friends, and

principibus civitatum, dispositis procul  
the chiefs of the states, having been located at a distance

in viâ curaret disparandos que  
on the road he took care (that) they should be separated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ<sup>29</sup> pars castris  
be conducted to their (own people). which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.  
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,  
On the following day a council having been called

consolatus      que      cohortatus est      "ne  
 he consoled      and      exhorted,      "they should not be  
 admodum demitterent se animo, neve perturbarentur  
 too much      cast down      in mind,      nor      troubled  
 incommodo:      Romanos non vicisse virtute  
 by (their) loss;      (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery  
 neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et  
 nor      in      a battle-line,      but      by a certain      skill      and  
 scientiâ oppugnationis, cujus rei ipsi fuerint  
 by the science      of siege,      of which thing they were  
 imperiti;      errare, si qui expectent in bello  
 unskilled;      (those) err, if they expect in war  
 omnes eventus rerum      secundos; nunquam  
 all      results of affairs      (to be) prosperous;      never  
 placuisse sibi      Avaricum      defendi,  
 had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,  
 ejus rei haberet ipsos testes; sed  
 of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but  
 factum      imprudentiâ Biturigum et  
 to have been (it was) done      by the imprudence of the Bituriges and  
 niminâ obsequentiâ reliquorum, uti hoc  
 by the too great      compliance of the rest,      that this  
 incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum  
 disaster      was received;      however he would remedy  
 id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates  
 this quickly by greater advantages      For the states  
 quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suâ  
 which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his  
 diligentîâ adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius  
 exertion would be united, and one counsel of all  
 Galliæ effecturum, cujus consenui (dat.) orbis  
 Gaul would be effected. whose union      the whole  
 terrarum quidem possit      ne      obsistere;  
 world indeed would be able [could] not (to) oppose;  
 que se habere      prope jam effectum id.  
 and he to have [had] nearly already effected this  
 Interëa      esse      æquum      impet-  
 in the mean time      to be [it was]      just      (that) to [it shou<sup>ld</sup>]

rari ab his causâ communis salutis,  
be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,

ut instituèrent munire castra, quo  
that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that

possent faciliùs sustinere  
they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist

repentinos impetus hostium."  
the sudden attacks of the enemy."

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quòd  
This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because

ipse non defecērat animo, tanto incommodo  
he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss

accepto, neque abdidērat se in occultum,  
having been received, neither had he hid himself in secret,

neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis: que  
nor fled the sight of the multitude: and

existimabatur providere et præsentire, plus  
he was thought to foresee and to forecast, more

animo quòd, re integrâ, con-  
in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had

suērat primo Avaricum incendendum,  
decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt

pòst deserendum. Itaque ut adversæ  
afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse

res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;  
affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;

sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo  
so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss

accepto, augebatur in dies:  
having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day:

simul vinebant in, spem, ejus  
at the same time they were coming into, the hope, of his

affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que  
assertion, of uniting the other states; and

primùm Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire  
first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify

castra; et sic homines insueti laboris  
their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia  
were encouraged in mind, that they sought (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.  
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minùs anima  
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungeret reliquas  
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis  
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines  
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolâ oratione aut amicitia  
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.  
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,  
Those who had escaped, Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul  
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiae redintegrarentur, imperat  
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et  
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;  
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat  
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Galliâ, conquiri, et mitti  
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat  
to him. By these means, this which he had lost

Avarici celeriter expletur. Interim  
at Avaricum was speedily replaced In the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,  
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,  
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervenit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,  
 came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniâ.  
 and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,  
 Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et  
 and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore  
 of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiâ. Hieme jam prope confectâ,  
 and want. The winter having been now nearly ended,

quum tempore ipso anni vacaretur ad  
 when by the season itself of the year he was at leisure for

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci  
 carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus  
 against the enemy, either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,  
 and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

legati principes Æduorum veniunt ad eum  
 ambassadors chiefs of the Ædui come to him

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore  
 to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; "rem esse in summo  
 he should assist the state; "their affairs to be [are] in extreme

periculo; quòd quum singuli magistratus cre-  
 danger; that whereas single magistrates had been

ari antiquitùs, atque consuèssent obtinere  
 appointed of old, and were accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum; duo gerant magistratum,  
 a kingly power for one year; two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse  
 and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem  
 by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum  
 a distinguished and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimâ familiâ, atque ipsum hominem  
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiae, et magnæ cognationis, cujus  
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum  
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis;  
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas  
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas<sup>30</sup> cujusque eorum: quod si controversia  
partisans of each of them: that if the dispute

alatur diutiùs, fore uti pars civitatis  
is formented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat  
would collide with a part; (that) this may not happen

positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.  
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum  
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

descedere à bello atque hoste; tamen non  
to depart from the war and the enemy; yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuissent oriri  
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus; ne tanta civitas et tam  
from dissensions; lest so great a state and so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper  
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornasset omnibus rebus, descenderet  
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma; atque ea pars quæ  
to violence and to arms, and this part which

confidèret minùs sibi accerseret auxilia à  
might confide least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige; existimavit huic rei præ-  
Vercingetorix; he thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quòd legibus Æduorum,  
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui,

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum  
 to these who possessed the chief magistracy  
 non liceret excedere ex finibus; ne  
 it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest  
 videretur deminuisse quid de eorum  
 he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their  
 jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in  
 authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to  
 Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et  
 the Ædui, and he summoned all the senate, and (those)  
 intra quos controversia esset, ad se  
 among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him  
 Decetiam. Quum propè omnis civitas  
 at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state  
 convenisset eò, que doceretur fratrem  
 had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother  
 renunciatum à fratre, paucis clàm vocatis,  
 had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,  
 alio lōco, alio tempore, atque  
 in another place, (and) at another time, than  
 oportuērit; quum leges non solùm vetarent  
 was proper, when the laws not only were forbidding  
 duos ex unâ familiâ, utroque vivo, creari  
 two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen  
 magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in  
 magistrates, but also were forbidding (them) to be in  
 senatu; coëgit Cotum deponere magistratum;  
 the senate; he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy  
 jussit Convictolitavem, qui esset creatus per  
 he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through  
 sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus  
 the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy  
 intermissis, obtinere potestatem.  
 having lapsed, to hold the power [office].

34. Hôc decreto interposito, cohortatus  
 This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum  
 the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies



ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-  
 and dissensions, and all things having been  
 sis, servirent huic bello, que expectarent  
 laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect  
 ěa præmia, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliâ  
 those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul  
 devictâ, que mitterent omnem  
 having been conquered, and (that) they should send all  
 equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter  
 the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily  
 sibi, quæ disponeret in præidiis causâ  
 to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake  
 rei frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas  
 of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two  
 partes; dedit quatuor legiones Labieno ducendas  
 parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led  
 in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in  
 into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into  
 Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen  
 the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river  
 Elaver: attribuit partem equitatûs illi,  
 Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)  
 reliquit partem sibi. Quâ re cognitâ,  
 he left a part for himself. Which thing having been known  
 Vercingetorix, omnibus potibus ejus fluminis  
 Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river  
 interruptis, cœpit facere iter ab  
 having been demolished, began to make his march on  
 alterâ parte fluminis.  
 the other side of the river.

35. Quum uterque exercitus exisset in conspectu  
 When each army led out in view  
 que utrimque ponebant castra ferè è  
 and on each side they were pitching a camp almost over  
 regione castris. Exploratoribus dispositis,  
 against a camp. Scouts having been stationed,  
 necubi Romani, transducerent copias,  
 (so) that in no place the Romans, could lead across the forces

ponte effecto; res erat  
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was

Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-  
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should

iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,  
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,

quòd Elaver soleat non transiri vado  
because the Allier is wont not to be crossed by fording

ferè ante autumnum. Itaque ne id  
(till) nearly before autumn. Therefore lest this

accidèret, castris positis silvestri lōco  
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place

è regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-  
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-

getorix curaverat rescindendos, postëro die  
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day

restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;  
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;

misit, ut consuevèrat reliquas copias  
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces

cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis  
with all the baggage, each fourth

cohortibus demptis, uti numërus legionum;  
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions

videretur constare. His jussis progredi  
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance

quàm longissimè possent, quum jam ex  
as far (as) they could, when at last from

tempore diei caperet conjecturam per-  
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they

ventum in castra, cœpit reficere pontem  
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge

iisdem publicis inferior pars quarum remanebat  
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining

integra. Opère celeriter effecto, que  
entire. The work quickly having been completed and

legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco  
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.  
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitâ, ne  
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,  
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus.  
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervenit Gergoviam, ex hoc loco,  
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prælio  
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto hoc die, situ urbis  
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in  
having been reconnoitred, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus  
a very high mountain, was having all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit  
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum<sup>31</sup> de obsessione  
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

præius quam expedisset rem frumentariam. At  
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,  
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum  
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus  
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis; atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi  
intervals, and all the hills of this range

occupatis quâ poterat despici,  
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem: que jubebat  
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat  
the chiefs of these states, whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad  
 for himself for taking counsel, to come to  
 se quotidie primâ luce seu quid  
 him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything  
 videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-  
 might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be  
 trandum; neque intermittebat ferè ullum diem,  
 performed, nor was he omitting scarcely any day,  
 quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis  
 but that he was trying what (of) spirit and (of) courage  
 esset in quoque suorum equestri prælio,  
 might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,  
 sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis è  
 the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill  
 regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis  
 opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain  
 egregiè munitus, atque circumcisus ex omni parte  
 excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side  
 (quem si nostri tenerent, videbantur  
 (which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)  
 prohibitori hostes et<sup>32</sup> ex magnâ parte  
 to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)  
 aquæ (gen.), et liberâ pabulatione); sed is  
 water, and from free foraging); but this  
 lōcus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis  
 place was held by them with a garrison not very  
 firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris  
 strong; however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp  
 silentio noctis, priùs quàm subsidium posset  
 in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could  
 venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,  
 come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,  
 potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,  
 having seized the place, he stationed two legions there,  
 que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenûm pedum  
 and led a double trench (of) twelve feet  
 à majoribus castris ad minora, ut  
 (wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etiam singuli posset commeare tuto ab  
 even a single (soldier) could pass safely from [on]

repentino incursu hostium.  
 the sudden attack of the enemy

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,  
 While these things are passing at Gergovia,

Convictolitis, Æduus, cui demonstravimus  
 Convictolitis, the Æduan. to whom we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum à Cæsare sollicitatus  
 the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited

pecuniâ ab Arvernīs colloquitur cum quibusdam  
 with money by the Arverni confers with certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque  
 young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimâ familiâ,  
 his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family,

communicat præmium cum iis, que hortatur eos  
 he shares the money with them, and exhorts them

ut meminerint se liberos, et natos  
 that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born

imperio: "esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ  
 for empire; "it was alone the state of the Ædui which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas  
 retards the most certain victory of the Gauls; the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quâ trans-  
 were restrained by its authority, which having been brought

ductâ, non fore locum Romanis consistendi  
 over, there would not be a place for the Romans to stand on

in Galliâ, se esse affectum nonnullo beneficio  
 in Gaul, he was affected by a considerable benefit

Cæsarīs tamen sic ut obtinuerit justissimam  
 of Cæsar however so that he had obtained a most just

causam apud eum; sed tribuere (inf.) plus  
 cause through him; but (he) assigns more

communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui  
 to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure  
 come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potiùs quàm Romani ad  
and about their laws rather than the Romans to

Æduos?" Adolescentibus deductis  
the Ædui?" The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratûs, et præmio,  
speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

quum profiterentur, se vel fore principes  
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebatur,  
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quòd confidebant civitatem non posse  
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temerè ad suscipiendum bellum.  
induced rashly for [to] undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis  
It was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed to those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,  
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curarat ducenda eâ, quæ ejus  
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrent ad Cæsarem; constituunt  
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar, they determine

quâ ratione placeat agi reliqua.  
in what manner it may be well to perform the rest.

38. Litavicus, exercitu, accepto quum  
Litavicus, the army, having been received when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab  
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergoviâ, subito convocatis militibus,  
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrymans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?"  
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?"

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interit.  
all our knights, all the nobility have perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis  
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati prodicionis interfecti sunt ab  
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causâ indictâ. Cognoscite hæc  
the Romans the case not having been called. Know this

ab iis, qui fugerunt ex ipsâ cæde. Nam  
from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis  
I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ  
having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat,  
has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus  
what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciaverat, exponunt multitudini: "omnes  
had announced, they explain to the multitude: "all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quòd dicerentur  
the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernīs; ipsos occultasse se  
to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex  
among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediâ cæde." Ædui conclamant, et  
the midst (of the) massacre." The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,  
conjure Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi verò," inquit ille, "res sit  
" As if indeed," said he, " the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendere  
of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernīs?  
to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore  
Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad  
having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi  
slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui  
in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissimè, atque interficiamus hos  
 have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these  
 latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui èrant  
 robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were  
 unà fiduciâ ejus præsidi. Continuo diripit  
 with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes  
 magnum numèrum frumenti que commeatus;  
 a great quantity of corn and provisions;  
 interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;  
 he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);  
 dimittit nuncios totâ civitate Æduorum; permovet  
 he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui, he excites  
 eodém mendacio de cæde  
 (them) with the same falsehood about the massacre  
 equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili  
 of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like  
 ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas  
 manner, as he had done, they should avenge their  
 injurias.  
 injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo loco,  
 Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,  
 et summæ potentiæ domi, et unà Viridomarus,  
 and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,  
 pari ætate et gratiâ, sed dispari genere,  
 of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage,  
 quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem  
 whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity  
 ex humili loco, traditum sibi  
 from an humble station, he having been recommended to him  
 ab Divitiaco, convenérant in numèro equitum,  
 by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen  
 evocati nominatim ab eo. Erat  
 (having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was  
 contentio his inter se de  
 a contest (with) these (two) among themselves concerning  
 principatu; et in illâ controversiâ magistratum  
 rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates



alter pugnauerat pro Convictolitae alter pro  
the one had contended for Convictrolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex iis Eporedorix,  
Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Litavici cognito defert rem  
the designs of Litavicus having been learned announced the thing

ad Cæsarem ferè mediâ nocte; orat  
to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis  
he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficere ab amicitia Romani  
of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia  
people, which he foresaw would be, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,  
of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui  
whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligere neque posset civitas aestimare levi  
neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.

importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnâ sollicitudine  
Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hoc nuncio, quod semper præcipuè  
by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullâ debitatione  
favored the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositâ, educit ex castris quatuor  
having been interposed, led forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec  
light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda  
was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quòd res videbatur posita  
the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum  
on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

cum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;  
 with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp;

quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,  
 when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,

reperit profugisse paulo antè ad hostes.  
 he finds (that) they had fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur  
 Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labore itinēris necessario tempore, omnibus  
 by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque  
 (being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passuum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,  
 thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui,

equitatu immisso, moratur atque  
 the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit eorum iter; que interdicat omnibus,  
 impedes their march; and he forbade all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem  
 that they should not kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarus, quos ille existimabant interfectos,  
 and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos.  
 to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

Iis cognitis, et fraude  
 (countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectâ, Ædui incipiunt  
 of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui began

tendere manus et significare deditionem, et  
 to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.  
 having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,  
 Litavicus fled to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserere  
 with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etiam in extremâ fortuna.  
 (their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nunciis missis ad civitatem  
 Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state  
 Æduorum, qui docerent conservatos suo  
 of the Ædui, who should show (that they) had been saved by his  
 beneficio, quos potuisset interficere jure belli,  
 favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,  
 que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui  
 and three hours of the night having been given to the army  
 ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.  
 for rest, he moves the camp toward Gergovia.  
 Ferè medio itinère equites, missi à Fabio,  
 About the middle (of the) march horsemen sent by Fabius,  
 exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;  
 reveal in how great danger the affair shall have been  
 demonstrant castra oppugnata summis  
 [was]; they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great  
 copiis, quum integri crebrò succederunt  
 forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded  
 defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo  
 the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual  
 labøre, quibus (dat.)<sup>33</sup> propter magnitudinem  
 labor, by whom on account of the size  
 castrorum perpetuò permanendum esset  
 of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]  
 vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos  
 on the rampart (by) the same, (that) many were wounded  
 multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis genëris  
 by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind  
 telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta  
 of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines  
 fuisse mägno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,  
 were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,  
 duabus portis relictis obstruere  
 two gates having been left (open) was blocking up  
 cæteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se  
 the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he  
 parare ad similem casum in posterum diem  
 was preparing for a like fate on the next day.

his rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervenit in  
 These things having been learned. Cæsar arrived at  
 castra ante ortum solis summo studio  
 the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion  
 militum.  
 of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,  
 While these things are going on at Gergovia,  
 Ædui, primis nunciis a Litavico accep-  
 the Ædui, the first messages from Litavicus having been  
 tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad  
 received, leave to themselves no time for  
 cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia  
 ascertaining. Avarice impels some, passion  
 et temeritas alios, quæ est maximè innata  
 and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural  
 illi genèri hominum, ut habèant levem  
 to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight  
 auditionem pro re compertâ. Deripiunt bona  
 hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods  
 Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-  
 of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)  
 hunt in servitutem. Convictolitavis adjuvat  
 away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances  
 proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad  
 the ruined condition, and drives the people to  
 furorem, ut facinore admisso  
 madness, that an enormity having been committed,  
 pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.  
 it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.  
 Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium  
 They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristium  
 tribunum militum facientem iter ad  
 a tribute of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)  
 legionem, fide datâ; cogunt eos  
 legion, a pledge having been given; they force those  
 facere idem, qui constiterant ibi causâ  
 to do the same, who had sojourned there for the purpose

negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos in  
of trading. Having continually attacked these on (their)

itinēre, exuunt omnibus impedimentis;  
journey, they strip (them) of all (their) baggage;

obsident repugnantes diem que noctes (pl.);  
they besiege (those) opposing day and night,

multos utrimque interfectis, concitant majorem  
many on both sides having been slain, they summon a greater

multitudinem ad arma.  
multitude to arms.

43. Intērim nuntiis allatis, omnes  
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

eorum milites teneri in potestate Cæsaris,  
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil  
they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing

factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem  
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona  
concerning the goods plundered, they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad  
of Litavicus and (his) brothers, they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiâ purgandi sui. Hæc,  
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiâ recuperandorum suorum;  
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinōre et capti compendio  
but implicated in the crime and taken by the income

ex direptis bonis, quod hæc res pertinebat  
from the plundered goods, because this matter was relating

ad multos et exterriti timōre pœnæ,  
to many and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello  
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que sollicitant legationibus reliquas civitates.  
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ<sup>34</sup> tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam  
Which things although Cæsar was knowing, yet 22

mitissime potuit appellat legatos "Nihil  
 mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors "In no wise  
 se judicare gravius de civitate propter  
 he judges more severely concerning the state on account of  
 inscientiam que levitatem volgi, neque  
 the ignorance and fickleness of the common people, nor  
 deminuere de sua benevolentia in Æduos."  
 does he abate from his good will toward the Ædui "

Iipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,  
 He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,  
 ne circumstisteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,  
 lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet à  
 was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviâ ac rursus contraheret omnem  
 Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata à timore  
 army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.  
 of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44 Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est  
 An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti hæc. Nam quum  
 to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causâ perspicendi  
 he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur  
 the work, he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus  
 by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.  
 days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum  
 Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.  
 a great number daily were pouring in, to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse  
 it was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognovērat jam per exploratores, dorsum  
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back

ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre  
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody

et angustum, quā esset aditus ad altēram  
and narrow where was a passage to the other

partem oppidi, illos timere vehementer  
part of the town, (that) they feared exceedingly

huic lōco; viderentur jam sentire nec aliter,  
for this place, they appeared now to feel not otherwise,

uno colle occupato ab Romanis, si  
one hill having been occupied by the Romans, if

amisissent altērum, quin circumvallati  
they should lose the other. (but) that they would be surrounded

pæne, atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;  
nearly, and cut off from all egress and foraging;

omnes evocatos à Vercingetorige ad muniendum  
all were called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying

hunc lōcum.  
this place.

45. Hac re cognitā, Cæsar mittit  
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends

complures turmas equitum eò de mediā  
several troops of horsemen thither at mid

nocte; imperat iis, ut pervagentur  
night, he commands them, that they should range about

in omnibus lōcis paulò tumultuosiùs. Primā  
in all places somewhat more tumultuously [noisily]. At the first

luce jubet magnum numērum  
light [early dawn] the orders a great quantity

impedimentorum produci ex castris, que  
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp. and

mulorum, que stramenta detrahi iis, que  
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and

mulhones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus  
the muleteers with helmets to go round the hills

specie ac simulatione equitum. His  
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latiùs  
 he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely

causâ ostentationis. Jubet omnes  
 for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all

petere easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc  
 to seek the same places by a long circuit. These

videbatur procul ex oppido, ut erat  
 things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was

despectus à Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto  
 a view from Gergovia into the camp, nor, at such

spatio, poterat explorari quid certi  
 a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty

esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et  
 it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and

constituit progressam paulum, inferiore  
 he stations (it) (having been) advanced a little in a lower

lôco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio  
 place, and hides (it) in the woods The suspicion (of)

Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum  
 the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications

transducuntur illò. Cæsar conspicatus  
 are brought over thither Cæsar having perceived (that)

castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum  
 the camp of the enemy was deserted, the insignias of his

tectis, que militaribus signis  
 (men) having been covered, and the military ensigns

occultatis, transducit milites ex  
 having been concealed, he leads out (his) soldiers from

majoribus castris in minora raros, ne animad-  
 the larger camp into the smaller in squads, lest they should

verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit  
 be observed from the town, and he shows [explains]

legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,  
 to the lieutenants whom he had appointed to each legion.

quid vellet fieri in primis monet, ut  
 what he wishes to be done, especially he admonishes that

contineant milites, ne progrediantur  
 they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed



longiùs, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.  
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder,

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas  
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

lōci habeat hoc posse vitari  
of the place may have, (that) this could be avoided

celerite unâ, rem occasionis, non  
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

præli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,  
of battle These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempore, ab dextrâ  
and sends the Ædui, at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.  
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-  
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio  
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensûs, rectâ regione, si nullus anfractus  
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic?  
should intervene. Whatever may have been added to this

circuitûs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat  
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum  
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, ferè à  
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut  
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret  
the nature of the mountain was allowing, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio  
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem  
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris  
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps.

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,  
 very close The soldiers, the signal having been given,  
 celeriter perveniunt ad munitionem, que  
 quickly arrived at (this) fortification, and  
 transgressi eam, potiuntur trinis  
 having passed over it, take possession (of) three (separate)  
 castris. Ac tanta fuit celeritas in capiendis  
 camps, And so great was the speed in capturing  
 castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,  
 the camps, that Teutomatus, king of the Nitiobriges,  
 oppressus subito in tabernaculo, ut  
 having been surprised suddenly in (his) tent, as  
 conqueverat meridie, vix eripëret se  
 he went to rest at noon, scarcely saved himself  
 ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore  
 from the hands of the plundering soldiers, the upper  
 parte corporis nudatâ, equo  
 part of (his) body (having been) naked, (and his) horse  
 vulnerato.  
 (having been) wounded,

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuerat  
 Cæsar having attained that which he had proposed  
 animo, jussit receptui cani, que  
 in mind, ordered the retreat to be sounded, and (the soldiers)  
 decimæ legionis, quâ erat tum comitatus,  
 of the tenth legion, by which he was then accompanied,  
 consistere signa. At milites reliquarum  
 stood [halted] at the standards. But the soldiers of the other  
 legionum, non exaudito sono tubæ, quòd  
 legions, not having heard the sound of the trumpet, because  
 vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen  
 a valley sufficiently [quite] large was intervening, however  
 retinebantur à tribunis militum que  
 were kept back by the tribunes of the soldiers and  
 legatis, ut præceptum erat à Cæsar.  
 by the lieutenants, as (it) had been commanded by Cæsar.  
 Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fugâ  
 But elated by the hope of a speedy victory and by the flight

hostium, que secundis præliis superiorum  
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former

temporum existimabant nihil adeò arduum  
times they are thinking (that) nothing (was) so difficult

sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;  
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;

neque fecerunt finem sequendi, priùs  
nor did they make an end of following, before

quàm appropinquârunt muro que portis oppidi.  
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.

Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus  
But then a shout having arisen from all parts

urbis, qui aberant longiùs perterriti  
of the town, those who were distant farther frightened

repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes  
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy

esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex  
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from

oppido. Matres familiâs jactabant  
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw

vestem que argentum de muro, et  
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and

prominentes nudo pectore, passis manibus  
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands

obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcèrent sibi; neu  
they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor

sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinerënt ne  
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not

mulieribus quidem atque infantibus. Nonnullæ  
the women even and children. Some

demissæ de muris per manus,  
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands

transdebant sese militibus. L. Fabius  
were delivering themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius

centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat  
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared

dixisse eo die inter suos, se  
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,  
 was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,  
 ut quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,  
 that any one should mount the wall before (himself),  
 nactus tres suos manipulares atque  
 having taken three (of) his company and  
 sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;  
 having been raised up by them he mounted the wall;  
 ipse rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,  
 he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,  
 singulos.  
 one at a time.

48. Interim ii, qui convenërant ad altëram  
 In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other  
 partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ  
 part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose  
 munitionis, primo clamore exaudito, inde  
 of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward  
 etiam incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum  
 also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town  
 teneri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,  
 was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,  
 contenderunt eo magno concursu. Ut quisque  
 they hastened there in a great throng. As each  
 eorum primus venërat consistebat sub muro,  
 of them first came he was halting under the wall,  
 que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.  
 and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.  
 Quum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,  
 When a great multitude of these had assembled,  
 matres familiâs quæ paulò antè  
 the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before  
 tendebant manus de muro Romanis,  
 were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans,  
 cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico more  
 began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner  
 ostentare passum capillum, que proferre  
 to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua  
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec loco nec numero (sing.) simul  
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ,  
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight.

non facilè sustinebat recentes atque integros.  
they were not easily withstanding (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cùm videret pugnari  
Cæsar when he saw (it) to be [was] fought  
iniquo loco, que copias hostium  
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augeri, præmetuens suis mittit ad  
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextum legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio  
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret  
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constitueret sub  
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium;  
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy:

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos loco,  
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place

terreret hostes quò insequerentur minùs  
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

liberè. Ipse progressus paulùm ex eo  
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat  
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.  
the issue of the battle.

50. Quum pugnatur<sup>35</sup> accerimè comminus,  
While it was fought most violently hand to hand.

hostes confiderent loco et numero  
the enemy confided in the place and (their) number

nostri virtute; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab  
our men in (their) courage; the Ædui were suddenly seen, by

nostris                      aperto              latĕre, quos Cæsar miserat  
our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent

ab dextrâ parte              alio              ascensu,              causâ  
from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose

distinendæ manus.<sup>36</sup>              Hi              vehementer perterruerunt  
of cutting off the force              They              very much              alarmed

nostros              similitudine              armorum;              ac              tametsi  
our men              by the similarity              of (their) arms;              and              although

animadvertebantur              dextris humeris              exertis,  
they were observed              with the right shoulder              uncovered,

quod consueverat              esse              insigne              pacatis,  
which was accustomed to be              the sign              (of those) in peace,

tamen              milites              existimabant              id ipsum  
however              the soldiers              were thinking              (that) this same

factum ab hostibus              causâ              fallendi              sui.  
(was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving their-

Eodem tempore              centurio,              L. Fabius,              que  
At the same time              the centurion,              L. Fabius,              and

qui adscendĕrant              murum              unâ,  
(those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),

circumventi              atque              interfecti, præcipitabantur  
having been surrounded and slain, were thrown

de muro. M. Petronius,              centurio              ejusdem  
from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same

legionis, quum conatus              esset              excindere              portas,  
legion, when he had attempted to cut down the gates,

oppressus à multitudine, ac              desperans  
overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety

sibi, jam vulneribus              acceptis,              inquit  
for himself, already wounds having been received, said

suis manipularibus qui              secuti              ĕrant              illum.  
to his comrades who had followed him.

"Quoniam possum non servare me unâ vobiscum,  
"Since I can not save myself together with you,

quidem certè prospiciam vestræ saluti, quos,  
indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,

I, adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in  
I led by the desire of glory, have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datâ consulite  
 danger, you, an opportunity having been given, consult

vobis." Simul irrupit in medios  
 for yourselves " At the same time he threw himself into the midst

hostes, que duobus interfectis, submovit  
 of the) enemy and two having been killed, he drove back

reliquos paulum à portâ. Suis conantibus  
 the rest a little from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring

auxiliari inquit, "Frustra conamini subvenire meâ  
 to assist he said. "In vain you try to save my

vitæ quem sanguis que vires jam deficient,  
 life whom blood and strength now fail,

proinde abite hinc, dum est facultas,  
 therefore go from here, while there is the chance,

que recipite vos ad legionem." Pugnans ita  
 and get [betake] yourselves to the legion." Fighting thus

concidit post paulum, ac fuit salutis<sup>87</sup>  
 he fell after a little, and was (for) a safety

suis.

to his (men).

51. Quum nostri premerentur undique,  
 As our (men) were pressed on every side.

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,  
 forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt loco. Sed decima legio,  
 they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulò æquiore  
 which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

loco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantiùs.  
 place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertiæ legionis, rursus exceperunt  
 The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,<sup>88</sup> quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,  
 this, that having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, cepērant superiorem  
 with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

locum. Ubi legiones primùm attigerunt planitiem  
 ground, When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra  
 they halted, the standards having been turned against  
 hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab  
 the enemy. Vercingetorix led back his (men) from  
 radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo  
 the foot of the hill within the fortifications. On this  
 die paulò minùs septingentis milites  
 day a little less (than) seven hundred soldiers  
 desiderati sunt.  
 were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, concione advocata,  
 On the next day, Cæsar, a council having been called,  
 reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,  
 censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,  
 quòd ipsi judicavissent sibi, quò videretur  
 because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed  
 procedendum, aut quid agendum,  
 (that they) to [must] go or what to [must] be done,  
 neque, signo recipiendi dato,  
 neither, the signal for halting having been given,  
 constitissent, neque potuissent retineri à  
 did they halt, nor could they be restrained by  
 tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants He showed  
 quid iniquitas loci posset,  
 what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),  
 quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, quum,  
 what (he) himself had thought at Avaricum. when,  
 hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et  
 the enemy having been surprised without a leader and  
 sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,  
 without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory,  
 ne acciperet modò parvum detrimentum in  
 lest he might receive only a small injury in  
 contentione, propter iniquitatem loci.  
 the contest, on account of the disadvantage of the place  
 Quantopère admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,  
 As much as he admired their greatness of soul



quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo  
whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height

montis, non murus oppidi potuisset  
of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could

tardare, reprehendere tantopere licentiam que  
retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and

arrogantiam, quòd existimarent se sentire  
presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood

plus quàm imperatorem de victoriâ atque  
more than (their) commander about victory and

exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec  
the issue of affairs, (saying that) he desired in a soldier no

minùs modestiam et continentiam, quàm virtutem  
less moderation and submission, than valor

atque magnitudinem animi."  
and greatness of soul."

53. Hac concione, habitâ et ad extremum  
This council, having been held and at the end

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne  
the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)

permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu  
should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor

tribuèrent id virtuti hostium, quod  
should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which

iniquitas loci attulisset; cogitans  
the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking

eâdem de profectioe, quæ senserat  
the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt

antè, eduxit legiones ex castris, que  
before, he led forth the legions from the camp, and

constituit aciem idoneo loco. Quum  
drew up the battle-line in a favorable place. When

Vercingetorix nihilo magis descenderet in æquum  
Vercingetorix no more would descend into level

locum, levi equestri proelio facto,  
ground, a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,

atque è secundo, reduxit exercitum  
and this (being) favorable he led back (his) army

in castra. Quum fecisset hoc idem postero  
into the camp When he had done this same thing the next

die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam  
day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos  
the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in  
the minds of (his) soldiers, he moves (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne tum quidem insecutis,  
the Ædui. The enemy not then even having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen  
on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque transduxit exercitum.  
Allier, and led over (his) army

54. Ibi appellatus à Viridomaro atque  
There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicus, cum  
Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;  
all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Æd.,

et esse opus ipsos antecedere  
and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam  
for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum  
in many things was having the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat disessu  
clearly understood and he was thinking (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;  
of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened,

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne  
however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare  
he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,  
some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos  
he briefly states his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quàm humiles, compulsos in  
 he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into  
 oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copiis  
 their towns. deprived of their lands, all (their) means  
 ereptis, stipendio imposito,  
 having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)  
 obsidibus extortis cum summâ contumeliâ,  
 hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,  
 in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem  
 to what fortune, and to what greatness  
 deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in  
 he had raised (them). that they had not only returned to (their)  
 pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse  
 former state but they seemed to have surpassed  
 dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His  
 the dignity and influence of all times. Thus  
 mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab  
 charge having been given, he dismisses them from  
 se.  
 his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum  
 Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui  
 positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligeris.  
 situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.  
 Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Gallæ,  
 Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul  
 frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem  
 the corn, the public money, a great part  
 suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.  
 of his baggage, and (that) of the army.  
 Misêrat huc magnum numêrum equorum  
 He had sent hither a great number of horses  
 coëmptorum in Italiâ atque Hispaniâ, causâ  
 bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose  
 hujus belli. Quum Eporedorix que Viridomarus  
 of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus  
 venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu  
 had arrived there, and had learned about the condition.

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab  
 [attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by  
 Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ  
 the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest  
 auctoritatis apud eos, Convictolitavem  
 importance among them, (that) Convictolitavis  
 magistratum que magnam partem senatûs  
 the magistrate and a great part of the senate  
 convenisse ad eum, legatos publicè  
 had gone to him, (that) ambassadors were openly  
 missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandâ pace  
 sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace  
 et amicitîâ, existimaverunt tantum commodum  
 and alliance, they thought so great an advantage  
 non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni  
 must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum  
 interfectis, que qui convenêrant eò  
 having been killed, and those who had assembled there  
 causâ negotiandi, aut itinêris, partiti sunt  
 for the sake of trading, or travel, they divided  
 pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt  
 the money and the horses among themselves; they took care  
 obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte  
 (that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte  
 ad magistratum, oppidum, quòd judicabant  
 to the magistrate, the town, because they thought (it)  
 posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne  
 could not be held by them. they burned, lest  
 esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt  
 it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away  
 subitò navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-  
 suddenly in ships what they could of corn they  
 perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi  
 destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they  
 cœperunt copère copias ex finitimis regionibus,  
 began to collect forces from the neighboring districts,  
 disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas  
 to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Legeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus locis  
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causâ injiciendi timoris, si aut possent  
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariâ, aut adductos  
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or driven

inopiâ, expellere ex Provinciâ;  
by want, could expel (them) from the province; (this)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod  
was assisting them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur  
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vador.  
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit  
Which things having been known, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum, si esset periclitandum  
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius  
in building the bridges so that he might fight before

quàm majores copiæ coactæ eo. Nam ut,  
(that) greater forces were collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, converteret iter  
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum  
into the Province, he was thinking (that) this not then

quidem necessariò faciendum, quum infamia  
even of necessity to [must] be done, not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons  
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediēbat (sing.);  
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads were preventing;

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer  
but also especially because he was desiring very much

adungi Labieno, atque iis legionibus quas  
to be united with Labienus, and these legions which

miserat unâ. Itaque admodum magnis  
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis, confectis  
 marches by day and by night, having been made

pervenit ad Ligerim, contra opinionem omnium;  
 he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the opinion of all,

que vado invento per equites, opportuno  
 and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rei; ut brachia modo, atque  
 for the urgency of the case that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aquâ ad  
 the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito  
 supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringeret vim fluminis, atque  
 (that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,  
 the enemy (having been) confounded at first sight,

transduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus  
 he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecoris,  
 corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto his rebus, instituit  
 the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facere iter in Senones.  
 to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,  
 While these things are transacted under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat  
 Labienus, this contingent [addition], that had lately come

ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut  
 from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens], that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur  
 it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quatuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est  
 with four legions to Lutetia [Paris] This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis  
 a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab  
 Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis  
the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighboring

civitatis. Summa imperii transditur Camulogero  
states The supreme command is given to Camulogenus

Aulercō; qui propè confectus ætate,  
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age

tamen evocatus est ad eum honorem propter  
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rei Is, quum  
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem  
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere  
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum locum, consedit hic, quæ  
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibere nostros transitu.  
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primò conabatur agere vineas,  
Labienus at first was endeavoring to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque  
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id  
to open a road After he observed (that) this

confieri difficiliùs, egressus  
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

è castris silentio tertiâ vigiliâ, pervenit  
from (his) camp in silence on the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,<sup>40</sup> eodem itinere, quo  
at Metiosedum [Melun] by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum  
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulâ Sequanæ, ut paulò antè diximus  
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circiter quinquaginta navibus depre-  
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, quer conjunctis celerite, atque  
seized. and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis èd, et oppidanis  
 soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town

perterritis novitate rēi, magna  
 (having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing a great

pars quorum erat evocata ad bellum,  
 part of whom had been called away to the war,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte  
 he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant  
 having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, transducit exercitum, et  
 on the preceding days he leads over (his) army. and

cœpit facere iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.  
 began to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognitâ ab iis qui  
 The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugerant à Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam  
 had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;  
 to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in  
 they themselves having left the marsh. place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ è regione Lutetiæ contra  
 the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.  
 the camp of Labienus

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse à  
 Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione  
 Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que  
 of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul and

Galli in colloquiis confirmabant Cæsarem  
 the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligere,  
 cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)

coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in  
 forced by the want of corn, had marched into



Provinciam. Autem Bellovaci, defectione Æduorum  
the province But the Bellovaci, the defection of the Ædui

cognitâ, qui antè erant per se  
having been learned. who before were of themselves

infideles, coeperunt cogere manus, atque apertè  
unfaithful, began to collect forces, and openly

parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantâ  
to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great

commutatione rerum intelligebat longè aliud  
a change of affairs thought (that) a far different

consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat  
plan to [must] be taken by him. than he had considered

antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret  
before. Nor now was he thinking. that he should acquire

aliquid, que laceraret hostes proelio, sed ut  
anything. and should attack the enemy in battle. but that

reduceret exercitum incolumen Agendicum.  
he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.

Namque ex altèrâ parte Bellovaci, quæ civitas  
For on the one side the Bellovaci. which state

habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliâ,  
had the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul.

instabant; altèram Camulogenus tenebat  
were pressing the other (side) Camulogenus was holding

parato atque instructo exercitu; tum  
with an organized and equipped army, also

maximum flumen distinebat legiones  
a very large river was separating the legions (having been)

interclusas à præsidio atque impedimentis,  
cut off from the garrison and baggage

Tantis difficultatibus subitò objectis,  
Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented,

videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute<sup>41</sup>  
he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength

animi.  
of mind.

60. Itaque sub vespèrum, concilio con-  
Therefore towards evening. a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que  
called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and

industriè administrarent, ea quæ  
industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which

imperâsset; naves, quas deduxerat à  
he should command; the ships, which he had brought from

Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et  
Metiosedum, he assigns each one to Roman knights; and

jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,  
orders (them), the first watch having been completed,

progredi quatuor millia passuum secundo flumine,  
to proceed four thousand paces down the river,

silentio, que ibi se expectari. Relinquit  
in silence, and (that) there he was to be awaited. He leaves

quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minimè  
five cohorts, which he considered to be least

firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;  
sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;

imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis  
he commands the remaining five of the same legion

proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis  
to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage

adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam  
up the river with a great din. Also

conquirit lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,  
he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,

incitatas magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulò  
driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little

pòst, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,  
after, having marched out in silence with three legions,

petit eum locum, quò jusserat naves  
seeks this place, where he had ordered the ships

appelli.  
to be brought.

61. Quum esset ventum<sup>42</sup> eo, exploratores.  
When it was come [he came] there, the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi erant omni parte  
of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

flumīnis, inopinantes, quòd magna tempestas  
 of the river, not expecting, because a great storm

subitò cōorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;  
 had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celerīter transmittitur,  
 the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos  
 the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præfeceret ēi negotio. Ferè uno  
 had appointed for this affair. Nearly at one [the same]

tempōre sub lucem nunciatur hostibus,  
 time about daylight it was announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter  
 (that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans beyond

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire  
 custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumīne, que sonitum remorum  
 up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in eādē parte, et paulò  
 was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milītes transportari navibus. Quibus rebus  
 below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quòd existimabant legiones  
 having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos  
 were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parere fugam,  
 by the defection of the Ædui were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuerunt suas copias in tres partes.  
 they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto à regione castrorum,  
 For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvâ manu missâ versùs Metiosedum,  
 and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progredieretur tantum quantum naves pro-  
 which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessissent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.  
 proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primâ luce et omnes nostri  
 At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)  
 transportati erant, et acies hostium cernebatur.  
 had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned  
 Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenerent  
 [seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold  
 memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot  
 the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many  
 secundissimorum prœliorum, atque existimarent  
 very successful battles, and that they should think  
 Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-  
 (that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so  
 ero superâssent hostes adesse; dat signum  
 often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal  
 prœli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi  
 of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where  
 septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,  
 the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,  
 atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,  
 and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),  
 quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum  
 which place the twelfth legion was holding, when  
 primi ordines hostium concidissent transfixi  
 the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed  
 pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrimè, nec  
 by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor  
 quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux  
 was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general  
 ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,  
 himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his  
 atque cohortabatur eos. At exitu  
 (men), and was encouraging them. But the issue  
 victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum  
 of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when  
 nuntiatur esset tribunis septimæ legionis,  
 it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,  
 quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt  
 what was transpiring on the left wing. they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt  
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne ẽo tempore quidem quisquam cessit  
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

lõco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que  
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit ẽandem  
slain, Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ii qui relictĩ ẽrant præsidio  
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent  
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prœlium commissum, ierunt subsidio  
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque  
to their [people], and took [occupied], the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum  
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum: sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,  
(when) conquerors, so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt  
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-  
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi  
been completed, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitũs relictã ẽrant; inde  
the baggage of all the army had been left, thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copiis.  
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Æduorum cognitã, bellum  
The revolt of the Ædui having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes  
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum  
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiã, auctoritate, pecuniã.  
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat  
 Having got the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited  
 apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio  
 with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment  
 horum. Ædui petunt â Vercingetorige ut  
 of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that  
 veniat ad se, que communicet rationes  
 he come to them, and communicate the plans  
 gerendi belli. Re impetratâ,  
 of carrying on the war. This thing having been obtained,  
 contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur  
 they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned  
 ipsis et, re deductâ in controversiam,  
 to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,  
 concilium totius Gallhæ indicitur Bibracte.  
 a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.  
 Frequentes undique conveniunt eodem; res  
 Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter  
 permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum  
 is consigned to the votes of the multitude; all to one  
 [a man] probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.  
 approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.  
 Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab  
 The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from  
 hâc concilio; illi quòd sequebantur  
 this council; those [two first] because they were following  
 [observing] amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quòd  
 the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because  
 longiùs aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;  
 they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;  
 quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto  
 which was the reason why they were absent in the whole  
 bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui  
 war, and were sending auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui  
 ferunt magno dolore se dejectos  
 bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived  
 principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,  
 of the leadership: they lament the change of fortune

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;  
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves;

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent  
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.  
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ  
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.  
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis  
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatis. Denique constituit diem ei rei;  
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter;

huc jubet omnes equites, numero  
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit  
of fifteen thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem  
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit antè; neque temtaturum fortunam, neque  
he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;<sup>48</sup> sed, quoniam abundet  
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere  
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; modò  
the Romans from corn and forage provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua  
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; quâ  
corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturâ familiaris rei videant se  
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His  
obtain perpetual empire and freedom, These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que  
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem  
the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten

millia peditum; huc addit octingentos  
thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred

equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,  
horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorig,

que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.  
and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.

Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proximos  
On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest

pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,  
cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,

que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum  
and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ

Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges  
Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges

clandestinis nunciis que legationibus, quorum mentes  
by secret messages and embassies, whose minds

sperabat nondum resedissee à  
he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from

superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,  
the former war. To their leaders he promises money,

autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.  
but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia  
Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisæ erant, quæ  
of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,  
having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato opponebantur ad omnes partes.  
(his) lieutenant were opposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prælio cum  
The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,  
their neighbors, are defeated. and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus  
the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many



aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida  
 others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobroges crebris præsiidiis  
 and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos  
 having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnâ curâ et diligentîâ. Cæsar,  
 frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quòd intelligebat hostes esse  
 because he was perceiving (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus  
 superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullâ re  
 having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciâ atque Italiâ, mittit trans Rhenum  
 from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat  
 into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,  
 in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant  
 and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

proeliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quòd  
 to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur equis minùs idoneis, sumit equos  
 they used horses less suitable, he takes horses

à tribunis militum, sed ut  
 (not only) from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit  
 from the Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.  
 to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiæ  
 Mean time while these things are transpiring, the force

ex Arvernibus, que equites, qui imperati erant  
 from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum  
 of all of Gaul. assemble. A great number of these

coacto, quum Cæsar faceret iter in  
 having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into  
 Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,  
 the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,  
 quò posset faciliùs ferre subsidium Provinciæ,  
 so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,  
 Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem  
 Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten  
 millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis  
 thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders  
 equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat  
 of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)  
 tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugere in  
 the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into  
 Provinciam, que excedere Galliâ; id esse satis  
 the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough  
 sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;  
 for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;  
 profici parum ad pacem atque otium  
 (but it) profited little for the peace and repose  
 reliqui temporis; enim majoribus copiis  
 of the remaining time; for greater forces  
 coactis reversuros neque facturos  
 having been collected they would return nor would they make  
 finem bellandi; proinde adorianur  
 an end of waring; therefore let them attack (them)  
 impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium  
 encumbered on the march. If the infantry bring assistance  
 suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse  
 to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could  
 non confici; sin, id quod magis  
 not be performed; but, this which the rather [the more]  
 confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,  
 he trusts would be, the baggage having been abandoned,  
 consulant suæ salutis, iri spoliatum  
 if they may consult their safety, they would be deprived  
 et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.  
 both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos  
 For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they  
 quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo eorum  
 even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them  
 audeat mōdō progredi extra agmen.  
 would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line,  
 Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum  
 That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold  
 omnes copias pro castris, et futurum  
 all (his) forces before the camp, and would be  
 terrori hostibus. Equites conclamant  
 (for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)  
 oportere confirmari sanctissimo jurejurando,  
 it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,  
 ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum  
 that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access  
 ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,  
 either to children or to parents, or to wife,  
 qui non bis perequasset per agmen  
 who had not twice ridden through the army  
 hostium.  
 of the enemy.

67. Re probatâ, atque omnibus  
 The thing having been approved, and all  
 adactis ad jusjurandum, postero die  
 having been bound to an oath, on the next day  
 equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ  
 the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two  
 ostendunt se à duobus lateribus; una cœpit  
 show themselves on the two flanks; one began  
 impedire iter à primo agmine. Quâ  
 to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which  
 re nunciatâ, Cæsar quoque jubet suum  
 thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his  
 equitatum divisum tripartitò ire contra hostem.  
 cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy  
 Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unâ in omnibus partibus  
 They fought together on all sides.

Agmen constitit. Impedimenta recipiuntur  
 The marching-column halted. The baggage is received  
 inter legiones. Si in quâ parte nostri  
 among the legions. If in any part our (men)  
 videbantur laborare, aut premi gravius, èd  
 were seeming to labor, or be pressed more severely, there  
 Cæsar jubebat signa inferri, que  
 Cæsar was ordering the standards to be borne, and  
 aciem converti; quæ res et tardabat  
 the battle-line to be turned; which thing both was retarding  
 hostes ad insequendum, et confirmabat  
 the enemy for [from] following, and was encouraging  
 nostros spe auxili. Tandem Germani  
 our (men) with the hope of aid. At length the Germans  
 ab dextro latère, nacti summum jugum  
 on the right wing, having gained the top of the hill  
 depellunt hostes loco; persequuntur  
 force the enemy from the place; they pursue  
 fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix  
 (them) fleeing even to the river, where Vercingetorix  
 consederat cum pedestribus copiis, que interficiunt  
 had halted with the foot forces, and they kill  
 complures. Quâ re animadversâ, reliqui  
 very many. Which thing having been observed, the rest  
 veriti, ne circumvenirentur, mandant se  
 afraid, lest they might be surrounded, consign themselves  
 fugæ. Cædes fit omnibus locis. Tres  
 to flight. Slaughter is made in all parts. Three  
 nobilissimi Ædui capti perducuntur ad Cæsarem;  
 most noble Æduans captured are led back to Cæsar;  
 Cotus præfectus equitum, qui habuerat  
 Cotus the commander of the cavalry, who had held  
 controversiam cum Convictolitave proximis comitiis;  
 the contest with Convictolitavis in the late elections;  
 et Cavarillus, qui, post defectionem Litavici  
 and Cavarillus, who, after the revolt of Litavicus  
 præfuerat pedestribus copiis, et Eporedorix,  
 had commanded the foot forces, and Eporedorix,

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædúi  
with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædúi

contendērant bello cum Sequanis.  
had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix  
All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro  
led back his forces as he had placed (them) before

castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter  
the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march

Alesiam,<sup>44</sup> quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que  
to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and

jussit impedimenta celeriter educi ex castris,  
ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp,

et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis  
and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus  
having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,  
legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diēi passum est, circiter tribus  
as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmīne inter-  
thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altēro die fecit castra ad  
slain, on the next day makes [pitches] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que  
Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quod erant pulsi  
the enemy (having been) terrified, because they were beaten

equitatu, quā parte exercitūs maximē  
by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,  
they were confiding; having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit cicumvallare Alesiam.  
he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum erat in summo colle,  
The town itself was on the top (of) a hill,

lōco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-  
 the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)  
 pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex  
 be captured unless by a blockade Two rivers on  
 duabus partibus subleuant radices cujus collis.  
 two sides were washing the foot of this hill.  
 Ante oppidum planities patebat circiter trium  
 Before the town a plain was extending about three  
 millia passuum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus  
 thousand paces [miles] in length On all  
 reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri spatia  
 the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance  
 interjecto pari fastigio  
 (having been) interposed with equal elevation [degree]  
 altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,  
 of height were encircling the town Under the wall  
 pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,  
 the part of the hill, which was looking to the east,  
 omnem hunc lōcum copiae Gallorum compleverant,  
 all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,  
 que præduxerant fossam, et maceriam  
 and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall  
 sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus  
 six feet in height. The circuit of this  
 munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis  
 fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans  
 tenebat undecim millia passuum. Castra  
 was extending eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp  
 posita erant opportunis lōcis; que ibi viginti  
 was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty  
 tria castella facta, in quibus interdiu stationes  
 three fortresses were made, in which by day guards  
 disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subito.  
 were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.  
 Hæc eadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,  
 These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,  
 ac firmis præsidiis.  
 and strong posts.

70. Opère instituto, equestre prælum  
 The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle  
 fit in ãa planitie, quam, demonstravimus  
 took place on this plain, which, we have shown  
 suprâ, patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem,  
 above, extends three thousand paces in length,  
 intermissam collibus. Contenditur (pass. sing.)  
 limited by the hills. They contended  
 summâ vi ab utrisque. Cæsar  
 with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides Cæsar  
 submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que  
 sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and  
 constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio  
 draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally  
 subito fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio  
 suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection  
 legionum addito, animus augetur nostris:  
 of the legions having been added, courage is increased in our men;  
 hostes coniecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt  
 the enemy thrown into flight, they impede  
 se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus  
 themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower  
 portis relictis. Germani sequuntur  
 gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)  
 acriùs usque ad munitiones; maga cædes  
 more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter  
 fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur  
 is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor  
 transire fossam, et transcendere maceriam.  
 to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.  
 Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat  
 Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up  
 pro vallo promoveri paulum. Galli,  
 before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls  
 qui erant intra munitiones, non minùs  
 who were within the fortifications, no less  
 perturbantur; existimantes veniri  
 were terrified: thinking (our men) were coming

confestim ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli  
quickly to them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix  
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.  
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis  
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.  
having been captured, the Germans return [retire].

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere à  
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones  
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,  
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque eorum adeat suam civitatem, que  
that, each one of them should go to their own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui per  
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua  
their age might be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant  
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus  
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de  
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui<sup>45</sup> si fuerint indiligentiores,  
the common liberty: who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum  
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,  
would perish with him. a calculation having been entered [made].

se habere frumentum exiguè triginta dierum, sed  
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etiam paulò longiùs parcendo.  
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.



His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum  
 These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry  
 silentio, secundâ vigiliâ, quâ mostrum opus  
 in silence, in the second watch, where our work  
 intermissum; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad  
 ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to  
 se; consiituit pœnam capitis<sup>46</sup> iis,  
 himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,  
 qui non paruërint; distribuit pecus, cujus  
 who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which  
 magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,  
 a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,  
 viritim; instituit frumentum metiri  
 man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured  
 parcè et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,  
 sparingly and by little; he receives all the forces,  
 quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.  
 which he had placed before the town, into the town.  
 His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,  
 In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,  
 et administrare bellum.  
 and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis  
 Which things having been known from deserters  
 et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genëra (pl.)  
 and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind  
 munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum  
 of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet  
 latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum  
 broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom  
 pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.  
 might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis  
 He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred  
 pedibus ab eâ fossâ; id hœc consilio  
 feet from this ditch; this with this design  
 (quoniam tantum spatium necessariò esset complexus,  
 (since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facilè cingeretur  
 (that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded  
 coronâ militum), ne aut multitudo hostium  
 by a circle of soldiers), lest either a mass of the enemy  
 advolaret ad munitiones de improvviso noctu,  
 should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,  
 aut interdiu possent conjicere tela in  
 or by day they might be able to throw weapons against  
 nostros destinatos opëri. Hôc spatio inter-  
 our men assigned to the work. This space having been  
 misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,  
 left, he forms two trenches fifteen feet wide,  
 eâdem altitudine; interiorem quarum  
 with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)  
 campestribus ac demissis lœcis, complevit aquâ  
 in level and low ground, he fills with water  
 derivatâ ex flumine. Post eas extruxit  
 led from the river. Behind these he constructed  
 aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic  
 a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this  
 adjecit lorica que pinna, grandibus cervis  
 he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns  
 eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)  
 projecting at the junction of the parapet  
 atque aggeris, qui tardarent adscensum  
 and the mound, which might hinder the ascent  
 hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ  
 of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which  
 distarent inter se<sup>47</sup> octoginta pedes.  
 were distant among themselves eighty feet.  
 73. Erat necesse eodem tempore et  
 It was necessary at the same time both  
 materiari, et frumentari, et tantas  
 to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great  
 munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-  
 fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been  
 inutis, quæ progrediebantur longiùs ab  
 diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur  
the camp; and the Gauls sometimes were endeavoring

tentar nostra opëra, atque facëre eruptionem  
to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppïdo summâ vi pluribus portis.  
from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus  
Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quò munitiones possent  
be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numëro militum. Itaque truncis  
be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,  
of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque  
and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ  
sharpened; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et  
were cut. Here these stakes were put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,  
fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines  
they were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

erant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,  
were united, and intertwined among themselves,

quò ipsi qui<sup>48</sup> intraverant, induebant se  
where they who might enter, were impaling themselves

acutissimis vallis; appellabant hos cippos.  
on very sharp stakes; they were calling these cippi [boundary

posts]. Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,  
Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem  
arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore  
of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigio ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine  
surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præacuti et præusti,  
 of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,

demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quatuor  
 were set in; so that not more (than) four

digitis eminent ex terrâ. Simul  
 inches might project from the ground. At the same time

causâ confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli<sup>49</sup>  
 for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrâ  
 foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur  
 were trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.  
 with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordines hujus generis ducti, distabant  
 Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant

ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine  
 three feet among themselves. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant lilium. Ante hæc taleæ,  
 to the flower, they were calling a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ  
 a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram: que, mediocribus  
 were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus  
 spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.  
 places, which they were calling spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus  
 These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas, pro naturâ loci quàm  
 localities the most level, for the nature of the place that [as]

potuit, complexus quatuordecim millia  
 he could, (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem  
 paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem  
 kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent  
 enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundi ne magna<sup>50</sup> multitudine, quidem (si  
 be surrounded not by a great multitude, even (if

accidat ita, discessu<sup>51</sup> ejus).  
 it should happen so, by the departure of it [its, the cavalry's

Neu cogere<sup>52</sup> egredi ex  
 departure]. Nor (that) they should be forced to go from

castris cum periculo, jubet omnes habere pabulum  
 the camp with danger, he orders all to have forage

convectum que frumentum triginta dierum.  
 collected and corn for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,  
 While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,  
 the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked,

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui  
 ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),  
 could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum num̃erum imperandum cuique  
 but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantâ confusâ multitudine  
 state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos  
 they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habere rationem frumentandi. Imp̃erant  
 nor have the means of provisioning They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque  
 thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,  
 their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem num̃erum  
 the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,  
 from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalīs, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt  
 the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum: Senonibus,  
to be under the command of the Arverni. from the Senones,

Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,  
the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni.

Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;  
the Carnutes, twelve thousand, the Bellovaci, ten;

totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et  
the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and

Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena  
the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helveti; six

Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,  
from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,

Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia  
the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand

Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;  
from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates;

quatuor Velocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis  
four [from the Velocassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci

Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.  
Ebuovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.

Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt  
Ten from all the states, which border on

Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur  
the Ocean, and that by their custom are called

Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,  
Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,

Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,  
the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti.

Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non  
Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not

contulerunt suum numerum; quòd dixerunt  
contribute their number; because they said (that)

se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo  
they would carry on war with the Romans by their own

nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos  
name and will, nor would they obey

imperio cujusquam. Rogati à Commius,  
the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

pro ejus hospitio, tamen miserunt  
 on account of his tie of hospitality, however they sent

duo millia.  
 two thousand.

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, erat usus  
 Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fidelique utique operâ hujus Commius,  
 the faithful and helpful services of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britannia, pro quibus meritis  
 in former years in Britain; for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,  
 he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat  
 had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio  
 on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Galliæ vindicandæ libertatis, et  
 of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ pristinae laudis belli, ut  
 of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ  
 they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumberent in id  
 of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo  
 war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et  
 thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.  
 forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que  
 These were reviewed in the country of the Ædui; and

numerus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;  
 the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii transdatur Commius Atrebatii,  
 the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis.  
 Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobрино Vercinge-  
 Vercassivellauns the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercinge-

torigis. Iis delecti ex civitatibus  
 torix. To them (those) selected from the states

attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.  
 are assigned, by whose counsel the war should be conducted.

Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni  
 All set out to Alesia eager and full

fiduciæ. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,  
 of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,

arbitraretur adspectum mōdō tantæ  
 supposed that the sight even of so great

multitudinis posse sustineri, præsertim ancipiti  
 a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold

prælio; quum pugnaretur<sup>52</sup> eruptione ex  
 battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from

oppido, et foris tantæ copiæ equitatûs que  
 the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and

peditatûs cerneretur.  
 infantry should be discerned.

77. At ii qui obsidebantur Alesia, die  
 But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day

præterita, quâ expectaverant auxilia suorum,  
 having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),

omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid  
 all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what

geretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,  
 was passing among the Ædui, a council having been assembled.

consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.  
 they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.

Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars  
 And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part

censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum  
 were recommending a surrender, a part a sally while

vires (pl.) suppeterent. Oratio Critognati  
 (their) strength was sufficing. The speech of Critognatus

videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus  
 it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its



singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus  
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo lōco in Arvernīs, et habitus  
of the highest family among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil  
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing;

de sententiâ eorum, qui appellant  
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomīne deditiōnis;  
the basest slavery by the name of surrender;

censeo hos neque habendos lōco  
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad  
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui  
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu  
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinæ virtutis  
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non  
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.  
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius  
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quàm qui patienter ferant dolorem.  
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam tantum  
And I would approve this opinion, so much

apud me dignitas potest), si viderem  
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ  
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiēdo consilio,  
lives. But in taking [forming] plans,

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus  
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum  
to our assistance. Eighty thousand men

interfectis, uno loco, quid animi existimatis  
having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think

fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si  
(this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if

cogentur decertare prælio pænè in  
they may be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)

cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro  
dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your

auxilio, qui causâ vestræ salutis neglexerint  
aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded

suum periculum, nec vestrâ stultitiâ ac  
their own peril, nor by your folly and

temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere  
recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate

omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.  
all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.

An quèd non venèrint ad diem  
Why because they may not have come at [on] the day

dubitatis de eorum fide que constantia? Quid  
do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What

ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie  
then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily

in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causâ  
in those outer fortifications only for the purpose

animi?<sup>53</sup> Si potestis non confirmari nun-  
of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the

tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,  
messages of those, all access having been prevented

utimini iis testibus eorum adventum  
use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival

appropinquare exterriti timore cujus re  
draws near alarmed by the fear of this thing

versantur diem que noctem in opère. Quid  
they are busied day and night in the works. What

ergo est mei consilii? Facere quod nostri  
therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari beilo Cimbrorum  
 forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri  
 que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac  
 and Teutones, who driven into towns, and  
 subacti simili inopiâ, toleraverunt vitam corporibus  
 forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies  
 eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,  
 of those, who by age seemed useless for war,  
 neque transdiderunt se hostibus. Si  
 nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If  
 haberemus non exemplum cujus rei, tamen  
 we had not the example of this thing, yet  
 judicarem pulcherrimum causâ libertatis  
 I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty  
 institui, et prodi posteris. Nam  
 to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For  
 quid fuit simile illi bello?<sup>54</sup> Galliâ  
 what was it like that war? Gaul (having been)  
 depopulatâ, que magnâ calamitate illatâ,  
 depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,  
 Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque  
 the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and  
 petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,  
 sought other lands; they left us the rights,  
 leges, agros libertatem. Verò Romani  
 the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans  
 quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi  
 what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except  
 adducti invidiâ, considere in agris que  
 induced by greed, to settle in the fields and  
 civitatibus horum, quos cognoverunt famâ  
 states of these (those) whom they have learned by report  
 nobiles que potentes bello, atque his  
 (are) noble and powerful in war, and on these  
 injungere æternam servitutem? Neque enim  
 impose perpetual slavery? Nor even  
 unquam gesserunt bella aliâ conditione. Quòd  
 have they ever waged war on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ea quæ geruntur in  
if you know not those things which are carried on in

longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,  
distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,

quæ redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus  
which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws

commutatis, subjecta securi-  
(having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-

bus premitur perpetuâ servitute!<sup>1</sup>  
tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut  
The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that

qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello  
(those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war

excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,  
should leave the town, and all things should be tried,

prius quam descendant ad sententiam  
before (that) they descend to the recommendation

Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, is res  
of Critognatus; however to use his advice, if the case

cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potius quam  
compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)

conditionem deditionis aut pacis subeundam.  
a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured

Mandubii, qui recepērant eos oppido coguntur  
The Mandubii, who had received them in the town were forced

exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi  
to depart with the children and wives. These

quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,  
when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,

flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-  
weeping were praying with all entreaties, that having been

tos in servitutem, juvarent cibo.  
received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food

Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,  
These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart

prohibebat recipi.  
was refusing to be received.

79. Interea Comius, et reliqui duces,  
 In the mean time Commius, and the other leaders,  
 quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt  
 to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive  
 ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore  
 at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer  
 colle occupato, considunt non longiùs  
 hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)  
 mille passibus à nostris munitionibus. Postëro  
 a thousand paces from our fortifications. The next  
 die, equitatu educto ex castris,  
 day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,  
 complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus  
 they fill all this plain, which we have shown  
 patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem;  
 to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;  
 que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eo  
 and they station the foot soldiers a little from this  
 loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat  
 place, removed on higher ground. There was  
 despectus ex oppido Alesiâ in campum.  
 a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.  
 His auxiliis visis, concurritur,  
 These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together  
 gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi  
 congratulations are made among them, and the souls  
 omnium excitantur ad lætitiâ. Itaque, copiis  
 of all are excited to joy. Therefore, (their) forces  
 productis ante oppidum, considunt et  
 having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and  
 integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent  
 cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)  
 aggere, que comparant se ad eruptionem,  
 with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,  
 atque omnes casus.  
 and all chances

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad  
 Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus  
 both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need  
 veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,  
 came, each might know and keep his own place,  
 jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et  
 orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and  
 committi prælium. Erat despectus ex omnibus  
 to join battle. There was a view from all  
 castris, quæ undique tenebant summum  
 the camp. which everywhere was holding the highest  
 jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti  
 ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers absorbed  
 expectabant eventum pugnae. Galli  
 were anticipating the issue of the battle. The Gauls  
 interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,  
 had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,  
 que expeditos levis armaturæ,<sup>55</sup> qui succurrent  
 and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor  
 auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinèrent  
 by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold  
 impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures  
 the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)  
 vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant  
 wounded unexpectedly by these were withdrawing  
 prælio. Quum Galli confidèrent suos  
 from the battle. When the Gauls were trusting (that) their  
 esse superiores pugnâ, et vidèrent  
 (men) were superior in the fight, and were seeing  
 nostros premi multitudine; ex om-  
 our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng; from [on]  
 nibus partibus, et ii qui centinebantur  
 all parts [sides], both those who were retained  
 munitionibus, et ii qui convenerant ad  
 within the fortifications, and those who had come for  
 auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore  
 aid, were encouraging the souls of their men by a shout  
 et ululatu. Quòd res gerebatur in conspectu  
 and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum rectè ac<sup>56</sup>  
 of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] and [nor]

turpiter potèrat celari, et cupiditas laudis,  
 shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise.

et timor ignominiae excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad  
 and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur à meridie  
 valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

propè ad occasum solis dubiâ victoriâ,  
 nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unâ parte confertis turmis fecerunt  
 the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.  
 an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus coniectis in fugam,  
 Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item  
 the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti  
 in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt  
 retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At  
 no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

ii, qui processerant ab Alesia, victoriâ  
 those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

propè desperatâ, receperunt se  
 nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mœsti, in oppidum.  
 sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hœc spatio  
 One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numëro cratium, scalarum, harpagonum  
 a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediâ nocte, silentio,  
 having been made, the Gauls, at mid night, (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad  
 having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres                      munitiones.                      Subito                      clamore  
 the field [outside]                      fortifications.                      A sudden                      shout  
  
 sublato,                      quâ                      significatione,                      qui  
 having been raised,                      by which                      signal,                      (those)                      who  
 obsidebantur in oppido,                      possent cognoscere de  
 were besieged in the town,                      might                      know                      of  
 suo adventu,                      projicere crates deturbare  
 their arrival,                      (they) (to) throw out the hurdles,                      force  
 nostros de vallo fundis,                      sugittis lapidibus,  
 our men from the rampart by slings,                      arrows (and) stones,  
 que administrare reliqua quæ pertinent ad  
 and (to) perform the other things which belong to  
 oppugnationem.                      Eodem                      tempore,                      clamore  
 an assault.                      At the same                      time,                      the shout  
 exaudito,                      Vercingetorix dat signum suis  
 having been heard,                      Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men  
 tubâ,                      atque educit                      ex oppido.  
 by the trumpet,                      and leads (them forth) from the town  
 Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, suas locis  
 Our men, as on the former days, his place (having  
 attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;  
 been) assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;  
 perterrent Gallos fundis libralibus<sup>57</sup> que  
 they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and  
 sudibus, quas disposuerant in opere, ac  
 stakes, which they had placed in the works, and  
 glandibus. Prospectu                      adempto tenebris,  
 by lead bullets                      The view (having been) prevented by darkness,  
 multa vulnera accipiuntur utrimque, complura  
 many wounds are received on both sides, numerous  
 tela conjiciuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,<sup>58</sup>  
 weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,  
 et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus ea partes  
 and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts  
 obveniant ad defendendum, ex quâ  
 had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]  
 parte intellexerunt                      nostros premi,  
 side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed,



submittebant      iis      auxilio      deductos      ex  
they sent      to them      for [as] aid      (those) drawn [led] out      from

ulterioribus      castellis.  
the more remote      fortresses.

82. Dum      Galli      aberant      longiùs      ab  
While      the Gauls      were distant      rather far      from

munitione,      proficiebant,      plus      multitudine  
the fortifications,      they were accomplishing,      more      by the multitude

telorum;      posteaquàm      successerunt      propiùs,  
[mass]      of weapons;      after      they approached      nearer,

aut ipsi inopinantes induebant      se      stimulis,  
either they unawares      were impaling themselves      on the spurs,

aut delapsi      in      scrobes      transfodiebantur,      aut  
or      having fallen      into      the pits      were transfixed,      or

interibant      transjecti      muralibus      pilis      ex  
were perishing      pierced      by the wall      javelins (thrown) from

vallo      et      turribus.      Multis      vulneribus      accep-  
the rampart      and      towers.      Many      wounds      having

tis      undique,      nullâ      munitione      perruptâ,  
been received      on all sides,      no      fortification      having been forced

quum      lux      appeteret,      veriti      ne  
when      (day) light      was approaching,      having feared      lest

circumvenirentur      ab      aperto      latère,      eruptione  
they might be surrounded      on      the exposed      flank,      by a sally

ex      superioribus      castris,      receperunt      se      ad      suos.  
from      the higher      camp,      they retreated      to their (people).

At      interiores,      dum      proferunt      ea  
But      those within (the town),      while      they bring out      these things

quæ      præparata      erant      Vercingetorige      ad  
which      had been      prepared      by Vercingetorix      for

eruptionem,      explent      priores      fossas;      morati  
the sally,      fill up      the first      ditches;      having been delayed

diutius      in      administrandis      iis      rebus,      cogno-  
rather long      in      performing      these      things,      they

verunt      suos      discessisse      priùs      quàm  
learned      (that)      their men      had withdrawn      before      (that)

appropinquant      munitionibus.      Ita,      re  
they had got near      (to)      the fortifications.      Thus,      the thing

infectâ, reverterunt in  
[design] having been unaccomplished. they returned into

oppidum.  
the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno  
The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great  
detremento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent  
loss, consult what they should do. They admit

peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab  
(those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from

his situs superiorum castrorum que  
these the position of the higher camp and

munitiones. Erat collis à septentrionibus,  
the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,

quem<sup>59</sup> quia non potuerant circumplecti opere,  
which because they could not enclose in the works,

propter magnitudinem circuitûs, nostri pænè  
on account of the greatness of the circuit, our men almost

necessariò fecerunt castra iniquo loco,  
necessarily pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable place,

et leniter declivi. C. Antistius Reginus, et  
and gently descending. C. Antistius Reginus, and

C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc  
C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this

cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis  
with two legions. The country having been explored

per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt  
by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select

sexaginta millia ex omni numero earum  
sixty thousand from all the number of those

civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem  
states. which have the greatest reputation

virtutis; occultè constituunt inter se, quid,  
of [for] bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,

que quo pacto placëat agi.  
and in what manner it pleases (them) to be done [to take action].

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur  
They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse meridies. Præficiunt his copiis  
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunus Arvernum, unum ex  
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quatuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille  
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primâ vigiliâ itinere  
having departed from the camp on the first watch the march

confecto propè sub lucem, occultavit  
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites  
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficere sese ex nocturno labore. Quam  
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridies videretur appropinquare, contendit  
now noon was seeming to draw near, he marched

ad ea castra, quæ demonstravimus suprâ, que  
to this camp, which we have mentioned above, and

eodem tempore equitatus coeperunt accedere  
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestris munitiones, et reliquæ  
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendere sese pro castris.  
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex  
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesiae, egreditur ex oppido, profert  
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, he brings forth

è castris longurios, musculos, falces, que  
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causâ eruptionis.  
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur<sup>60</sup> uno tempore, omnibus locis, atque  
It was fought at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minimè  
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum  
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinctur tantis munitionibus ne facile  
is extended in so great fortifications that not easily

occurrit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit  
it opposed in many places. The din, that arose

post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multum ad  
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for

terrendo nostros, quod vident suum  
alarming our men, because they see (that) their

periculum consistere in virtute alienâ. Enim  
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For

plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant  
generally all things which are absent alarm

mentes hominum vehementius.  
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit  
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns

quid geratur in quâque parte, submittit  
what is done in every part, he sends (a'd)

laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,  
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each.

illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat  
(that) that was the one time, in which it was fitting

maximè contendit.<sup>61</sup> Galli, nisi  
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless

perfregérint munitiones, desperant de omni  
they break through the fortifications, despair of all

salute. Romani, si obtinuérint rem  
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]

expectant finem omnium laborum. Maximè  
expect an end of all (their) labor. Especially

laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quod  
it was [they] struggled at the higher fortifications, where

demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.  
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.

Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,  
The small elevation of the place with the slope,

habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,  
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factâ, subeunt, integri  
 others a testudo having been made advance, fresh men

succedunt defatigatis invicem. Agger conjectus  
 relieved the wearied by turns. The materials thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat (sing.)  
 by all against the fortifications, both give

adscensum Gallis, et contegit (sing.) quæ  
 an ascent to the Gauls, and cover what

Romani occultaverant in terram. Nec jam  
 the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither now

arma, nec vires suppetunt nostris.  
 arms, nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit  
 These things having been known, Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus laborantibus  
 Labienus with six cohorts (to those) struggling

subsidio. Imperat, si possit non  
 for [as] aid He commands (him), if he could not

sustinere, cohortibus deductis, pugnaret  
 withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out. he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessariò.  
 in a sally; not [nor] do this, unless necessarily.

Ipsè adit reliquos; cohortatur ne  
 He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labori; docet fructum omnium  
 succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in eo  
 (their) former battles depended on this

die atque horâ. Interiores campestribus  
 day and hour. Those within [The besieged] the level

locis desperatis, propter magnitudinem  
 places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant loca prærupta ex  
 of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; hûc conferunt ea quæ para-  
 ascent; here they bring those things which they had

verant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus  
 prepared. they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggere  
by the multitude of weapons, they fill up the trenches with earth

et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt  
and fascines they prepare an approach; they tear down

vallum ac lorica[m] falcebus.  
the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primò mittit Brutum, adolescentem,  
Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,

cum sex cohortibus, post Fabium legatum cum  
with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with

septem aliis. Postremò ipse, quum pugnaretur<sup>62</sup>  
seven others. At length he himself, when it is fought

vehementiùs, adducit intergos subsidio.  
more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prælio restituto, ac hostibus repul-  
The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been

sis, contendit èd quò miserat Labienum;  
repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quatuor cohortes ex proximo castello;  
he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem  
he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri  
to go around the other fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquàm  
the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere  
neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus  
the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis  
having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsedibus, sors obtulit; fecit certiore[m] Cæsarem,  
posts, chance offered; he informs Cæsar,

per nuncios quid existimet faciendum. Cæsar  
by messengers what he thought must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prælio.  
hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colore\*  
 His arrival having been known from the color  
 vestitûs, (quo insigni consueverat uti  
 of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use  
 in prœliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus  
 in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts  
 visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de  
 having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from  
 superioribus lœcis hæc declivia et devexa  
 the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)  
 cernebantur, hostes committunt prœlium. Clamore  
 were beheld, the enemy join battle. A shout  
 sublato utrimque, clamor rursus excipit  
 having been raised on both sides, a shout is again received  
 ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.  
 [heard] from the rampart and all the fortifications.  
 Nostri pilis omissis, gerant  
 Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on  
 rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repentè cernitur  
 the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen  
 post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;  
 in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;  
 hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt  
 the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet  
 fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius  
 (those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius  
 dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;  
 general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;  
 Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus  
 Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive  
 in fugâ; septuaginta quatuor militaria signa  
 in flight; seventy four military standards  
 referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto  
 are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great  
 numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati  
 a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld  
 ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,  
 from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people),  
 \* white.

salute            desperatâ,            reducunt            copias  
safety    having been despaired of,    they lead back (their)    forces

à            munitionibus.            Hâc            re            auditâ  
from    the fortifications.    This    action    having been heard

fuga            protinus            fit,            ex            castris            Gallorum;  
a flight    immediately    is made,    from    the camp    of the Gauls;

quod            nisi            milites            fuissent            defessi  
as to [regarding] which [this]    unless    the soldiers    had been    fatigued

crebris            subsidiis            ac            labore            totius  
by the frequent    reinforcements    and    by the labor    of the whole

diei, omnes            copiæ            hostium            potuissent            deleri.  
day,    all    the forces    of the enemy    would have been destroyed.

De mediâ nocte. equitatus            missus            consequitur  
About mid night    the cavalry    having been sent    overtakes

novissimum            agmen.            Magnus            numerus            capitur,  
the rear            line.    A great    number    are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui            discedunt            ex            fugâ  
and    killed;    the rest    escape    from    the flight [rout]

in            civitates.  
into    their states.

89. Postero            die,            concilio            convocato,  
On the next    day,    a council    having been called,

Vercingetorix            demonstrat            se            suscepisse  
Vercingetorix            shows    (that)    he    had undertaken

bellum non causâ suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed  
the war    not    for the sake    of his own    necessity,    but

communis            libertatis,            et            quoniam            sit  
of (their) common    liberty,    and    because    it must

cedendum            fortunæ,            offere            se            illis  
be yielded    to fortune,    (that he)    offered    himself    to them

ad utramque rem,            seu            velint  
for    either    thing [alternative],    whether    they wished

satisfacere Romanis suâ morte, seu tradere  
to satisfy    the Romans    by his    death,    or    to surrender

vivum.            Legati            mittuntur            ad Cæsarem  
(him)    alive.    Ambassadors    are sent    to    Cæsar

de            his            rebus.            Jubet            arma  
concerning    these    things.    He orders    (their)    arms



tradi, principes roduci. Ipse  
 to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He  
 consedit in munitione pro castris:     
 seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there  
 principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;  
 the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered  
 arma projiciuntur.   duis atque Arvern    
 the arms are thrown down. The   dui and    Arverni  
 reservatis, si per   os posset recuperare  
 having been reserved, if through them he could gain over  
 civitates; ex reliquis captivis distribuit  
 (their) states; from the remaining captives he distributed  
 singula capita toto exercitu nomine  
 one each in the whole army under the name  
 pr  d  .  
 of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur  
 These things having been accomplished, he marches  
 in   duos; recipit civitatem. E    
 into the   dui; he receives the state. Thither  
 legati ab Arvern   missi pollicentur  
 ambassadors from the Arverni having been sent they promise  
 se facturos, qu   imperaret. Imperat  
 (that) they would do, what he might command. He orders  
 magnum numerum obs  dum. Mittit legiones in  
 a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into  
 hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia  
 winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand  
 captivorum   duis que Arvern  . Jubet  
 (of) prisoners to the   dui and Arverni. He orders  
 T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum  
 T. Labienus to march 'into the Sequani with  
 duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit  
 two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns  
 M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium  
 M. Sempronius Rutilus; He places C. Fabius  
 et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum  
 and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus legionibus, ne accipiant quam  
two legions, lest they might receive any

calamitatem à finitimis Bellovacis. Mittit  
injury from the neighboring Bellovacæ. He sends

C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos,  
C. Antistius Reginus among the Ambivareti,

T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninum Rebilum  
T. Sextius among the Bituriges, C. Caninus Rebilus

in Rutenos, cum legionibus singulis; collocat  
among the Ruteni, with a legion each, he stations

Q. Tullium Ciceronem, et P. Sulpicium Cabiloni  
Q. Tullius Cicero, and P. Sulpicius at Cabilo

et Matiscone ad Ararim in Æduis  
and Matisco on [near] the (river) Saone among the Ædui

causâ frumentariæ rei; ipse constituit  
for the purpose of the corn supply; he himself determines

hiemare Bibracte. His rebus cognitis  
to winter at Bibracte. These things having been learned

litteris Cæsaris Romæ, supplicatio viginti  
by letters of Cæsar at Rome, a thanksgiving or twenty

dierum indicitur.  
days is decreed.

## NOTES

## FIRST BOOK

PAGE 1—1 Latin order: - *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae*, Lit., Gaul is all divided into parts three; of which one inhabit Belgæ.

PAGE 2—2 *eorum* i. e. the Germans. *eorum* in the next sentence refers to the Celts or Gauls, *tertiam*, above. 3 Meaning, on the same side of the river, i. e. west side. 4 The country slopes to the north.

PAGE 3—5 Dative after verb of persuading, used as direct object. 6 on one side, the Rhine a river very wide and very deep—on the other side the Jura (St. Cloude) a very lofty mountain—on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone.

PAGE 4—7 Other text: - *qua ex parte*, and for this reason. 8 they were considering that they had narrow territories in consideration of the multitude of men, the glory of war and their bravery. 9 to make as great sowings as possible. 10 they decided two years' time would be sufficient to them for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 5—11 Orgetorix is chosen for executing these things. 12 Whose father had held sway among the Sequani many years.

PAGE 6—13 he assures (them) that he himself is about to secure the kingdom for them with his resources and his army 14 they hope that they may be able to get possession of all Gaul. 15 and brought together to the same place all his clients and debt bondsmen of whom he was having a great number; through whom he rescued himself from pleading his cause.

PAGE 7—16 nor is suspicion wanting as the Helvetians think, that he had committed suicide 17 they might be more prepared for undergoing all dangers.

PAGE 8—18 Literally, and they vote in the Boii, admitted to themselves, as their (*sibi*) allies. In English a double verb construction would be used, not the participle they take the Boii into their own number (*ad se*) and vote them in as allies. 19 They were thinking that they (*sese*) either would persuade the Allobroges because they were seeming to be not yet in good feeling toward the Roman people, or would compel by force to suffer them to go through their territories.

PAGE 9—20 by journeys as great as he was able.

PAGE 10—21 to ask that it may be allowed them to do this with his good will [permission] 22 Because Cæsar was holding in memory that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain (supply *esse* with *occisum*) and his army had been routed (supply *esse*) by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke, he was considering that it must not be granted, nor was he thinking that men of hostile spirit, an opportunity of making a way through the province having been given, would refrain from injury and damage. 23 that he himself was about to take a day for deliberating,—

PAGE 11—24 nineteen thousand paces i. e. nineteen Roman miles about seventeen and one half English miles. The work actually represented five short spans the remaining distance being naturally protected somewhat by bluffs and ravines 25 he denies that according to the custom and example of the Roman people he is able to grant a way to any through the province; and if they attempt to employ force he shows that he would prevent them (supply *esse* with *prohibiturum*) 26 Lit. :- ships having been joined and rafts having been made i. e. when ships had been joined together and rafts made,— 27 where the depth of the river was least.

PAGE 12—28 because he had taken in marriage,— 29 and induced by a desire (lit., greed) for the throne, he was zealous for a revolution and was wishing to have as many states as possible attached to him by his beneficence.

PAGE 13—30 and where the route was the nearest into farther Gaul,—

PAGE 14—31 and were ravaging their lands. 32 their children led off into captivity,—

PAGE 15—33 now that their fields are devastated they are

not easily checking the violence of the enemy from the towns 34 and show that there is nothing left to them besides the soil of the land.

PAGE 16—35 When Cæsar had been informed by scouts that the Helvetians had already led over this river three parts of their forces but that the fourth part had been left,— —

PAGE 17—36 he takes care that a bridge should be made on the Saone 37 when they were understanding that he had done in one day, — —

PAGE 21—37a and from the Ædui and from their allies

PAGE 22—38 Meantime Cæsar daily demands from the Ædui the grain — *Flagitare* is a historical infinitive used as a finite tense 39 The emphasized word or phrase stands between *ne* and *quidem* and *quidem* throws its force back upon the emphasized term. 40 The Ædui put him off from day to day (and) say that it is being gathered, that it is being brought, that it is at hand.—*ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

PAGE 23—41 their chiefs have been called together — — 42 especially when in a great degree (lit., from a great part) he induced by their prayers had undertaken the war. 43 that there are some whose authority avails very much among the common people.

PAGE 25—44 he had both increased his family estate i. e. his clanship, and provided great means for — —

PAGE 26—45 and for the sake of this power he had married his mother among the Bituriges to a man there, most noble and most powerful, he himself had a wife from the Helvetians, he had given his sister on his mother's side and his kinswomen in marriage into other states. That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance, that he hates (*odisse*, perfect with present sense) Cæsar and the Romans by his own right (lit., name) because his power had been diminished by their arrival 45a He favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance; also he hated Cæsar and the Romans on his own account (lit., from his own name) because his power (lit., the power of him) had been diminished by their arrival (lit., by the arrival of them), and Divitiacus, his brother, restored into the ancient place of favor and honor: if anything may happen to the Romans, he

entertains the highest hope of obtaining the Kingdom through the Helvetians. 46 he entertains the highest hope of obtaining the throne through the Helvetians if anything happens to the Romans. 47 he not only despairs of the throne.

PAGE 27—48 since the most certain facts were substantiating these suspicions — — 49 he was deeming that there was enough cause why (wherefore) either he himself should punish him (lit., attend to him) or should order the state to punish him.

PAGE 28—50 that he himself knows that these things are true nor does anyone take more grief from this thing than himself

PAGE 29—51 which means and strength he was using not only for diminishing his (Divitiacus') influence but almost for his destruction. 52 from which thing it would come to pass that — —

PAGE 30—53 he warns him to avoid all suspicions — — 54 he says that he himself forgives the past (offences) for (the sake of) his brother Divitiacus.

PAGE 31—55 It was reported that it was easy. 56 At early dawn when the mountain summit (lit., highest) is held by Titus Labienus — —

PAGE 33—57 This movement (lit., thing) is reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Æmilius, captain of the Gallic horse, — — 58 or because they were trusting that our men could be cut off from the grain supply.

PAGE 35—59 It was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in the battle....nor since the left hand was hampered to fight conveniently enough....and to fight with unprotected person (i. e., the body unshielded, lit., naked).

PAGE 36—60 having assailed our men upon the march on (the exposed flank began) to surround (them). 61 So the fighting continued in a doubtful battle long and fiercely. 62 no one could see a routed enemy.

PAGE 37—63 When the fighting had continued a long time our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. 64 and if they (lit., if who) should assist them he would hold them in the same light (or, position - *locus*) as (*quo*) the Helvetians

PAGE 38—65 Some texts have: *legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt* - sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender.

PAGE 39—66 they were thinking that their flight would be either concealed or overlooked altogether,— — 67 When Cæsar discovered (other readings: *resciit*) this (lit., which) he ordered those through whose territories they had gone — 68 if they were wishing to be exculpated toward himself i. e. in his eyes. 69 When they were brought back he held them in the class of enemies i. e. they were either sold into slavery or more probably put to death. 70 because he was unwilling that this place whence the Helvetians had departed should be unoccupied

PAGE 40—71 and they afterwards received them into an equal estate of law and liberty as were they themselves.

PAGE 41—72 ambassadors of almost all Gaul, chiefs of the states, assembled for congratulating Cæsar.

PAGE 43—73 Divitiacus the Æduan spoke for these (saying that) there are two factions of all Gaul, that the Æduans hold the chieftaincy of one, of the other the Averni.

PAGE 44—74 The Ædui and their clients time and again have contended— — 75 nor would refuse that they should be forever under their sway and empire (lit., sway and empire of them)

PAGE 45—76 because Ariovistus king of the Germans had settled in their territories (lit., borders)— — 77 We would compare the worse with the better and would say in English: for neither is the German land to be mentioned with the Gallic— —

PAGE 46—78 if anything is not done at his nod and will— — 79 his demands (lit., commands) cannot be endured longer. Unless there may be some aid in Cæsar or the Roman people, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls— — 80 there is no doubt (lit., he not to doubt).

PAGE 47—81 This speech having been delivered by Divitiacus — —

PAGE 49—82 That the Germans moreover were accustomed little by little to cross the Rhine and that a great multitude of them came into Gaul, he was seeing was a perilous thing to the Roman people, nor was he judging that wild and barbarous men, when they had occupied all Gaul as the Cimbri and Teutones had done, would restrain themselves before— — 83 he was thinking he must meet these things (lit., which things) as early as possible

PAGE 50—84 had taken upon himself so many airs (so great insolence) that it seemed he must not be borne. 85 if anything was needful to him from Cæsar, he would have come to him 86 nor could he gather an army into one place without great provisions and trouble, moreover it seemed wonderful to himself — —

PAGE 51—87 that he should, though invited, be averse to come into a conference nor should think that he must not speak nor learn concerning a common matter, these are the things which he was demanding from him, that — — 88 that it should be granted to the Sequani that it should be allowed with his consent to return to them (the Ædui) those whom they were holding — —

PAGE 53—89 if he was not dictating to the Roman people in what manner it should use its right, it was not proper that he himself should be hindered by the Roman people in his right 90 he himself would not return the hostages to the Ædui, nor would he bring war with damage upon them nor upon their allies if they would abide by that (lit., remain in that) which had been agreed upon and would pay (lit., weigh out) the tribute yearly, if they would not do this the fraternal name of the Roman people would be far away from them.

PAGE 54—91 were ravaging their territories, they could not purchase peace of Ariovistus when even hostages had been given 92 judged that he must hasten, lest if the new hand —.

PAGE 55—93 it could be less easily opposed 94 when he had gone athree days' course — — 95 that Ariovistus with all his troops was hastening to seize Vesontio (lit., for occupying Vesontio) 96 which were of use for war 97 for prolonging the war.

PAGE 56—98 so that the foot (lit., roots) of this mountain touches the bank of the river on either hand (lit., each part, i. e. the entire intervening space) 99 hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches day and night. 100 for the sake of grain and provisions 101 that they themselves having oftentimes encountered them were not able to bear even their looks, and — —

PAGE 57—102 one of whom for one cause, another for another having reported what he was declaring was necessary to



him for setting out, was asking that it might be allowed him to depart with his consent — — 103 to avoid the suspicion of fear, were remaining. 104 (Those) of them who were wishing that they might be thought less fearful were saying that they did not dread the enemy but feared the straits of the way ....or the matter of corn that it could not be transported conveniently enough.

PAGE 58—105 that the soldiers would not be obedient to the command nor would bear the standard on account of fear. 106 because they were thinking it should be inquired or considered into what part

PAGE 59—107 Indeed he himself was persuaded that when his demands were known and the fairness of the conditions preceived he would reject neither — — 108 was seeming to have deserved not less praise than the commander himself. (Supply *esse* with *meritus*). 109 in the slave uprising — —. Many of the slaves were German captives taken by Marius 110 From which it can be judged how much good firmness was having in itself....by this (trickery) (.....) not even he himself expected our army could be taken.

PAGE 61—111 upon the pretence of the grain supply and the straits of the ways did this officiously 112 These things were his care. 113 that it is said (translate *dicantur* as if singular) that they are not going to be obedient to the command and are not going to bear the standard, he himself is disturbed in nowise by this thing, for he knew that to whomsoever an army has been disobedient at the command — —

PAGE 62—114 his own integrity in his life throughout — —

PAGE 63—115 and the highest alertness and eagerness for waging war was incited 116 and assured (him) that it was most prepared for waging war. 117 Their apology (lit., satisfaction) having been received and the way having been reconnoitered by Divitiacus 118 he was informed — —

PAGE 64—119 and he was thinking he could do this without danger. Cæsar did not reject the terms. 120 and thought he had now returned to reason 121 it would transpire (fore) that he would cease from his obstinacy

PAGE 65—122 in another manner he himself would not come.

PAGE 66—123 now he enrolls it among the horse (lit., to the horse) i. e. makes them "*equites*," horsemen or knights. 124 When they had come there.

PAGE 67—125 were existing between them and the Ædui.

PAGE 69—126 that he himself had not inflicted war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon himself 127 he himself did this for the sake of protecting himself and not of assailing the Gauls.

PAGE 70—128 that he did not come except as he was asked and that he did not wage war but had defended himself. 129 Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out of the borders of the province of Gaul.

PAGE 71—130 He ought to be suspicious (*susplicari*, passive voice) that while friendship is feigned, because Cæsar had an army in Gaul, he has it for the sake of crushing him. 131 that if he should kill him he himself would be doing a grateful thing — — 132 that he himself has this, an ascertained fact, from themselves through their messengers.

PAGE 72—133 allies who have deserved the best, nor does he himself judge that Gaul is rather the possession — — 134 but if it is proper that the most ancient time in detail (lit., each most ancient time) be regarded — —

PAGE 73—135 approached nearer the hillock and rode up to our men, threw stones and weapons against our men — — 136 yet he was thinking it must not be permitted that, the enemy having been repulsed, it could be said they had been tricked by himself treacherously (lit., contrary to faith) in a conference 137 the arrogance that Ariovistus had used in the conference and that he had interdicted — —

PAGE 74—138 It did not seem to Cæsar that there was a cause for conferring, and so much the more that — —

PAGE 75 139 and because the Germans had in him no cause of transgressing (lit., because there was not cause to the Germans of transgressing in him) — — 140 But when Ariovistus had beheld them — — (*Quos*, whom, translate, But . . . them).

PAGE 76—141 were brought (*supportaretur* is singular, the English idiom requires the plural number) 142 the opportunity might not be lacking to him 143 in cavalry battle

PAGE 77—144 if they must advance farther or retire more quickly anywhere.

PAGE 79—145 to assault the lesser camp. There was fighting sharply on both sides until towards evening 147 that they reported (*dicere*) thus: "it is not permitted (was,— the divine law, or fate) that the Germans shall conquer, if they should join in battle before the new moon." 148 because he was less powerful in the mass (lit.. multitude) of legionary soldiers as compared with the number of the enemy.

PAGE 80—149 Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each and a questor (quartermaster) for the several legions

PAGE 81—150 The javelins thrown aside the fighting went hand to hand with swords. 151 because he was more free to act (lit., more unencumbered) than those who were involved in the battle-line he sent as a reinforcement the third battle-line to our toiling men

PAGE 82—152 The term, woman, is inserted to show the gender of *una* and *Sueva*.

PAGE 84—153 and the Ubii who dwell nearest the Rhine having pursued them panic-stricken — — To follow the English idiom render *quos* by a connective and relative as if it were *etque eos*.

## SECOND BOOK

PAGE 85—1 also he was informed by the letters of Labienus that all the Belgæ.....were conspiring.....and were giving hostages among themselves. That these were the causes of conspiring — —

PAGE 86—2 who were having means for mustering men. 3 he himself as soon as there was beginning to be plenty of forage came to the army.

PAGE 87—4 that they ascertain these things that are transpiring among the latter (lit., them) and inform him concerning these matters 5 then indeed he judged that he must not hesitate to set out to them (lit., that it must not be hesitated but that — —) 6 that they entrust themselves and their all to the good faith and power of the Roman people.

PAGE 88—7 that they could not intimidate (lit., restrain by

fear) even the Suessiones ..... from intriguing (lit., but that they should intrigue. Or, from conniving) with these.

PAGE 89—8 and that it was they alone who in the memory of our fathers when all Gaul was harassed, checked the Teutones and Cimbri from entering within their territories. 9 The Bellovaci were the most powerful among them.

PAGE 91—10 and having dismissed them (lit., followed, took leave of) generously in an address—— 11 lest he must come to blows (lit., it must be combatted) at one time with so great a multitude

PAGE 92—12 he dismisses him from his presence (lit., from himself). 13 nor now were far distant.

PAGE 93—14 For when so great a multitude were hurling stones and weapons, there was an opportunity for no one of standing on the walls.

PAGE 95—15 favorable and suitable for drawing up the battle-line.

PAGE 96—16 *subsido*, lit. for a relief.

PAGE 97—17 *illis*, those (forces) i. e. the enemy. 18 *contendebatur*, lit. it was contended. 19 for carrying on the war. 20 and were cutting off our (men) from supplies. Other reading:—*que sustenebant nostros commeatu*—and were sustaining our (men) with provisions. 21 light armed Numidians

PAGE 98—22 There was sharp fighting in that place 23 when they understood that they had deceived themselves in the hope both of storming the town and of crossing the river,—— 24 for defending those into whose borders——

PAGE 99—25 were approaching the borders—— 26 It was not possible to persuade these to delay longer and not to bring aid to their (countrymen) 27 had not yet seen clearly 28 at daybreak

PAGE 100—29 to whom they came 30 as the period of the day permitted

PAGE 101—31 he was not able to storm it 32 although few were defending. 33 of use for storming

PAGE 102—34 they bring it to pass (lit., obtain) that they shall be preserved. 35 the chiefs of the state and two sons—— Cæsar received the Suessiones into surrender 36 and signify

by voice that they come into his protection and power and are not contending in arms against the Roman people.

PAGE 103—37 (saying) the Belovæi for all time had been in the confidence — — that they had been impelled by their chiefs who had said that the Ædui were reduced to slavery by Cæsar and bore all indignities and affronts; (saying) that they had both revolted from the Ædui and had waged war against the Roman people.

PAGE 104—38 support themselves if any wars have arisen

PAGE 105—39 there was no approach for merchants to them; that they suffered no wine and other things tending to luxury to be imported, because they judged their minds were enfeebled and their valor diminished by these things; that the men were fierce and of great valor — — that they chided and blamed the remaining Belgians — — that they affirmed that they would neither send ambassadors nor would receive any conditions of peace.

PAGE 106—40 Dative after *persuadeo*. 41 there might not be access for an army

PAGE 107—42 nor was there any difficulty when the first legion had come into camp 43 it would come to pass that the remaining legions would not dare to take stand in opposition.

PAGE 108—44 into which it was not possible not only to make entrance (pass. voice) but even to be seen through. 45 so that it was possible to get sight (pass. voice) within.

PAGE 109—46 For, because Cæsar was approaching the enemy according to his custom he was leading six legions light armed 47 nor were our (men) daring to follow those yielding farther than to the limit which the extended and open places were reaching; the six legions meantime — —

PAGE 110—48 and encouraged themselves

PAGE 111—49 those who had advanced rather far for the sake of mound material must be summoned

PAGE 112—50 for the sake of exhorting the soldiers 51 he gave the signal for joining battle 52 and so prepared the mind of the enemy for fighting that time failed not only for putting on the badges but even for donning the helmet and drawing off the coverings from the shields

PAGE 113—53 since some legions in one position others in another were resting the enemy in various places and as very dense hedges were interposing, as we have shown before, the view was intercepted and neither were sure reserves able to be placed nor what might be useful in each position before seen nor all the commands given by one (person)

PAGE 114—54 They did not hesitate to cross the river 55 the Veromandui having been routed with whom they had joined (battle), were fighting from the higher ground on the very banks of the river

PAGE 115—56 and some panicstricken were borne in one direction, others in another 57 they announced to the state that the Romans had been routed and overcome; that the enemy possessed their camp and baggage — With *pulsos, superatos* and *potitos* supply *esse*, after verbs of saying.

PAGE 117—58 and that they (the enemy) pressed on from either flank and that the case was in a crisis, and that there was no reinforcement which could be sent up

PAGE 118—59 Hope being infused in the soldiers by his coming and their spirit restored, since each one was desiring to do his best for himself in the sight of the General, even in his extreme dangers, the attack of the enemy was checked a little. 60 and should direct against the enemy the standards turned about — i. e. right and left face. 61 when some were bringing aid to some, others to others — —

PAGE 119—62 they left nothing undone for themselves as regards speed

PAGE 120—63 these dead bodies having been thrown down and heaped up 64 so that it ought to be considered that not without reason (i. e. with hope of success) men of so great valor — —

PAGE 121—65 and in recounting the calamity of the state they said that they themselves were reduced

PAGE 122—66 *esse* understood with *usus*. 67 Since this (town) on all sides in its circumference had very high rocks and outlooks, on one side a gently sloping approach was left not more than two hundred feet in width. This *quum*-clause explains *egregie munitum*.

PAGE 123—68 when sometimes they were waging war, at other time were repelling it when brought upon (them)

PAGE 124—69 But when they saw that it was moved and that it approached the walls

PAGE 125—70 they said that they give up themselves and all their possessions into their (the Romans') power; that they sought and begged one thing

PAGE 126—71 but that there was no condition of surrender except when the arms had been delivered; that he himself would do — —

PAGE 127—72 There was a rush thither from the nearest fortresses and the battle was fought by the enemy — —

### THIRD BOOK

PAGE 131—1 and this (which) village located in a valley a plain not large adjoining is hemmed in on all sides by very lofty mountains.

PAGE 133—2 and they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were endeavoring to occupy the peaks of the Alps 3 since neither the work of winter quarters nor the fortifications were fully completed nor was enough grain and other provisions secured, because, — —

PAGE 134—4 neither was it possible (*posset*, understood) for anyone to come to their aid 5 for arranging and executing these things which they had decreed 6 Historical infinitives denoting rapid action are translated like finite tenses. The same is true of *conjectere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, *superari*. 7 Our men at first repulse them bravely while their strength is fresh

PAGE 135—8 When now the fight was continuing unceasingly, — — 9 and as our men were becoming more faint, they began to, — —

PAGE 136—10 who, we have said, was spent with many wounds, — — 11 that there is one hope of safety

PAGE 137—12 nor of collecting themselves i. e. of recovering their senses 13 those (lit., these) who had come into the hope of getting possession of the camp, when they were

surrounded on every side. 14 nor suffered them to take stand even in the places that are higher, *quidem* emphasizes *in locis*. 15 and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design and was seeing that he had met with other circumstances.

PAGE 138—16 and so at the beginning of winter had set out into Illyricum 17 omit *mare* in translation.

PAGE 140—18 they take oath among themselves through their chiefs that they would act in nothing (accusative of specification) except by common counsel and that they would bear, — —

PAGE 141—19 ambassadors, a name, — — .... had been detained by them and cast into chains. Supply *esse* with *retentos* and *conjectos*

PAGE 142 20 Supply *esse* - that navigation was hindered 21 longer, or rather long, i. e. any length of time. 22 supplies of grain

PAGE 143—23 These were the difficulties of waging the war lit., of war to be waged.

PAGE 144—24 *esse* understood, forming the perfect passive infinitive after verbs of saying

PAGE 145—25 Pluperfect of defective verb, *cæpi*, used with the force of the imperfect - they were beginning to despair

PAGE 146—26 in order that they may be able the more easily to take the shoals and ebb-tides (lit., ebb of the tide); 27 for enduring any force and buffeting; the benches were made from beams a foot in width fastened together with iron nails of the thickness of a thumb.

PAGE 147—28 and so great fury of the winds could (*posse*) not be withstood and so great masses of ships governed by sails conveniently enough 29 Some texts read *adigebatur*. - nor was a weapon easily shot at them.

PAGE 148—30 nor could (*posse*) he inflict injury (*noceri*, passive voice) upon them, he decided that the fleet must be awaited. 31 about two hundred and twenty of their ships the best equipped and most provided with every kind of armament (lit., arms) — —

PAGE 149—32 for they had understood that they could not inflict injury by the beak (prow). Lit., *hostes* understood is



subject of *posse*. 33 With a form not unlike that of wall-hooks. — —

PAGE 150—34 all advantage of their ships was lost at the same time i. e. all at once. 35 after the barbarians perceived that this was done

PAGE 151—36 and this condition (which thing) was especially favorable for completing the business 37 since the battle continued 38 in whom there was some counsel or dignity had gathered there; besides they had assembled in one place what ships had been everywhere

PAGE 152—39 under the hammer i. e. at auction

PAGE 153—40 an enthusiasm for fighting was [were] recalling, — —

PAGE 154—41 because he was thinking that a battle ought not to be undertaken by a lieutenant.....except on equal grounds or when some opportunity was given 42 to go over to the enemy 43 nor is it farther off than that on the next night Sabinus may lead out, — — and set out to Cæsar for the sake of bringing him aid. When this report was heard all shout that the opportunity for carrying on the business well must not be lost that it is the proper thing to go to camp.

PAGE 155—44 the want of food which had been provided by them without sufficient care. 45 Induced by these things they do not release Viridovix and the other leaders from the council before that it has been granted by them to take arms and to hasten to the camp

PAGE 156—46 at full speed, that as brief a period as possible might be given the Romans for assembling and arming themselves, and arrived out of breath. 47 It came to pass 48 and our soldiers with fresh strength having pursued them (*quos*, translated by and....them) encumbered slew a great number of them

PAGE 157—49 for undertaking wars, so their mind is soft and by no means sturdy [resistant] for bearing misfortunes.

PAGE 158—50 There was fighting long and sharply 51 that the security of the entire Aquitania was placed in their valor (Supply *esse* with *positam*)

PAGE 159—52 that it should be seen what they could

accomplish without the general, — — The clause: *quid possent....duce* is subject of *perspici*, and the whole construction is the object of *caperent*. 53 and when they were bravely resisting, — — One of the many instances in which an ablative absolute may be rendered best in English by a subordinate clause.

PAGE 160—54 commit suicide 55 and the fighting there was violent

PAGE 161—56 however he obtained from Crassus to enjoy (English idiom, the enjoyment of) the same condition of surrender. 57 because they had learned that a town..... had been stormed (supply *esse*) in the few days in which (the Romans) had come there.

PAGE 162—58 he considered that he must not delay settling the issue (but that he should settle the issue) in battle. 59 that all thought the same thing, — —

PAGE 163—60 when the plan had been approved by their generals, although the troops of the Romans were drawn up, they were keeping themselves in camp. 61 that it was befitting them not to wait longer but that they should be off to the camp; having exhorted his men, all filled with eagerness, he hastens to the camp of the enemy.

PAGE 166—62 far into the night

PAGE 167—63 nor had ever sent ambassadors to him about peace. 64 and when Cæsar had arrived at the margin of these forests and had decided to fortify a camp nor meantime had an enemy been seen, — —

PAGE 168—65 therefore all their fields (lit., all the fields of them) having been laid waste (or, when all their fields had been laid waste and their villages and buildings burned,) — —

#### FOURTH BOOK

PAGE 171—1 from each of which they lead yearly a thousand armed men out of their territories. 2 but for the most part on milk and beef (lit., cattle) and are often (lit., much) in huntings; [in the chase]; and this condition (lit., which thing) — —

PAGE 173—3 and fight on foot (lit., battle on the feet) 4 therefore however few they dare to approach (to) any number whatever of saddled horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported — — 5 because they think that by this thing men are enfeebled for enduring labor and are effeminated. 6 are said to be unoccupied from the Suevi on one side; the Ubii come next in the other direction (lit., at the other part).

PAGE 175—7 they arrived at the Rhine, the localities which the Memapii were inhabiting 8 they were checking the Germans from crossing over — — 9 they pretend that they are returning to their own habitations and countries — — 10 who have been informed of the departure of the Germans by spies

PAGE 176—11 before (lit., before that) this part of the Memapii which was on this side of the Rhine was informed.

PAGE 177—12 and very many answer fictions according to the wish of these. 13 lest he might encounter a severer war. Sometimes rendered:— a rather severe war 14 he learned that these things had been done which he suspected would be, that ambassadors had been sent by some states to the Germans and that they had been requested to depart (lit., that they should depart) from the Rhine — — Supply *esse* with *facta missas* and *invitatos*. 15 and the Germans induced by this (*Qua*) hope — —

PAGE 178—16 When he was distant a few days' journey from them — — 17 whose speech was as follows: (lit., these things). 18 nor yet do they refuse to contend in arms if they are attacked.

PAGE 181—19 forming many great islands (lit., many and great) — —

PAGE 182—20 if their chiefs and senate would give pledge (lit., give faith) by oath they were showing that they themselves would use those terms that were offered by Cæsar (lit., this condition, let him give them (themselves) a period of three days for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 183—21 let them assemble hither on the next day as numerously as possible that he might learn concerning their demands (lit., the requests of them) 22 But as soon as (*ubi primum*. lit., when first) the enemy beheld our cavalry — —

Introduce the noun into the subordinate clause in English and supply a pronoun as *ii* or *illi*, as subject of *perturbaverunt*, the principal verb several lines below **23** some texts have *induciis*.

PAGE 185—**24** to whom he was judging no time at all should be given (lit., nothing of time) for taking counsel (lit., counsels). as well, (*simul*, correlative of *simul* below)

PAGE 186—**25** as it was said, for the sake of exonerating themselves **26** (contrary to what (lit., as) had been declared [said] and to what they themselves had sought — — **27** Cæsar rejoicing (lit., having rejoiced) ordered them when they were presented to him to be detained. Change the *quos* clause to the English idiom. The fate of these people is mention in the last few lines of Chapter 15.

PAGE 187—**28** *qui*, and they — — **29** time (lit., space) having been given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms **30** When their (lit., whose, or of whom) panic was indicated — —

PAGE 189—**31** of which (cause) this (that) was the most justifiable (lit., most just) **32** In addition also that portion of the cavalry — —

PAGE 190 **33** when Cæsar had sent messengers to them **34** if he should judge that it was not just that the Germans should cross the Rhine into Gaul, when he was unwilling, why should he demand that any of his empire or power should be across the Rhine.

PAGE 191—**35** since Ariovistus was routed and this last battle fought — — an ablative absolute denoting cause, it is best rendered in English by a subordinate clause

PAGE 192—**36** which having been separated and held fast in opposite directions — —

PAGE 193—**37** at the lower part of the river — — i. e. down stream.

PAGE 198—**38** the countries having been explored in so far as opportunity could (*potuit*, was able) be given to him — —

PAGE 199—**39** concerning the project of the former season (lit., time).

PAGE 200—**40** And when they were brought to him (lit., whom having been brought) he received them into alliance

PAGE 201—41 since this was executed by these (lit., by whom) a little more slowly [rather slowly] — —

PAGE 202—42 as the method of military affairs and especially as maritime movements (lit., thing) demand (as these (*quæ*) have a quick and unsteady motion).

PAGE 203—43 moreover the soldiers both must leap down at the same time from the ships and must take stand in the waves and must fight with the enemy — — (lit., it must be leaped down by the soldiers — —) 44 while they (*illi*, the enemy) — — 45 when Cæsar perceived this (which) — —

PAGE 205—46 there was sharp fighting by both sides.

PAGE 207—47 he said he would pardon their indiscretion (lit., ignorance)

PAGE 208—48 the fourth day after he had come into Britain (lit., it was come); when they were approaching to Britain — — 49 *quæ* translate as if *hæ*, these, subject of *complerentur*.

PAGE 209—50 (in which Cæsar had caused (lit., had provided, or taken care,) the army to be transported) — —

PAGE 210—51 and all things were lacking which were of use for repairing the ships and because it was evident to all that it was expedient to winter in Gaul (since) corn had not been provided in these places against the winter. 52 some texts have *ad ea facienda quæ Cæsar jusserrat* for these (things) to be done which Cæsar had ordered i. e. for doing these things which Cæsar had ordered

PAGE 212—53 he brought it to pass that they could make a sailing (*navigari*, passive voice, lit., to be sailed) easily in the rest. Some texts read: *satis commode*, quite easily.

PAGE 213—54 and disorder the ranks generally by the very terror of the horses (lit., terror itself) — —

PAGE 214—55 and battle on foot (lit., on the feet)

PAGE 215—56 having thought the time unsuited for attacking the enemy and for joining battle — — 57 a short time having passed (lit., having been interposed) 58 the rest (i. e. the Britains) who were in the fields departed. 59 how great an opportunity was presented (lit., given) for (of) making plunder and of freeing themselves forever — —

PAGE 217—60 he was thinking that the passage (lit., voyage) must not be incurred in winter (lit., exposed to win-

ter) with weak ships — — 61 when about three hundred soldiers had been landed from these (which) ships and were hartening into camp — — 65 if they were unwilling to be slain (lit., if they were unwilling themselves to be slain) — —

## FIFTH BOOK

PAGE 220—1 that they should take care in the winter (that) ships as many as could be (lit., as they were able) should be built and the old repaired. He shows their size and form.

PAGE 221—2 because he had learned that the waves became less great there on account of the frequent alterations of the tides. 3 for transporting cargos and a multitude of beasts of burden— — 4 and for this object (lit., for which thing) etc. *Res* is a very indefinite term and requires translation according to the connection. 5 He orders these (materials) which are of use for rigging ships, (lit., for ships to be rigged) to be brought from Spain. 6 he demands soldiers from the states. *Impero* takes the dative of the person and accusative of the thing.

PAGE 222—7 he shows that he would proceed against the state with war.

PAGE 223—8 nor were they far from (wanting much from) this condition of being possible (*possent*) to be launched (lit., led down) in a few days. 9 This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul in cavalry

PAGE 224—10 were striving with one another (lit., among themselves) concerning the chieftaincy. 11 he prepares war (*parare*, historical infinitive)

PAGE 225—12 that he himself withdrew from his own people and had been unwilling to come to him for this reason in order that he might preserve the state more easily in its allegiance etc. 13 for what reason these things were said (i. e. his jealousy of Cingetorix).

PAGE 226—14 and this thing (which thing) he was not only understanding should be done by himself because of his deserts but also he was judging that it concerned him greatly that the authority of this one (lit., the authority of him) should

prevail as much as possible among his own people, whose good will he had perceived was so excellent toward himself.

PAGE 227—15 had not been able, infinitive after *cognoscit*.

PAGE 228—16 Impossible to render exactly, lit.:— It was approaching hither that etc. It happened in addition that etc. 17 *suis* - his, i. e. Dumnorix's — — 18 After he saw that this was denied him persistently (lit., obstinately)

PAGE 229—19 (saying) that he was alarmed with the fear that not without reason it was done so that Gaul should be stripped of all the nobility etc. 20 he insinuated a pledge to the rest, demanded an oath etc. 21 because he was seeing that his madness had gone too far, he must look out (lit., it must be looked out) that (*ne*, lest) he should (*posset*) not injure himself and the state.

PAGE 230—22 he was taking pains (lit., giving work) etc. 23 and he orders that he be dragged back; if he shows violence (lit., makes violence) nor obeys, he orders that he be killed having considered that he would do nothing like a sane man since he had disregarded his commands in his presence.

PAGE 231—24 that he might take counsel in accordance with time and circumstances — — Plu. in English idiom for *re*.

PAGE 232—25 An approach was made to Britain by all the ships nearly at noon time. 26 Nor was an enemy seen in this place etc.

PAGE 234—27 and were preventing our men from penetrating within the fortifications.

PAGE 235—28 Some texts have the term *literis* in parenthesis as given here although quite probably it should be omitted.

PAGE 236—29 not the time of night even - *nocturnis* is emphasized by *quidem*.

PAGE 237—30 The chieftaincy of the command and of the managing of the war i. e. the leadership of the command and the chief management. 31 The interior part of Britian is inhabited by those who, it is handed down by memory, (by tradition) have been born in (i. e. are native to) the island itself. *Esse* is understood with *proditum*. The subject of *proditum esse* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

PAGE 238—32 *examinatis*, lit., weighed.

PAGE 240—33 in *circuitu*, - all around. 34 and they have long hair.

PAGE 243—35 Add to this etc. See note 16 — — 36 and some were relieving some, others others in succession

PAGE 244—37 so that they were not keeping back from the standards and the legions. 38 neither did they give the opportunity of collecting themselves nor of halting.

PAGE 246—39 and by this fear was hindering them from roaming more widely. It followed (lit., was left) that Cæsar would not allow departure to be made (lit., it to be departed) too far from the marching-line of the legions and that injury should be inflicted upon the enemy (lit., it should be injured to the enemy in) by ravaging the fields and making conflagrations (lit., burnings) etc.

PAGE 248—40 many (of the enemy) etc.

PAGE 250—41 He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus not to injure Mandubracius nor the Trinobantes. 42 *et*, orat in translating

PAGE 251—43 and (those) which Labienus had taken care to be made etc. 44 When Cæsar had awaited these (lit., which) etc.

PAGE 252—45 of these legions (lit., from which legions) he gave one etc.

PAGE 254—46 by whose management (lit., work) he may learn that Tasgetius had been killed. Meantime he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had assigned legions that they had arrived in winter quarters and that the place was fortified for the winter quarters. This is an impersonal construction and impossible to translate literally (i. e. that it had been arrived into winter quarters etc.). In about fifteen days since they had come into winter quarters (lit., from which it was come etc.).

PAGE 257—47 that Gauls are not easily able to refuse Gauls, especially when a design was seeming best to be adopted (lit., entered into) concerning the restoring of the common liberties. 48 he advises Cæsar for his kindness, he beseeches Titurius for his hospitality — — 49 it is their plan (i. e. it is for them to decide) whether they etc.

PAGE 258—50 when he does this he (*sese*) both consults for the state because it will be relieved from winter quarters and returns a favor to Cæsar for his good offices (lit., merits, or services).



PAGE 259—51 that nothing must be performed rashly nor must they depart (lit., it to be departed) from winter quarters without the order of Cæsar. 52 The fact is a witness. 53 Meantime reinforcements would arrive both from the nearest winter quarters and from Cæsar.

PAGE 260—54 Neither otherwise would the Carnutes have formed the design of killing Tasgetius nor would the Eburones have come etc.

PAGE 261—55 The English idiom would require some such form as this: who would persuade himself, or, would be persuaded, regarding this etc. 56 In which (i. e. following that advice) if not present danger etc.

PAGE 263—57 Everything is calculated why they may not remain without danger and why the danger is increased by the weariness and wakefulness of the soldiers. 58 They set out at early dawn from the camp in such a manner (lit., so) as they etc. 59 but by Ambiorix as a most faithful man.

PAGE 265—60 was performing the duties of a general in summoning and encouraging the soldiers and of a soldier in the battle. 61 this seemed to be done etc.

PAGE 267—62 that they could in nowise be injured (lit., it was possible as to nothing to be injured to them) because of the lightness of their arms and their daily exercise.

PAGE 268—63 Then Titus Balventius has each thigh pierced with a javelin. 64 who had led the first century i. e. had been first centurion.

PAGE 271—65 that there is no trouble, for the legion, having been suddenly crushed, which winters with Cicero to be slain etc.

PAGE 272—66 as great as they are able — — 67 *necesse*, unavoidable (lit., necessary)

PAGE 273—68 they (the Romans) had brought together etc.

PAGE 274—69 *contabulantur*, i. e. are built up with stories. 70 *nocturnum* is emphasized by *quidem* in the regular text. 71 they exhibit Ambiorix for the sake of creating confidence (lit., of making faith). 72 *inveterascere*, lit., to become old 73 he himself hopes that they may obtain what they sought in view of his justice.

PAGE 277—74 i. e. it was spread into every part of the

camp. 75 but no one scarcely even looked back and besides all were fighting most fiercely and most valiantly.

PAGE 279—76 *pugnaretur*, lit., when it was fought etc. 77 “or what opportunity (lit., place) of proving thy valor dost thou await?” 78 Pullo’s shield is pierced.

PAGE 288—79 for the sake of passing (lit., bearing), the winter.

PAGE 284—80 *reciderat*, lit., had fallen back.

PAGE 286—81 and therefore was thinking he must relax with an easy mind from speed (lit., it must be relaxed)

PAGE 288—82 and that there be confusion as much as possible in managing these things and that it be performed (*agi*) with a pretence of fear. The enemy having been tempted by all these things (lit., by all which things) etc. 83 they approach nearer i. e. the enemy approach.

PAGE 289—84 after this time no longer would be the opportunity. 85 nor was he seeing that the place had been left with a trifling loss on their part.

PAGE 292—86 without anxiety on the part of Cæsar etc.

PAGE 294—87 they were not obedient to the command. It availed so much among barbarian men that some were found the leaders in waging war etc.

PAGE 295—88 lost no time of the whole winter without sending ambassadors across the Rhine, inviting the states, promising money, (who) should say etc. 89 Nor yet was it possible to prevail upon any state of the Germans to cross the Rhine;

PAGE 298—90 but was thinking he should not lose any opportunity for performing a matter well.

PAGE 299—91 with many insulting words. 92 and enjoins. (lit., forbids), which refers to the part of the sentence below: *omnes peterent quemquam.*

## SIXTH BOOK

PAGE 302—1 *augeri* cannot be translated literally, i. e. to be increased, the idea being that the loss can not only be repaired but may be more than made good, *supplemented* ap-

proaches the meaning. 2 *proximis* and 3 *ulteriores* Germans or states is understood — — 4 they bind each other (*inter se*) by an oath. 5 *parari, esse, venire, communicare, sollicitari*, are infinitives after *videret* (saw that), which are translated as finite past tenses.

PAGE 304—6 and had united these states, (i. e. with the Senones,) but they were thought to have been absent from this council (the recent confederacy). *Hac re* this thing (the adjournment to Lutetia) etc.

PAGE 305—7 for the sake of asking quarter.

PAGE 306—8 Lit., not to be about to contend.

PAGE 307—9 Lit., for the sake of peace to be sought.

PAGE 308—10 at fifteen thousand paces (from Labienus).

PAGE 309—11 Lit., at first light.

PAGE 310—12 Lit., among themselves.

PAGE 312—13 Lit., for the sake of themselves to be cleared

PAGE 313—14 Lit., he becomes, or is made more certain.

PAGE 315—15 from one another.

PAGE 316—16 and forced them to swear publicly that they would enter (*esse* understood with *inituros*, lit., to be about to enter) into no design (lit., nothing of design) against the Sequani.

PAGE 317—17 Lit., themselves to use — — 18 as it was perceived that they (*quos*) equaled the Ædui in favor etc.

PAGE 319—19 Lit., they to whom it had been interdicted are held in the number etc.

PAGE 321—20 Lit., to pass from some to others, — plural to correspond with pl. number of *animas*, not the form.

PAGE 322—21 they vow that they will sacrifice them.

PAGE 323—22 *depellere, tradere, tenere, regere*, are infinitives after *habent... opinionem*.

PAGE 324—23 Supply *esse* with *proditum*.

PAGE 325—24 according to the manner with slaves, i. e. torture. 25 Lit., to have been to the heart to them living.

PAGE 328—26 as wide as possible.

PAGE 331—27 they not themselves even compare etc., *se* is emphasized.

PAGE 337—28 because he thought he must not contend in battle etc.

PAGE 340—29 for devastating this locality, lit., for this locality to be devastated.

PAGE 348—30 consciousness leaves Sextius, i. e. Sextius faints.

PAGE 350—31 through the midst of the enemy etc.

PAGE 352—32 would not have assaulted the camp etc.

PAGE 353—33 Lit., for harassing the enemy. 34 Lit., it would seem it to be perished by these.

PAGE 355—35 He inflicted death by flogging.

## SEVENTH BOOK

PAGE 357—1 Lit., at the peril of their head, like our term capital (head *caput*) punishment.

PAGE 359—2 Lit., it is departed from the council.

PAGE 360—3 Lit., the sun rising (abl. absolute) — 4 i. e. between nine and ten P. M., viz., about sixteen hours. It must be kept in mind that many miles of the country were then uninhabited. 5 recourse is had to arms, lit., it is rushed to arms.

PAGE 363—6 who they ascertain had made this plan etc. 7 *virtute*, i. e. vigor. Sometimes translated: thanks to Cneius Pompey.

PAGE 366—8 Having been stirred by their entreaties etc. 9 because he had anticipated in his judgment that these things would come to pass as regards Vercingetorix, he departs from the army etc.

PAGE 367—10 for undertaking a plan.

PAGE 370—11 very few of the whole number of the enemy having missed, (or escaped), being captured etc. *Cuncti*, in sense, goes with *perpaucis ex numero*. 12 When ambassadors had come to him from this town etc.

PAGE 371—13 as soon as the townsmen had seen it (*quem i. ei equitatum*) and entertained the hope of aid etc.

PAGE 373—14 Supply *esse* with *laturos* and *progressuros*, that the Romans either would not bear privation or would proceed rather far from the camp, with great danger.

PAGE 376—15 Lit., that it should be gone.

PAGE 377—16 to such a degree that the soldiers etc.

PAGE 380—17 since he saw them (*quos*) so prepared in mind etc.

PAGE 381—18 that he prefers to have etc. 19 feebleness of purpose.

PAGE 382—20 *gratiam habendam*, thanks must be given, is understood before *huic*.

PAGE 384—21 and when they had caught them (*quos*) etc.

PAGE 385—22 at equal intervals apart (*inter se*) etc.

PAGE 386—23 In this passage the same phrase (*inter se*) may be rendered one another, each other.

PAGE 387—24 where first it should be thwarted (lit., it should be run to meet so as to frustrate or thwart).

PAGE 388—25 When the battle was raging in all places etc, 26 was depending on that instant of time (lit., to be placed in that instant etc., *esse* being understood with *positam*).

PAGE 389—27 Lit., was retarding the Romans for following.

PAGE 391—28 that if any advance to meet them (*obviam*) on any side they might fight with the battle line arrayed.

PAGE 392—29 that part of the camp which had fallen to each from the beginning.

PAGE 397—30 That is, each of them has his own (followers) adherents. might translate freely *suas eorum*, each of them has his own partisans.

PAGE 401—31 he resolved that he must not act regarding a seige etc.

PAGE 402—32 both in a large measure from water and from unrestricted (free) foraging etc.

PAGE 409—33 who (*quibus*) on account of the size of the camp must remain continually on the wall without relief (lit., the same).

PAGE 411—34 Although Cæsar was knowing these things (lit., which things — *quas*) etc.

PAGE 419—35 While they are fighting (While the fighting proceeds) most violently etc.

PAGE 420—36 *Manus*, force lit., band, i. e. the force of the enemy.

PAGE 421—37 and was the salvation of his men. 38 viz., the tenth legion.

PAGE 427—38 Lit., it must be hastened by himself if it must be hazarded in building the bridges.

PAGE 429—40 or Melodunum, accoring to some authorities.

PAGE 431—41 aid must be sought from his own mental resources (lit., by the courage of mind)

PAGE 432—42 When he had come there etc.

PAGE 437—43 in a pitched battle.

PAGE 443—44 *Alesia*, the modern Alise-St-Reine where many relics of the seige have been excavated.

PAGE 446—45 and if they should be rather heedless (dilatatory) he shows etc.

PAGE 447—46 *Poenam capitis*, capital punishment.

PAGE 448—47 from each other eighty feet i. e. about four hundred of them.

PAGE 449—48 where if any (*qui*) might enter — — 49 the foot lit., feet, of each (the several feet) in the ground at the bottom (from [on] the lowest ground) were trodden in with earth.

PAGE 451—50 could be surrounded not by a multitude even great, *quidem* emphasizes *magna*. 51 (if it happens so through its withdrawal) i. e. the departure of the cavalry. This clause is generally omitted in translation.

PAGE 454—52 when these would be fighting in a sally etc.

PAGE 456—53 for the joy of it, i. e. for a mere idea.

PAGE 457—54 For what was in (lit., to) that war like this?

PAGE 460—55 active (soldiers) of the light armed troops.

PAGE 461—56 *ac* must be rendered as if *nec*, nor, i. e. neither a noble nor cowardly act could be concealed.

PAGE 462—57 by one-pounder sling shots. 58 Mark Anthony, the triumvir.

PAGE 464—59 and because they could not enclose it in the works on account of the extent of the surface, our men etc. (*quem, viz., and . . it*)

PAGE 465 60 There was fighting at the same time in all places,

PAGE 466—61 in which it was fitting that they should fight to the uttermost.

PAGE 468—62 when they are fighting more desperately etc.

















3585